

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE
FOR THE 2nd -YEAR STUDENTS**

Kropyvnytskyi 2021

МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ
Центральноукраїнський державний педагогічний університет
імені Володимира Винниченка
КАФЕДРА ПЕРКЛАДУ, ПРИКЛАДНОЇ ТА ЗАГАЛЬНОЇ ЛІНГВІСТИКИ

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE
FOR THE 2nd -YEAR STUDENTS**

Кропивницький – 2021

УДК 811.111 (075.8)

Л 43

Укладачі:

Лелека Т.О., доцент кафедри перекладу, прикладної та загальної лінгвістики Центральноукраїнського державного педагогічного університету імені Володимира Винниченка

Снісаренко Я.С., доцент кафедри перекладу, прикладної та загальної лінгвістики Центральноукраїнського державного педагогічного університету імені Володимира Винниченка

Рецензенти:

Титаренко О.І., кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри англійської філології Інституту іноземної філології Черкаського національного університету імені Богдана Хмельницького

Капітан Т.А., кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри лінгводидактики та іноземних мов Центральноукраїнського державного педагогічного університету імені Володимира Винниченка

English Grammar Practice for the 2nd - Year Students. Кropyvnytskyi, 2021. 248 p.

Мета навчально-методичного посібника – забезпечити практичне оволодіння студентами граматичними навичками, необхідними для вільного спілкування англійською мовою за фахом. Методичний посібник призначений для студентів факультету іноземних мов, які вивчають англійську мову.

Рекомендовано до друку методичною радою
Центральноукраїнського державного
педагогічного університету імені Володимира
Винниченка
(протокол № 4 від «16» червня 2021 року)

3MICT

1	MODALS.....	
1.1	CAN.....	5
1.2	MAY.....	17
1.3	MUST.....	32
1.4	SHOULD/OUHT TO.....	43
1.5	TO HAVE TO.....	51
1.6	TO BE TO.....	56
1.7	NEED.....	62
1.8	SHALL.....	72
1.9	WILL.....	74
1.10	WOULD.....	81
1.11	DARE.....	90
	REVISION.....	93
2	CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.	113
2.1	REAL CONDITION.....	113
2.2	UNREAL CONDITION (PRESENT).....	114
2.3	UNREAL CONDITION (PAST).....	116
2.4	MIXED TYPES.....	118
2.5	CONDITIONAL MOOD. SENTENCE PATTERNS.....	120
2.6	SUBJUNCTIVE II.....	121
2.7	SUBJUNCTIVE I.....	122
2.8	SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD. SENTENCE PATTERNS.....	123
	REVISION.....	126
3	INFINITIVE	132
3.1.	THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF THE INFINITIVE.....	145
3.2	THE BARE INFINITIVE.....	156
3.3.	VERBS + INFINITIVE.....	161
3.4	ADJECTIVES + INFINITIVE.....	164
3.5.	NOUNS + INFINITIVE	167
3.6.	COMPLEX OBJECT WITH THE INFINITIVE.....	170
3.7.	COMPLEX SUBJECT WITH THE INFINITIVE	175
3.8.	THE FOR...TO INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION	178
3.9.	INFINITIVES IN THE INDIRECT SPEECH AND IN DEFINING PHRASES	180
	REVISION.....	185
4.	THE GERUND.....	188
4.1.	TENSE AND VOICE DISTINCTIONS OF THE GERUND.....	191
4.2.	THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUND.....	194
4.3.	VERBS + GERUND	197
4.4.	VERBAL PHRASES + PREPOSITIONS + GERUND.....	201
4.5	ADJECTIVES + GERUND. NOUNS + GERUND.....	206
	REVISION	211
5	THE PARTICIPLES.....	212

5.1.	TENSE AND VOICE DISTINCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE I	213
5.2.	THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE I.....	215
5.3.	VERBAL NOUN vs. GERUND vs. PARTICIPLE I.....	217
5.4.	PARTICIPLE II. ADJECTIVES –ING/-ED.....	220
5.5.	THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE II.....	223
5.6.	TYPES OF PARTICIPLE PHRASE.....	224
5.7.	COMPLEX OBJECT WITH THE PARTICIPLE.....	227
5.8.	COMPLEX SUBJECT WITH THE PARTICIPLE	229
5.9.	PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS	230
	REVISION.....	232
	INDIVIDUAL WORK.....	236
	REFERENCES.....	245

1.CAN

Can expresses:

1. Physical or mental ability (здатність, можливість щось робити) (general ability)

o We use can, could, to be able to + the Indefinite Infinitive in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences

o We use 'can', to talk about ability in the present and in the future

o We use 'could' to talk about ability in the past

o We use 'to be able to' to talk about ability in the present, future and past and for the missing forms of the verb 'can'

o Can is rendered in Ukrainian by: **можу, спроможний**

However, am/is/are able to would be unusual when we are commenting on something that is happening at the time of speaking:

• Look! I can stand on my hands! (not: Look! I am able to stand on my hands!)

o If the present ability is surprising or involves overcoming some difficulty, we can also use is/are able to:

• Despite his handicap he is able to drive a car.

We cannot usually use be able to with a passive:

• This book can be used by computer beginners. (not: This book is able to be used by computer beginners.)

o To emphasise the difficulty or to suggest a great effort (in present, past or future) we use manage to. In formal English we can also use succeed in + -ing form:

• Do you think she'll manage to get a visa?

• The army succeeded in defeating their enemy.

But we use 'was able to' and 'were able to' (not: could) to say that someone managed to do something in a single, particular situation in the past.

• Mike's car broke down but fortunately he was able to repair it.

We use both 'couldn't', 'could not' and 'wasn't able to/weren't able to', 'was not able to/were not able to' to describe a lack of ability or success in a single, particular situation in the past.

Despite being a mechanic, Mike couldn't fix/wasn't able to fix his car when it broke down yesterday.

2a. Possibility = general possibility, theoretical possibility. We use can to describe things which are generally possible (we know they sometimes happen; it is possible)

o We use can, could, to be able to in affirmative, negative, interrogative sentences + the Indefinite Infinitive

o Can is rendered in Ukrainian by: **можу, можете**

The railways can be improved. (= It is possible for the railways to be improved as they are not yet perfect.)

Cooking can be a real pleasure.

<p>Swimming after eating can be dangerous. Uncle Tony could be very funny sometimes. Can we use the Indefinite article with this noun? When will he be able to pick them up? In old days a man could be sentenced to death for a small crime.</p>
<p>We use 'be able to' instead of 'can': o after another modal verb (will/would/must/might/shall/should). I may/might be able to help you later on. You should be able to buy some cheese in that shop. o if you want to use an -ing form or a to-Infinitive. I enjoy being able to get up late at the weekend.</p>
<p>We often use can/could + verb in place of the simple present with the verbs of perception (сприйняття), such as: 'see, hear, smell, feel, remember, recognize, imagine, understand' to say that somebody is or was aware of something through one of his senses. I can see a bird in that tree. (= I see) Can you see it? (= Do you see it?) I can smell gas. I can't see him. I can't remember the name of the book.</p>
<p>2b. Factual, specific possibility; supposition implying doubt, uncertainty</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o We use only 'could' not 'can' in an affirmative sentence with all forms of the Infinitive. o The meaning is similar to 'it is possible', 'perhaps', 'maybe', 'it is likely'. We use 'could' to show that something is possible in a specific situation. o In Ukrainian it corresponds to: можливо, може бути. o We use 'may'/'might' in affirmative and negative sentences with all forms of the Infinitive in this meaning.
<p>We use 'could/may/might' + the Indefinite Infinitive' to say that there is a chance that something might happen in the future: It could snow tonight. Можливо, ввечері піде сніг We use 'could/may/might' + the Indefinite Infinitive or Continuous Infinitive' to say that something is possibly true at the moment of speaking: You could be wrong. Ви, можливо, не праві. He always wears smart suits. He could be a businessman. We use 'could/may/might' + the Perfect Infinitive'/'could have/may have/might have' + participle II' to say that it is possible that something has happened but I'm not sure now. (possibility in the past, 50 – 40 % certainty) 'I can't find my wallet anywhere.' 'You could have left it at home.' (= Perhaps you left/have left it at home.)</p>
<p>2c. We use 'could + the Indefinite Infinitive'/'might + the Indefinite Infinitive' to say that it is possible that something will happen, but we are not completely sure.</p>

- Stay away from the dog. It could/might bite you .Вона може вкусити тебе
- Keep all cleaning products in a safe place. Your children could/might drink them and poison themselves.
- Always put knives and other sharp objects away after use. Your children could cut themselves. ... Діти можуть порізатись.
- There is a lot of traffic. That could explain why he is late.
- There could be a storm tonight: look at the clouds!

o We use ‘could have + participle II’/‘might have + participle II’ to say that something was possible in the past but didn’t happen.
You shouldn’t have swum to the other side of the lake. You could/might have drowned.

2d. We use ‘could have + past participle’ to say that someone had the ability or opportunity to do something in the past but did not do it. (missed opportunities) (this meaning is similar to ‘would have been able to’)

She could have paid by credit card but she preferred to use cash. (= She had the ability to pay by credit card but she didn’t use it.) She could have gone to a much better school. (= She didn’t go to a good school though it was possible for her.) Вона могла ходити в кращу школу.

2e. We use ‘couldn’t have + past participle’ to say that it is not possible that someone had the ability or opportunity to do something or it is not possible that something happened. · Mary couldn’t have taken the car because Jim was using it. (= It is not possible that she took the car.) Мері не могла взяти машину, оскільки вона була у Джима

3. Permission.

o Asking for permission · Can/Could I ...? = Do you mind if .../Would you mind if...? (could is more polite than can; we often use could when we are not sure permission will be given.) · We normally reply with: ‘Certainly.’/‘Of course’/‘Why not?’/‘No, I’m afraid you can’t.’/‘I’m afraid not’/‘I’d rather you didn’t’/‘Certainly not.’ · A polite refusal is usually accompanied by some kind of explanation: I’m afraid you can’t because ... · Can I borrow your pencil? – Of course. · Could I borrow your book please? – No, you can’t./No, I’m afraid you can’t. · Can I ask a question, please? – Yes, you can. · Could I possibly use your telephone, please? (possibly is commonly added to make requests more polite.)

o Giving permission

· can = you are allowed to do something (can is informal.) (We do not use could or might to give permission) · Could I speak to the manager? – Yes, you can. /Yes, you may. (not: Yes, you could. Yes, you might.) · I’m not quite ready to go, but you can leave if you’re in a hurry. I’ll meet you later. (informal) · You can borrow that pen if you want to.

o Talking about permission

We use ‘can’ and ‘be allowed to’ to refer to laws or regulations. · Passengers can smoke /are allowed to smoke in the lounge.

Students can take a year away from university.

In Britain you are not allowed to drive a car until you are seventeen, but in some countries you are allowed to drive when you are only sixteen.

In the 1950s British children could leave school at the age of fourteen.

We use 'could' or 'was/were allowed to' to say that we had general permission to do something in the past.

I could/was allowed to return home after 11 o'clock at night when I was young. (I was allowed to return home late in general.) ·

When we give and refuse permission, we use 'can'/'can't (not 'could'/'couldn't'). · You can take my umbrella. (informal; giving permission) · Could I have some sweets? (asking for permission) – No, you can't. (refusing permission)

You also use 'be allowed to' when you are talking about permission, but not when you are asking for it or giving it. · We are not allowed to use calculators in exams. (= can't) · It was only after several months that I was allowed to visit her. (not: could visit) · When Mr. Wilt asks for a solicitor (адвокат), he will be allowed to see one.

When the action was permitted and performed, the expression 'was allowed to' is preferable. · When translating the story we were allowed to use a dictionary. · Was he allowed to see the patient? · He wasn't allowed to board the plane. = He couldn't board the plane..

4. Request

We use 'can/could + the Indefinite Infinitive'

Request is found in interrogative sentences. When you want to tell somebody to do something or to ask somebody to help you, you can use: o can you ..., can I ... (in informal situations); o could you..., could I ... (is polite).

Very polite requests:

o Can I (possibly) use your phone?

o Could I (possibly) use your phone?

o Do you think I could/might use your phone?

o I wonder if I could/might use your phone? ('possibly' is commonly added to make requests more polite.)

Can you tell me the time? - Certainly.

Could you show me how to do it? – Of course I can. (not: - Of course I could.) Can I possibly make a copy of this story? – No, you can't, I'm afraid.

Can/Could I borrow your pen? – Of course you can./No, you can't. (not: – No, you couldn't.)

Could you possibly give me a lift? – I'm afraid I can't at the moment. · Could you possibly switch on the light?

Excuse me! Could you help me? – Sure./Of course./Well, I'm a bit busy at the moment. · Do you think you could help me? (Requests may be hesitant)

I wonder if you could look after my dog while I'm away.

5. Prohibition (it is found in negative sentences as prohibition may be understood as the negation of permission – not to be allowed to...) It corresponds to the Ukrainian не можна, але потрібно. ·

We use 'can/could + the Indefinite Infinitive' · You can't cross the street here. (= you are not allowed to cross...)

Can we stay here? – No, I'm afraid you can't. (= you are not allowed to stay...)

· You can't wear jeans at work. (= you aren't allowed to wear ...)

Request: Can/Could you discuss the subject with your friends?

Asking for permission: Can/Could I discuss the subject with my friends?

Можна мені обговорити питання моїми друзями?

Permission: You can discuss the subject with your friends.

Prohibition: You can't discuss the subject with your friends. Не можна обговорювати це питання з вашими друзями.

Ability: Can he spell? Чи вміє він писати грамотно?

Request: Can/Could you spell your name for me?

Asking for permission: Can/Could I spell this word for you?

6. Offer

o We use 'Can I ... or 'Could I ... + the Indefinite Infinitive' when we offer to do things for somebody (present or future reference)

'Can I ... ' (informal) · 'Could I ... ' (more polite) · Can I help you with the dishes? – Yes, please. / No, thank you.

Can we do anything for you? · Can/Could I offer you some coffee? – Yes, I'd like some please.

Can/Could I offer you a sandwich? – Yes, I'd like one please. Yes, I'd love one please. · What can I do for you?

Is there anything I can do to help? · Can I be of any service to you?

7. Suggestion

• We use 'can/could + the Indefinite Infinitive' to suggest doing something. (present or future reference)

I/we can always leave early. (informal)

We can go to the cinema. · You could phone her.

We could go into research. · What shall we do this evening.

• We use 'could + the Perfect Infinitive' to suggest doing something. (past reference) · He could have asked for advice.

• You also use 'couldn't' in a question to suggest doing something. · Couldn't we do it at the weekend?

Typical responses: (Yes,) I'd like to. / I'd love to. (No,) I'd prefer not to, thank you.

8. Reproach. It is used in affirmative sentences.

o We use only could + the Perfect Infinitive /(could have + Participle II) (past reference)

o Could is rendered in Ukrainian by: міг би · You could have met me at the station. · You could have phoned me.

9. Criticism, disapproval. It is used in affirmative sentences. o could + the Indefinite Infinitive (present or future reference)

o could + the Perfect Infinitive/(could have + Participle II) (past reference) · She could at least wait until 5 o'clock. (present or future reference)

· She could at least have waited until 5 o'clock. (past reference) · You could have told me about the party. (=You had the chance to tell me but you didn't.)

10. Surprise, disbelief

o We use 'can/could + all forms of the Infinitive' in interrogative sentences. o It corresponds to the Ukrainian: не вже ...?; чи можливо ... ?;

o can/could = Is it possible that ... ? · Can it be so late? (Is it possible that it is so late?) · Can he know it? · Can/could they be waiting for us? Can he still be working? Невже він все ще працює?

Can he have thought we had left already?

Could he have known her before? Невже він знав її раніше? (= Is it possible that he should have known her before? /Is it possible that he has known her before?)

Can/could the children have been playing since morning?

Can he have been waiting for us all this time?

11. Incredulity, doubt, improbability

o We use 'can't/couldn't + all forms of the Infinitive' in negative sentences o It corresponds to the Ukrainian: не може бути, щоб ...; навряд це так..;

o 'can't/couldn't = It is impossible that ...

o The time reference is indicated not by the form of the verb, i.e. can or could but by that of the infinitive.

However, could is used instead of can to express greater doubt; could makes the sentences a little more emphatic; the negation with could is not so categorical as with can

o Such sentences are emotionally coloured and so their application is rather restricted · He can't be so old. (= It is impossible that he is old.) He can't be telling the truth. · 'Oh!' cried Fleur: 'You can't have done it!'

The Ukrainian sentences of the type: «Невже...? Не може бути, щоб...» can be translated into English in different ways: o by complex sentences: · Can it be that you haven't seen him? · It can't be that you don't know him.

o by different lexical means: · Can/could you have failed to see him? · He can't have failed to notice you.

Nobody can have seen him do it. Не може бути, щоб його ніхто не помітив.

Can he have never written that letter?

She can't have failed to see him. Не може бути, щоб вона його не помітила.

She can't dislike music. Не може бути, щоб вона не любила музику.

12. Logical assumption/deduction (based on evidence)

o 'can't'/'couldn't' is the negative of 'must' in this meaning

o We use 'can't'/'couldn't' in negative sentences to say that we are not sure about something in the present or past. (= I'm sure ..., I'm certain ..., I don't think ..., it is impossible...)

That can't be Jack. He drives a Fiat. (= I'm sure that isn't Jack/It is

impossible that it is Jack.)

They couldn't be on holiday. (= I don't think they are on holiday.) · He couldn't be a doctor, he isn't wearing a white coat. (= I'm certain he isn't a doctor.)

She can't have gone to a party. (= I'm sure she hasn't gone to a party.)

You can't have forgotten me. (= I'm sure you haven't forgotten me.)

He can't have said that. (= I'm sure he didn't say it.)

She can't have fixed the computer, it's still not working properly. (= I'm sure she didn't fix it.)

o We use 'must' in affirmative sentences to say that we are sure about something in the present or past. (= I'm sure ..., I'm certain ..., I have no doubt)

That must be Helen when she was a baby. (= I'm sure that is Helen when she was a baby.) You must have enjoyed your trip to Mexico. (= I'm sure you enjoyed your trip to Mexico.)

This article must have been written by a woman. (= I'm sure this article was written by a woman.) She must have been studying. (= I'm certain she was studying.)

can't/couldn't are used in negations and express negative logical assumptions must is used in affirmative sentences and express positive logical assumptions

• You can't/couldn't have been at the swimming pool yesterday. It was closed all day. (= I'm sure you weren't at the swimming pool yesterday)

• The shoes you bought are very nice. They must have been expensive. (= I'm sure they were expensive.)

13. In questions we can use can, could, might (but not may) to express supposition /possibility · I can't find him anywhere. Where can/could/might he have gone? · Where can I have left my spectacles? How could they have missed the train? They left the house early. What can it mean? Who can that be at this time of night?

14. When could denotes an unreal action, it has no temporal meaning at all. o We use 'could + Indefinite Infinitive' when we speak of the present or future (present or future reference.)

o We use 'could + Perfect Infinitive' when we speak of the past (past reference). · could do – a possible action now or in the future (present or future reference) · could have done – the action was possible in the past but didn't happen (past reference)

She could paint landscapes. Вона могла б писати пейзажі. (present or future reference)

She could learn much more quickly if she paid attention. (= She would be able to learn much more quickly if she paid attention.)

She could have explained the mystery (but she didn't).

Set phrases:

o can't help doing (cannot help doing) не можу не

o can't but do smth (cannot but do) не можу не

- I can't but suggest you do it. Я не можу не запропонувати вам це зробити.
- We cannot but hope he is right. Нам залишається лише сподіватись, що ...
 - o One cannot but wonder... не можна не задуматись...
 - o as can be – an intensifying expression ·
- They are as pleased as can be. Вони страшенно задоволені.

Exercise 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb can/could/to be able to/to be allowed to. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. He is much better and can walk without my help now. 2. Oh! It can't be true! 3. He can't have taken it (the box) upstairs this morning. 4. Anne can't mean that, it's not like her. 5. He couldn't have done it all by himself. Somebody helped him, I'm sure. 6. Can you believe the girl? Can it be true? 7. Could she have done it without consulting me? 8. Can it really be as bad as that? 9. You can wait in the kitchen. 10. You can take another umbrella. 11. I don't believe a single word; he can't have failed to learn the news before us. 12. Could I help you to carry those bags? 13. No, children, you can't take the dog indoors. 14. Could you come again tomorrow? 15. Why didn't Sally come to work in her car? – She didn't say. She could have lent it to her sister, I suppose. 16. I'd like to be able to play the piano well. 17. She enjoys being able to speak foreign languages. 18. Even though I had hurt my leg, I managed to swim back to the boat. 19. You could have helped me. Why didn't you? 20. I could have gone to China on holiday last year, but I decided not to. 21. How long have you been able to play the guitar? 22. Look! I can lift this chair with one hand. 23. Andrew was allowed to leave school early yesterday because he wasn't feeling well. (Permission; a particular situation) 24. Until the 19th century people could/were allowed to travel freely between most countries without a passport. (Permission) 25. The children were allowed to watch the film on TV last night. 26. Her son has to wear a uniform in his new school, but in his old school he could/was allowed to wear whatever he liked. 27. Where is Simon? – He could be in living room. (= Perhaps he is in the living room.) 28. I forgot to lock my car yesterday. – You were very lucky. Someone could have stolen it. 29. He can't leave yet. (= It is not possible for him to leave yet.) 30. He can't be leaving yet. (= I'm not sure he is leaving.)

Exercise 2. Comment on the meaning of the verb can/could/to be able to. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. 1. He said he could see me the next Sunday/ He said he would be able to see me the next Sunday. 2. He said you could/would/might leave early. 3. He could (or: was able to) swim five miles when he was a child. 4. I managed to (or: was able to; not: could) finish the job yesterday. 5. Can you run 1500 meters in 5 minutes?/Are you able to run 1500 meters in 5 minutes? 6. Billy is only 9 months old and he can already stand up. (or: he is already able to stand up.) 7. Look! I can stand on my hands! ('am able to stand' would be unnatural: when we are commenting on something that is happening at the time of speaking, we use 'can'.) 8. I used to be able to hold my breath for one minute under water. 9. I tried again and found I could swim/was able to swim. (interchangeable, when we refer to the acquisition of a skill after

effort) 10. I can smell something burning. 11. I can/can't understand why he retired at 50. 12. I could/couldn't understand why he had decided to retire at 50. 13. I can't/couldn't imagine what it would be like to live in a hot climate. 14. I'm sure you could get into university if you applied. 15. He can't/couldn't have told you anything I don't already know. 16. I'll be able to pass my driving test after I've had a few lessons. 17. I've been trying to contact him, but I haven't managed to. 18. If you can pass/are able to pass your driving test at the first attempt, I'll be very surprised. 19. This car can only be driven by a midget (карлик, лилипут). 20. It can be quite cold in Cairo in January. (= It is sometimes cold.) 21. It could be quite cold in Cairo. (= It was sometimes cold.) 22. I wish I could swim. 23. I wish Peter could have come to my party. 24. If only we could be together.

Exercise 3. Which of these things can you do? Which can't you do? Write sentences like this: · a) **I can play chess, but my sister can't. / I can't play chess, but my sister can. (ability)** 1. count to twenty in Spanish 2. ride a bike 3. drive a car 4. understand sign language 5. swim like a fish 6. ride a horse 7. sail a boat 8. use a word processor 9. play chess 10. run a marathon · b) Now write down five questions like this about the things above to ask someone else. 1. Can you play chess really well? · c) How many of the things above could you do when you were ten years old? Write sentences like this: 1. When I was ten years old, I could ride a bike, but I couldn't drive a car.

Exercise 4. Complete these sentences using can, can't, could, or couldn't. 1. There was a woman with a big hat right in front of me. I ...couldn't... see a thing. 2. I'm sorry, you're in my light. Isee what I'm doing. 3. It was a huge hall and we were at the back, so we hear very well. 4. When she screams, youhear her all over the house. 5. She was phoning all the way from Singapore, but I.....hear her very clearly. 6. you hear me at the back? 7. Put your hands up if youhear me.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using could, couldn't or was/were able to. 1. My grandfather was a very clever man. He ... could ... speak five languages. 2. I looked everywhere for the book but I ... couldn't ... find it. 3. They didn't want to come with us at first but we ... were able to ... persuade them. 4. Laura had hurt her leg and walk very well. 5. Sue wasn't at home when I phoned but Icontact her at her office. 6. I looked very carefully and Isee a figure in the distance. 7. I wanted to buy some tomatoes. The first shop I went to didn't have any but I get some in the next shop. 8. My grandmother loved music. Sheplay the piano very well. 9. A girl fell into the river but fortunately werescue her. 10. I had forgotten to bring my camera so Itake any photographs.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences using: (ability; possibility) can could can't couldn't were able to will be able to won't be able to 1. I don't think wetravel to Mars before 2010. 2. Luckily the weather was great, so we.....have a picnic. 3. My cousinswim when he was three, but I still 4. The music was so loud that Ihear what you were saying. 5. If we don't finish early, wesee the programme on TV. 6. Anyonedo that!

Exercise 7. Rewrite these sentences using be able to, like this: (possibility)

Example: I can get up late. → I enjoy being able to get up late. The reasons I enjoy holidays ...

1. I can wear casual clothes. → 2. I can watch TV when I want. → 3. I can see my friends. → 4. I can travel abroad. → 5. I can stay up late. →

Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English. 1. Я вмію переводити такі тексти. 2. Як ви думаєте, коли ви зможете опублікувати цю книгу? 3. Я ніколи не вмів переводити такі статті. 4. Після лікування він зміг повернутися на роботу. 5. Я не можу багато працювати останнім часом. 6. Це плаття було занадто дороге. Я не могла його купити. Я вчора погано себе почував. Я не міг нічого їсти. 8. Ніхто мене не турбував, тому я зміг швидко написати лист. 9. Чому ти вчора залишився вдома? Ти міг би піти в кіно. 10. Здається, я не зможу скласти іспит. 11. Я міг поїхати в Китай відпочивати в минулому році. (Missed opportunity) 12. Я б хотів вміти говорити по-англійськи побіжно. 13. Ми, бувало, могли проводити все літо в селі.

Exercise 9. All of these sentences can be used to ask for permission. Rewrite each one using 'can'. 1. Do you mind if I open this window a little? ... Can I open this window just a little? .. 2. I'd like to ask you just one more question. 3. Is it all right if I give you a ring some time later? 4. Is it okay if we go swimming? 5. Do you mind if I sit down? 6. I'd like an ice-cream please. 7. Do you think I could go home now? 8. I wonder if I could come back later. Make the requests more polite by changing can to could.

Exercise 10. Change these statements into polite questions, using could. (Request) 1. I want to have another cup of coffee. → Could I have another cup of coffee, please? 2. Give me a cigarette. 3. Tell me when the train leaves. 4. We want to have a table near the window. 5. I want to have a ticket to London. 6. I want to go home early today.

Exercise 11. Rewrite these sentences asking for permission, starting with the phrases given. 1. I'd like to have a little more time./ I wonder if.. I could have a little more time. 2. Can I start now?/ Do you think 3. Can I listen to the radio while you're working?/ Do you mind if 4. May I come in now?/ Is it all right if 5. I'd like to speak next./ Do you think

Exercise 12. Rewrite these sentences giving permission, starting with the words given. 1. You're allowed to do whatever you want./ You can ... do whatever you want ... 2. It's all right to have visitors after three o'clock. / You're allowed to 3. You may all go home as soon as you've finished work. / You can all 4. I don't mind you coming back late as long as you don't make too much noise./ You can 5. With this banker's card you can cash a cheque for up to £250. / With this card you are allowed to 6. I'll let you use my pen until I need it myself. / You can

Exercise 13. In which of these sentences is it possible to use can? Write Yes or No. 1. The butterfly be recognised by the orange streaks on its wings. 2. 'She's probably on holiday.' 'Yes, you be right.' 3. Peter have a big screwdriver. I'll go and ask him. 4. Infections sometimes actually be made

worse by taking antibiotics. 5. Moving to a new job be a very stressful experience. 6. I think Michael enjoy himself if he joins the football club. 7. This 17th century chairbe of interest to you. 8. The seeds from this plant be up to 20 centimetres long. 9. With the factory closing next week, he lose his job. 10. Around this time of year, eagles sometimes be seen in the mountains.

Exercise 14. Fill in the gaps with could (not) or was/were (not) allowed to, as in the example. 1. The children ...weren't allowed to...watch the late film last night. They had to go to bed at half past eight. 2.I use your pen for a minute, please? 3. When I was fourteen, I stay out until ten o'clock. I had to be home by 9:30. 4. The policeman informed us that wepark the car outside the French Embassy. 5. The head teacher told the students that theybring their skateboards to school any more. 6. When Derek lived in his own flat, hecome and go whenever he wanted. 7. Istay at my friend's house at the weekend and we had a great time. 8. When we were young, weplay outside until ten o'clock during the school holidays.

Exercise 15. Translate the following sentences into English. (can, could, to be able to) 1. Вони не хотіли продавати будинок, але ми зуміли переконати їх зробити це. 2. Вона вміла досить добре грати на піаніно. 3. Я бачив гори через вікно (Через вікно мені було видно гори). 4. Я живо пам'ятаю, як мама розповідала мені страшні історії про її шкільні роки. 5. Ця хімічна речовина може бути використано як невидиме чорнило. 6. У будь-якому випадку конкуренти фірми мали б можливість продавати більш дешеві меблі. 7. Цей успіх полягає тільки в тому, щоб мати можливість жити так, як ти хочеш. 8. Потрібно вміти відрізняти цінності від всякої нісенітници. 9. Чи потрібно вміти оцінити продавця. 10. Маючи можливість вибору, ми відчуваємо на собі менше тиску. 11. Вранці він, без сумніву, все зможе пояснити. 12. Ми можемо завтра піти в кіно.

Exercise 16. Read this passage and complete the sentences below.

In Britain you are not allowed to leave school or to get married until you are at least sixteen years old. You cannot drive a car until you are seventeen, and you cannot drive a taxi until you are twenty-one. You are allowed to vote at the age of eighteen. 1. When you are sixteen you can ...leave school...and you can also but you are not allowed tountil you are eighteen. 2. You are allowed towhen you are seventeen, but you can'tuntil you are twenty-one. 3. You canat the age of seventeen and you canat the age of eighteen. 4. It seems silly that you are allowed towhen you are only sixteen, but you're not allowed tountil you are seventeen. 5. I think you should be allowed toa year earlier, when you are seventeen. 6. If you canat the age of seventeen, I don't see why you shouldn't be allowed to

Exercise 17. Complete the sentences. Use could or could have + a suitable verb. 1. – What shall we do this evening? – I don't mind. We ...could go...to the cinema. 2. – I had a very boring evening at home yesterday. – Why did you stay at home? Youto the cinema. 3. – There's an interesting job advertised in the paper. Youfor it. – What sort of job is it? Show me the advertisement. 4.

– Did you go to the concert last night? – No. Webut we decided not to. 5. – Where shall we meet tomorrow? Well, Ito your house if you like.

Exercise 18. Express surprise and doubt about the statements. Translate the sentences. Model 1: o He knows English well. → Can (could) he know English well? He can't know English well. o He is waiting for somebody. → Can he be waiting for somebody? He can't be waiting for somebody.

1. He understands every word you say. 2. She is really fond of the child. 3. They know how to get there. 4. She is crying. 5. She is looking for somebody. 6. They are always fighting. 7. But they are very fond of each other. 8. Children like to play here. 9. He is telling the truth. Model 2: o She knew about it. → Can she have known about it? She can't have known about it. 1. He saw the lion move. 2. There was a public meeting in the town. 3. On Friday morning Bill came to my office. 4. He was dismissed. 5. He has greatly changed. 6. I don't believe it. Phil would have never done such a thing.

Exercise 19. Do the task according to the pattern

Michael Hard is 60 years old. Sometimes feels that he has wasted his life. Here is the story about Michael Hard, read and replace the words in italics with 'could have' as in the examples. (missed opportunities)

Example: Michael Hard had an ability to go to University, but he didn't want to. → Michael Hard could have gone to University and he didn't want to go.

1. Michael had the intelligence to pass his final exams at school but he didn't take them. 2. Many people thought he had the ability to be a professional boxer when he was younger but he didn't try. 3. When he was 25, he had the chance to get married but he decided not to. 4. He had the opportunity to start his own business once, but he didn't want to. 5. Being left some money he had the chance to travel but he didn't like to. 6. He had the chance to emigrate to Australia a few years ago but he decided not to. 7. He had the chance to buy a house, but he preferred to have a flat. 8. Being a sociable man it was easy for him to make friends but he didn't want to get involved.

Exercise 20. Translate into English. We use could have + Participle II to say that someone had the ability or the opportunity to do something in the past but didn't do it. (missed opportunities) 1. Я не розумію цього. Мій син міг стати ким завгодно. Чому він вирішив стати фокусником? 2. Я не розумію цього. Джордж міг одружитися на кому завгодно. Чому він одружився на Мейбл? 3. Ці туристи могли харчуватися в будь-якому ресторані міста, Чому вони їли в Joe's кафетерії? 4. Грегорі міг вчинити на будь-який курс, який захотів би. Цікаво, чому він відвідує 1-й курс з французької мови четвертий раз. 5. Майкл міг дивитися по телевізору що завгодно вчора. Чому він дивився старий ковбойський фільм, який він уже бачив кілька раз перш? 6. Місіс Ватсон могла поїхати куди завгодно у відпустку. Ніхто не може зрозуміти, чому вона залишилася в Лондоні. 7. Мелісса Грант могла вибрати будь-яку роль в будь-якій п'єсі. Чому вона вибрала цю жахливу п'єсу? 8. Я не можу повірити .в це! Мій друг Джон міг відправити мені листівку з будь-якої країни, яку він відвідав під час своєї подорожі навколо світу. Але я так і

не отримав від нього звісток ні разу. 9. Сем міг написати будь-яку журнальну статтю, яку захотів би. Чому ж його остання стаття про пилососах? 10. Професор Джоунз - геній. Він міг винайти яку завгодно машину. Цікаво, чому він винайшов співочу друкарську машинку. 11. У Тома вчора було важливе інтерв'ю з приводу роботи. Він міг надіти будь-яку краватку. Цікаво, чому він вибрав смугасту зелену з оранжевим горошком.

Exercise 21. Translate into English, using the verb can, could, to be able to.

1. Ти міг би перевести цей текст? 2. Цю книгу можна купити в будь-якому магазині. 3. Він міг би зробити це минулого тижня. Він не був особливо зайнятий. 4. Він не міг показати нам розрахунки, так як вони не були готові. 5. У кімнаті темно, я не можу знайти свої речі. 6. Не може бути, щоб вона помилилася. 7. Невже вони чекали нас весь цей час? 8. Не може бути, щоб вас відправили до мене. Я не маю до цього ніякого відношення. 9. Чи можна мені чаю? 10. Він сказав, що ми можемо йти. 11. Я можу повернутися на автобусі. 12. Я міг би повернутися на автобусі. 13. Моріс втупився на лист. «І звідки він міг прийти?» 14. Еванс був настільки неграмотним, що він просто не міг написати жодного слова цієї доповіді. 15. Він взяв меню і сказав: «Ну, я вважаю, що ти хочеш їсти. Давай подивимося, що ми можемо поїсти ». 16. Дорога пішки назад в готель виявилася дуже довгою, і він ніколи не пройшов би її без карти. 17. У неї було квадратне обличчя, яке, ймовірно, ніколи не виглядало молодим. 18. На що ти дивишся, Віллі? - Ні на що. - Не можна дивитися ні на що. 19. Вона сказала гучнішим голосом: «Ти чуєш мене?» 20. Зараз вона вже могла б повернутися з відпустки. 21. Нікто не зміг би зробити на мене більше враження, ніж це зробив ти. 22. У той момент я міг би вбити його. 23. Йому не могло бути більше тридцяти років, коли ми з ним зустрілися вперше. 24. Я вмів плавати, коли мені було п'ять років. Папа навчив мене. 25. Вони дуже милі зі мною. Просто неможливо було бути більш ввічливими і послужливими. 26. Вже сутеніє. Скільки ж зараз може бути часу? 27. Я вмю плавати з п'яти років. 28. Нам вдалося переконати студентів у необхідності читати більше літератури.

Exercise 22. Translate into English, using the verb can, could. 1. Не може бути, щоб він збрехав. Це на нього не схоже. 2. Не може бути, щоб вони були брат і сестра. Вони зовсім не схожі один на одного. 3. Навряд чи це так. У всякому разі ми не можемо це довести. 4. Цікаво, що ви могли б запропонувати при подібних обставинах? 5. Навряд чи він міг допустити таку помилку. Він досвідчений інженер. 6. Якби не він, ми могли б заблукати. Вже сутеніло. 7. Не може бути, щоб вони нас помітили. Ми були досить далеко від них. 8. Не може бути, щоб вони нас не помітили. Ми були зовсім близько. 9. Не можна судити про людину по зовнішності. Зовнішність оманлива. 10. Чи можу я бачити керуючого? - На жаль, немає. Він буде сьогодні о 12. 11. Можна тебе на кілька слів? - Ну, в чому справа? 12. Це не можна зробити так швидко. Вам прийдеться зачекати. 13. Не міг він цього сказати. Він не такий дурний, як ти думаєш. 14. Я б давно міг це зробити, якби знав, що це так

терміново. 15. Я не вірю, що є хвороби, які не можна вилікувати. Ми просто не знаємо, як їх лікувати. 16. Не може бути, щоб це була правда.

Exercise 23. Choose can, could or be able to (or negative forms) to complete these sentences. If two answers are possible, write them both and underline the more likely one. 1. Peter has a computer thatfit into his jacket pocket. 2. I had some free time yesterday, so Iwrite a few letters. 3. From where we're standing, this land belongs to me for as far as yousee. 4. My teacher's given me a translation to do for homework, but I understand it. 5. Watch this, Mum; Istand on one leg. 6. 'When's Megan's birthday?' 'As far as I remember, it's in June.' 7. The plans were destroyed before they be read by the invading army. 8. Until you repay some of your present debt, we cannot lend you any more money. 9. 'The game be played by up to six people.' (from the instructions for a board game) 10. When I was younger, I was hopeless at sports. I throw or kick a ball properly.

Exercise 24. Complete these sentences with could or was/were able to. In one of each pair you can use either, so write them both. In the other it is more appropriate only to use was/were able to.

1. a. Despite yesterday's snowfalls, we drive home in less than an hour.
b. I only lived a mile from the office and drive to work in less than an hour.

2. a. When she was the manager of the company, shetake holidays when she wanted to. b. I was very busy at work, but Itake a short holiday over Christmas.

3. a. In the 16th century, fishermen smuggle wine into the country without fear of being caught by the authorities. b. Bennett smuggle the knife on board the plane without being detected by the security system

Exercise 25. Complete these sentences with can followed by one of the verbs below. If it is inappropriate to use can, use a form of to be able to instead. count find give investigate meet put forward start work 1. We don't seem ... to be able to ... find ... your letter in our files. 2. Youon me to help with the party. 3. You me a call at home. 4. The builders said that they might work today. 5. When the satellite is launched next week, scientiststhe rings around Saturn in more detail than ever before. 6. I doubt that heagain; his injuries are so severe. 7. We were refused our request, without evenour arguments. 8. Weoutside the cinema, if that's okay with you.

Exercise 26. Ask for permission in these situations. Use Can I...?, Could I...?, Can't I...? or Couldn't I...? (Be careful how you use my, you, your, and we in your answers.) You want ... 1. ... another drink ... Can I have another drink? ... 2. ... to leave your books with me. (be particularly polite) 3. ... to call your brother from my phone. 4. ... to talk to me about your job application. (be particularly polite) 5. ... to park your car on my drive. (I've already refused once) 6. ... to ask me exactly what my job is. 7. ... to pick some of the apples off the tree in my garden. (I've already refused once) 8. ... to come with me to my summer house.

(I've already refused once) 9. ... to have the last piece of my birthday cake. (be particularly polite)

Exercise 27. Write was(n't) allowed to/were(n't) allowed to or could(n't). If either is possible, write them both. 1. When I was young, children ... could/were allowed to ... leave school when they were 14. 2. Although he didn't have the necessary papers, heenter the country. 3. To the children's surprise, last night they go to the party with their parents. 4. Although I had travelled all day to see him, Ispeak to the manager. 5. They feared that he would kill again if hego free. 6. Sheleave school until she had completed her work. 7. When the weedsget out of control, the garden was ruined. 8. Ivisit Mark in prison, but Isend him letters and parcels. 9. The older girlswear lipstick. 10. Before the meeting finished, Igive my side of the story.

Exercise 28. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Вона могла б мені зараз допомогти, але вона не хоче цього робити. 2. У дитинстві я міг грати на подвір'ї до 8 години вечора. 3. Мені дозволили подивитися документи після того, як я попросив про це. 4. Джеку було дозволено грати у комп'ютерні ігри лише одну годину на день, коли йому було 10. 5. Мій тато був дуже суворим. Я не міг брати його машину, коли хотів. 6. Тебе відвезти додому? 7. Ви не могли б зробити це для мене? 8. Під час тесту не можна списувати. 9. Коли закінчиш проект, ти можеш винести сміття. 10. Я намагаюсь заснути. Він міг би співати не так голосно. 11. Він би міг допомогти їй донести ті важкі сумки вчора. 12. Мені можна взяти твій олівець? 13. У мене є авто. Я міг би підвезти тебе. 14. Можна скористатися твоїм мобільним телефоном? 15. Коли я була дитиною, мені не дозволяли носити коштовні прикраси мами. 16. Діти до 16 років не можуть давати згоду на лікування (to give consent to medical treatment). 17. Печиво було дуже смачним. 18. У її кімнаті завжди безлад. Вона могла б бути охайнішою. 19. Учора мені дозволили піти з роботи раніше. 20. Я знаю це правило. Якщо хочете, я можу вам його пояснити. 21. Я вам можу запропонувати чашечку кави? 22. Не можна водити без водійського посвідчення. 23. Можеш купити мені каву в автоматі для напоїв (drinks machine)? 24. Боюся, що містер Джейсон вже пішов з офісу. Я можу чимось допомогти? 25. Вони могли б розмовляти не так голосно. Вони у кінотеатрі!

Exercise 29. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. ... you (to give) me a lift to school? 2. They ... (to help) us to cope with that difficult task yesterday, but they didn't even try to do it. 3. Please ... I (to go) to Rebecca's house? 4. I was so angry I ... (to kill) her. 5. You ... (not to leave) your office during the working hours. 6. Actually, I'm busy at the moment – ... you (to call) me back tomorrow? 7. Children under eighteen ... (not to buy) alcohol. 8. You ... (to offer) to give me a lift into town. 9. 'We've nearly run out of fruit.' 'I ... (to add) apples to my shopping list.' 10. Don't laugh. You ... (to be serious)! 11. 'Could I borrow your umbrella?' 'No, you' 12. ... you (to change) this bulb for me? I can't reach. 13. My car won't start. When you come home, you ... (to fix) it. Then we ... (to go) for a drive. 14. He ... (to drink)

less beer yesterday. He looks terrible today. 15. My sister ... (to come) home whenever she wanted when she was a teenager. 16. I ... (to come) next week, or the week after. 17. 'I'm in a hurry to leave.' 'I ... (to give) you a lift to the station.' 18. ... you, please, (to clean up) the living room? 19. After the show yesterday, we ... (to go backstage) to meet the cast. 11 20. ... I (to offer) you something to drink? 21. During the election contest newspapers ... (not to publish) public opinion polls. 22. You ... (to tell) me beforehand that you might be late. 23. They ... (not to visit) him in the hospital yesterday. 24. Luckily, he ... (to take) the exam again. 25. Sorry, I missed that. ... you (to repeat) it, please?

FIXED EXPRESSIONS	
can afford (to do) something дозволити собі to have enough money to buy or pay for something; to have enough time to do something;	I knew I couldn't afford the rent. Я знав, що не можу сплачувати аренду.
can't help (doing) something can't keep from doing something не можу втриматись від чогось used to say that someone is unable to change his / her behaviour or feelings;	Don't laugh at him. He can't help the way he speaks. Не смійся з нього. Він нічого не може вдіяти зі своєю манерою говорити.
can't help but do something нічого не залишається як used to say there is no other way for somebody to do something;	He can't help but pay off his debts. Йому нічого не залишається, як виплатити борги.
can't stand (doing) something / somebody can't stand to do something не виносити / used to say that you do not like someone or something at all, or that you think that something is extremely unpleasant;	I can't stand him. Я його терпіти не можу. She couldn't stand doing housework. Вона ненавиділа виконувати хатню роботу.
couldn't care less бути байдужим	I couldn't care less what people think. Мені байдуже, що думають люди.

Exercise 30. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Я вас добре чую. 2. Коли їй було три роки, вона вмiла кататися на велосипеді (to ride a bike). 3. Ти пам'ятаєш, як її звать? 4. Ти чула, що вона казала? 5. Я піду з тобою у басейн. Ти побачиш, що я вмiю швидко плавати. 6. Я не можу сказати точну дату свого від'їзду. 7. Ми могли б йому допомогти, але подумали, що він не заслуговує на це. 8. Мені вдалося завершити роботу над своєю книгою три роки тому. 9. Він не міг перекладати складні тексти, коли вчився на першому курсі. 10. Я ніколи не могла тебе зрозуміти і тому я тебе залишаю. 11. Незважаючи на свою глухоту, він може спілкуватися з людьми. 12. Якщо ти не почнеш працювати зараз, ти не зможеш закінчити все через декілька днів. 13. Вона живе у Чикаго, наскільки я пам'ятаю. 14. Ми змогли тільки розгледіти (to make out) будівлю крізь дерева. 15. М'ясо було таким жорстким (tough), що я його ледь зміг прожувати. 16. Ти зміг описати

грабіжника поліції? 17. У мене все одно б не вийшло спекти пиріг, тому я навіть не намагалась. 18. Учора я пішла спати пізно, але заснути одразу не змогла. 19. Я не вміла кататися на ковзанах у десять років. А зараз я катаюся дуже добре. Я вже упродовж п'яти років вмію добре кататися на ковзанах. 20. Ми впевнені, що ти зміг би нам допомогти. Чому ти цього не зробив? 21. Нам якось вдалось його переконати. 22. Я не пам'ятаю такого Різдва. 23. Хірургу вдалося зашити рану. 24. Діти не змогли слідкувати за сюжетом (plot) фільму. Він був трохи заплутаний (to be a little confusing). 25. Я знаю, що Німеччина виграла, але я не можу сказати, з яким рахунком (the actual score).

Exercise 31. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. There's a big difference between understanding something and ... (to explain) it to others. 2. I want her ... (to use) a computer. 3. Dinosaurs ... (to run) fast. 4. I read the book three times but I ... (not to understand) it. 5. She is just eight months old but she ... (to walk). 6. John ... (to play tennis) really well. He's champion of his club. 7. Kate is too small. She ... (not to ride) a bike. 8. A boy was falling down but I ran up to him and ... (to save) him. 9. ... you (to hear) this unpleasant sound? 10. ... you (to read) when you were five? 11. My mother ... (not to explain) anything to her sister, so she didn't even try to do it. 12. ... you (to understand) anything now? 13. I ... (not to open) this window. I think it's stuck! 14. The guests were so tired they ... hardly (to stay awake). 15. Despite all the difficulties, she ... (to finish) the report. 16. I ... (to see) someone entering the house at 5 o'clock yesterday. 17. She ... (not to cope) with this task yet. 18. ... you (to hear) him singing yesterday? 19. Who ... (to do) this work? 20. The doctor examined her but ... (to find) nothing wrong. 21. ... you (to help) them? 22. Finally, she ... (to persuade) me, but she ... (not to persuade) the rest. 23. She ... (to pass) the exam but she didn't really try. 24. I was sent an email but I ... (not to open) that attachment. 25. ... (to speak) another foreign language fluently is a great advantage when you are looking for a job.

Exercise 32. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Їжа може спричиняти звикання (be addictive). 2. Може, він ще і виграє, хоча це дуже мало ймовірно. 3. Доглядати за двома дітьми може бути складно. 4. Моя дочка могла забути свій портфель у школі. 5. Дивись! То Джек. Куди це він може йти? 6. Не хвилюйся. Може, вони забули подзвонити. 7. Моя мама не могла сказати цього. Вона дуже ввічлива жінка. 8. Вона не може бути його дівчиною. Вона може бути його сестрою. 9. Його кашель може бути симптомом сильної застуди. 10. Надмірне споживання цукру може призвести до проблем зі здоров'ям. 11. У Мері висока температура. Мабуть, вона не піде завтра на заняття. 12. Він посміхається. Його посмішка може означати, що він у гарному настрої. 13. У Пола бідна родина. Не може бути, що він поїхав на навчання до США. 14. Можливо, одного дня люди зможуть усе купувати через Інтернет. 15. Вона може бути у батьків, але я не впевнений. 16. Він у в'язниці. Який злочин він міг скоїти? 17. Цукор закінчився. Хто це міг його з'їсти? 18. Стрес може спричиняти психічні хвороби (mental illness). 19. І що Саллі може писати зараз? 20. Її мати часом могла бути дуже вимогливою (be demanding). 21. Це не смішно! Хтось міг отримати

пошкодження. 22. «Дзвонять». «Хто це може бути?» «Це може бути тільки Ден. Лише він знає цей номер». 23. Може, дощ і піде, але це буває рідко в цій місцевості. 24. Не може бути, щоб вона була перукарем. Її волосся недбало зачісане (be a mess). 25. Якщо у покупців виникають скарги, вони можуть звернутися до менеджера.

Exercise 33. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. Poor nutrition ... (to lead) to health problems in later life. 2. It ... (to take) a month, or maybe more, to complete. 3. They ... (not to arrive) already, surely! 4. I ... (to see) them tomorrow. 5. We ... still (to catch) the train if we leave now. 6. Now we ... (to live) in luxury for the rest of our lives. 7. This chair ... (not to be) made of wood. It is made of plastic. 8. It ... (to rain). Take your umbrella. 9. It wasn't always sunny. It ...often (to rain) in winter. 10. It's high time they were here. They ... (to lose) their way. 11. The fight ... (to get out of hand) if the police hadn't arrived. 12. I find it inconceivable that she ... (be a killer). 13. That ... (not to be right). 14. You ... (to buy) our goods over the Internet. 15. She ... (be famous) one day. 16. 'Where ... (to go) to?' 'He's going to Manuela's party?' 17. 'The damage ... (not to be caused) accidentally.' 'Of course, not.' 18. 'She is always thirsty. It ... (to be) a symptom of diabetes.' 'It ... hardly (to be) diabetes. Common symptoms of diabetes are weight loss and fatigue.' 19. You ... (to get) pasta in lots of different shapes. 20. I ... (to visit) you yesterday but I didn't know where you live. 21. It ... (to rain). It's getting cloudy. 22. We ... (to count) on this warm weather lasting. 23. He always wears smart suits. He ... (to be) a businessman. I have no doubt. 24. The accident ... (to be avoided). 25. Peter ... really (to be annoying).

Exercise 34. Translate the sentences: 1. Портрет ідеальний. Ти не зміг би намалювати краще 2. Ти б зміг набрати більше балів, якби краще підготувався 3. З цього місця не видно пляж 4. Думаю, що вона зможе дістати квитки 5. Тобі вдалося її переконати? – Ні, я не зміг. 6. Коли ми жили в селі ми могли ночувати під відкритим небом 7. Бібліотеку можна знайти на першому поверсі 8. Намагайся говорити чіткіше. Я не розумію тебе 9. Вона так гарно розповідала, що я змогла уявити всі деталі інтер'єру 10. Нам так і не вдалося знайти кращий маршрут. 11. Він зміг знайти правильний ключ? – Так, але це зайняло півдня. 12. Ти чудово все спланував. Я б не справився краще. 13. Якби я знав про твій приїзд, я б зміг тебе зустріти. 14. Дитина така маленька, а вже вміє говорити 15. Коли я була молодша, то не вміла говорити італійською так, як зараз. 16. Чому б тобі не взяти відпустку? Ти вже давно міг це зробити. 17. Як ви змогли розгадати цю загадку? Я не зрозумів її суті. 18. Чому ти йшла пішки всю дорогу? Ти ж могла викликати таксі. 19. Я кілька днів не міг знайти свій записник. 20. Ми могли взяти їжу з собою, але ми вирішили спробувати місцеву кухню.

Exercise 35. Translate the sentences: 1. Я не чую, що ти говориш. Ти надто далеко. 2. Не можна курити в приміщенні. 3. Ця квартира ідеальна, я не зміг би обрати кращу. 4. Якби ти раніше прийшла, то змогла б зустрітися з ними. 5. Хто б це міг там грати так пізно? 6. Напої можна купити внизу. 7. Ми могли взяти таксі, але ми вирішили пройтися пішки і оглянути місцеві

красивди. 8. Як тобі вдалося її знайти серед цього мотлоху? 9. Чому це він такий засмучений? 10. Де ж можуть бути мої рукавиці? Я не можу їх ніде знайти. 11. Неможливо одночасно їсти і говорити. 12. Бігати буває дуже корисно і весело. 13. Тут буває дуже жарко влітку. 14. Він міг часто губити ключі від квартири в дитинстві. 15. Тут не можна розмовляти. Триває екзамен. 16. Ти зможеш користуватися комп'ютером, коли я закінчу писати листа. 17. Зараз не можна телефонувати їй, уже пізно. 18. Ти б змогла вивчити англійську мову, якби захотіла. 19. Він може бути дуже переконливий, якщо захоче. 20. Підійди ближче, бо я не бачу твого обличчя. 21. Я шкодую, що не змогла дістати квитки на її концерт. 22. Де ж він міг покласти свої окуляри? 23. Тобі вдалося з'ясувати всі подробиці справи? – Ні, не вдалося. 24. Хто це міг забрати мої речі?

2. May

The verb 'may' has two forms: 'may' for the Present Tense, 'might' for the Past Tense. The expressions 'to be allowed to' and 'to be permitted to' can be used to supply the missing forms of the verb 'may'. May expresses:

1. Permission (asking for permission, giving or refusing it; it depends on the will of the person addressed, i.e. the speaker gives the permission.)

You may... is the equivalent of 'I (personally) give you permission'. 'May' is more formal, polite and 'respectful' than 'can' and 'could'. 'Might' is the most hesitant, polite, 'respect, rather old fashioned, rather less common than the other three and is very formal.

'May' and 'might' are used to ask for permission when we do not know the other person very well.

You can ... is more general and does not necessarily imply personal permission. Permission is determined by the circumstances. 'Can' is characteristic of colloquial English and more common.

We do not use could or might to give permission. We do not use could not or might not to refuse permission.

o Asking for permission (May I ..., Might I...) · May I use the phone, please? – Certainly. (= Will you allow me to use your phone?) · Can I borrow your pencil? – Of course. (Is it all right if I borrow your pencil? – informal sentence) · Might I require if you are the owner? · May I interrupt? · May I see the chief now? – Yes, you may.

Might I ask the court for an adjournment (перерва) at this point? · Excuse me, could I leave my coat here? · A student asks his friend, "Steve, can I borrow your book?" · A student asks his teacher, "Professor, may I borrow your book?" · Permission to ask an indiscreet question may be asked with the formulas 'if I may ask' and more tentative (неуверенный, осторожный) 'if I might ask': • How much did you pay for this house if I may ask /if I might ask?

There is a difference in meaning between 'may' and 'be allowed to' in questions. Study the example: • May I use your fax machine? (= Will you allow me to use your fax machine?) • Are we allowed to use the photocopier? (= What is the rule?) • Are we allowed to use a dictionary for this test?

o Giving permission (may) · He is in the room. You may see him. · Johnny may stay up (не лягати спати) late. · Each player may choose five cards. · You may watch TV for as long as you like. · You may leave as soon as you have finished. · You may ask for information here. (formal – written notice)

o Refusing permission (may not) · Visitors may not enter the laboratories. (formal – written notice) · Candidates may not attempt more than three questions. · Candidates may not bring a calculator into the examination room.

Permission from some other authority can be given or refused more emphatically with: ‘be allowed to’, ‘be permitted to’, and ‘be forbidden to’ · You are allowed to/are not allowed to smoke here. = You can/can’t/may/may not smoke here. · You are permitted to/are not permitted to stay out late. = You can/can’t/may/may not stay out late. · You are forbidden to touch the statues in the museum. = You mustn’t touch the statues in the museum. o Talking about permission (might, be allowed, may) · Students are allowed to borrow books from the library.

o In Reported speech: · He told me that I might smoke in the room. · He asked me if he might join us.

o You have to use ‘be allowed to’ to supply the missing forms of the verb ‘may’, and when the action was permitted and performed. · Teachers will be allowed to decide for themselves.

2. Prohibition. It is used in negative sentences; ‘may not’ = ‘are not allowed to’ o ‘may’

o ‘may’ is seldom used to express prohibition. · ‘mustn’t’, ‘can’t’, ‘don’t’ – are often used to express prohibition instead of ‘may not’ · You may not go swimming (= you are not allowed). Не смій ходити купатися. · You may not enter the room until I say so.

May I open the window? - No, you may not. (actual prohibition). – No, you mustn’t.– No, you can’t. I’m sorry, you can’t. (= it is impossible; more colloquial. It denotes the absence of possibility depending on circumstances, rules, laws, etc). – No, you don’t, please; I’m afraid not. (it is rather asking somebody not to do something).

3. Request (may I ..., might I ..., may we ..., might we ...) o ‘may’ is more formal and polite than ‘can’ and ‘could’ · May I trouble you for the dictionary? – Certainly. May I help you? – Of course you may. · When may we leave? May we leave early? o ‘might’ expresses a more polite request and is quite formal; it is used much less frequently than ‘can’, ‘could’ or ‘may’ · Might I use your telephone? – Of course you may. (not: – Of course you might.) · I wonder if I might/could use your telephone. – No, you may not, I’m afraid. · Do you think I might/could borrow your book? Might I possibly be allowed to smoke here? (Requests may be overcautious or obsequious ‘may’, ‘might’ are used only with I or we in polite requests. May I have some coffee? (May you give me some coffee? – is incorrect). Will you pass the salt? (May you pass the salt? – is incorrect)

In practice ‘can, could and may’ are often interchangeable in ‘neutral’ requests. Commonest responses with modals are: affirmative: Of course you

can./Of course you may. (not: could/might) negative: No, you can't/ No, you may not. (not: could not/might not). Non-modal responses are: 'Certainly'/'Of course'/'Why not?'/ 'No, I'm afraid you can't.'/'I'm afraid not'/'I'd rather you didn't'

4a. Possibility = general possibility; 'may'; ('might' is not used.) o the action refers to the present or future o 'may' is used only in affirmative sentences with the Indefinite Infinitive o 'might' is used only in indirect speech (though 'could' is preferable in this case)

- You may see him every morning walking with his child.
- You may still hear this expression used by older people.
- You may order a taxi by telephone.

4b. Factual, specific possibility; supposition implying doubt, uncertainty
o We use 'may'/'might' in affirmative and negative sentences with all forms of the Infinitive; the time reference is indicated by the form of the Infinitive; the form 'might' expresses greater doubt and uncertainty

o The meaning is similar to 'it is possible', 'perhaps', 'maybe', 'it is likely'. We use 'may'/'might' to show that something is possible in a specific situation.

o In this meaning we can also use 'could' (not 'can') in affirmative sentences
o In Ukrainian it corresponds to: можливо ·It may be true. or It might be true. · The weather forecast is not very good. It may rain tomorrow (= Perhaps, it will rain tomorrow) He might come soon. (= Maybe, he will come soon.) He may not know that you are here. (= Perhaps, he doesn't know that you are here) He may not have got my telegram. We had better phone them, they might not have heard the news. (= Perhaps they haven't heard the news.) They may have been discussing the question for an hour. · They may have decided to stay for the night there. · He might not have met her at the party. Where is Mary? – She may/might have gone shopping. – She could have gone shopping. If it gets colder tomorrow, it may/might/could snow.

o In spoken English we often contract 'might not' to 'mightn't'. We don't usually contract 'may not'; the contracted form 'mayn't' is very rare. o might is normally a little less sure than may; could is normally less sure than may or might: may, might, could. Sally may be teaching. (50% certain, it's possible that she is teaching.) " You might need to come tomorrow. (40 % certain, perhaps you need to come tomorrow.). She could be angry. (40% certain, it's possible she is angry.)

4c. We use 'might + the Indefinite Infinitive'/'could + the Indefinite Infinitive' to say that it is possible that something will happen

• Never let your children play with matches. They might/could start a fire and burn themselves.

• Make sure you cover electrical sockets when they are not in use. Your children might/could give themselves an electric shock.

o We use 'might have + participle II'/'could have + participle II' to say that something was possible in the past but didn't happen. Bob drove very carelessly yesterday. He could/might have had an accident, but luckily he didn't. The child

might/could have got lost but in fact he came home earlier than others.

5. Reproach, disapproval, criticism.

- o Only 'might' is used, in affirmative sentences.
- o In Ukrainian 'might' corresponds to 'міг би' · might + the Indefinite Infinitive expresses a mild reproach, a kind of request, some hypothetical wish (present or future reference)
 - You might offer your help. (present or future reference)
 - You might pay more attention to your lessons.
- might + the Perfect Infinitive expresses a reproach about something that has not been done and it renders irritation (annoyance) (past reference)
 - You might have bought her flowers. (past reference)
 - You are becoming forgetful. You might have reminded me about it.
 - You might have gone to see your sister when she was in trouble.

6. Suggestion.

We use 'you might', followed by a verb meaning 'like', 'want' to make a suggestion in a very polite way.

- I thought perhaps you might like to come along with me.
- You might want to try another shop. · We can also use 'It might be', followed by a noun-group or an adjective and 'toinfinitive'.
 - I think it might be a good idea to stay there.
 - It might be wise to get a new car

7. 'Might' expresses unreality in Conditional sentences • If you tried, you might get the book. (present or future reference)

- If I knew them better, I might invite them to dinner.
- If she had been there, she might have helped us. (past reference)
- If we had taken the other road, we might have arrived earlier. (past reference)

8. 'may (just) as well' and 'might (just) as well' can be used interchangeably to express the idea 'it makes no difference'/we use these phrases with other persons to suggest or recommend an action :

- It's not very far, so we may/might as well go on foot. (it makes no difference)
 - I may as well take the child with me. (Я краще...).
 - The buses are so expensive these days; you might as well get a taxi. (= taxis are just as good, no more expensive)
 - If your mother has made up her mind, my dear, you may/might just as well give in without any fuss.
 - I might as well stay at home tonight.

9. 'may well'; 'might well'; 'could well' (= 'it is extremely likely' дуже ймовірно) can be used interchangeably.

- He may/might/could well find that the course is too difficult.

10. It might have been worse. (Могло бути й гірше)(Set phrase)

11. If I may say so. – in this phrase the meaning of permission is considerably weakened

• If I may say so, I think you have treated him very badly.

Exercise 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb may/might. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. 1. He might have missed the train. 2. She may not have received the letter. 3. May I come in? 4. You might have told me earlier about it. 5. You may take any book you like. 6. Don't worry about her. She may be at her friend's house now. 7. I am sure you will soon hear from her. She may just be writing to you now. 8. You may think whatever you like. 9. The telegram may have been sent yesterday. 10. Nobody else is going to turn up now, so you may as well go home. 11. Look into the canteen. He may be having a snack there now. 12. He may have tried to convince them but failed. 13. You might have treated him better. 14. 'I'll go on Monday by a slow train.' – 'You might just as well wait till Tuesday and go by the fast train.' 15. We aren't sure what we are going to do tomorrow. We might go to the beach. (= Perhaps we will go to the beach.) 16. Where was Sally last night? – I think she may have been at the theatre. (= I think perhaps she was at the theatre.) 17. She walked straight past me without saying hello. – She might not have seen you. (= Perhaps she didn't see you.) 18. You were stupid to try to climb that tree. You might have killed yourself. 19. Shall we get a taxi or wait for a bus? – We might as well wait for the bus. We're not in a hurry, are we? 20. It may be necessary to call a doctor. 21. It is not very far, so we may/might as well go on foot. 22. There might have been someone waiting outside. 23. There might have been a strike. 24. Each player may choose five cards. (permission; rule-making, e.g. for games).

Exercise 2. Read the following situations and ask for, give or refuse permission, as in the example. 1. Your best friend wants to wear your leather jacket but you are going to wear it yourself. What do you say?...I'm sorry but you can't wear my leather jacket..... 2. You want to borrow your father's car for the evening. You ask him and he agrees. What does he say? 3. You are on a train and you want someone to help you with your luggage. You ask the inspector. What do you say? 4. You are in a shop and want to try on a pair of trousers. What do you say to the shop assistant? 5. You are on a plane and you are listening to your walkman. After a while, a flight attendant tells you that you are not allowed to use your walkman. What does he/she say?

Exercise 3. There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them. (permission) 1. 'Can I use your car this evening?' 'Yes, of course, you could.' 2. The law says that you might not drive a car in Britain without a seat belt. 3. 'May I ask you for a favour?' 'Of course, you can.' 4. 'Could I borrow your dictionary?' 'Yes, of course, you might.' 5. My brother may borrow my sister's computer any time he wants to. 6. You can have a look at my newspaper if you like. 7. My sister's daughter could stay up late and watch the World Cup on TV last night. 8. I was allowed to see him for a moment yesterday.

Exercise 4. Write these sentences in a different way using may or might.

1. Perhaps Margaret is in her office. ... She might be in her office. ...
2. Perhaps Margaret is busy. 3. Perhaps she is working. 4. Perhaps she wants to be alone. 5. Perhaps she was ill yesterday. 6. Perhaps she went home early. 7.

Perhaps she had to go home early. 8. Perhaps she was working yesterday. In sentences 9-11 use may not or might not 9. Perhaps she doesn't want to see me. 10. Perhaps she isn't working today. 11. Perhaps she wasn't feeling well yesterday.

Exercise 5. What do you think? Write your opinions about the statements. Example: It'll rain tomorrow. → Yes, I think it will. / No, I don't think it will./ I'm not sure. It might.

1. The next leader of your country will be a woman. 2. You will go to the cinema this month. 3. You will receive a letter this week. 4. The price of your favourite drink will go up this year. 5. Someone will ask you a difficult question today. 6. You will eat in a restaurant next week. 7. There will be some very good news tomorrow. 8. You will go to a party this weekend. 9. The weather will be better next month than it is now. 10. You will listen to music this evening.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences with a verb in the correct form. 1. 'Where's Bob?' 'I'm not sure. He might ... be having ... lunch.' 2. 'Who is that man with Ann?' 'I'm not sure. It might her brother.' 3. 'Who was the man we saw with Ann yesterday?' 'I'm not sure. It might her brother.' 4. 'Why are those people waiting in the street?' 'I don't know. They mightfor a bus 5. 'Shall I buy this book for Tim?' 'You'd better not. He might already.....it.'

Exercise 7. Answer the following questions with suitable suggestions, using may (or might) and the words in brackets. 1 Terry: Why is John wearing sunglasses? It's not sunny. You: (have some problem with his eyes) He may have some problems with his eyes. ... 2 Jill: Why didn't Jane come to the party last night? You: (have a row with her boyfriend) ... She might have had a row with her boyfriend. ... 3 Sue: Why is Alan in such a bad mood today? You: (sleep badly last night) 4 Roy: Why is Shelley looking under the desk? You: (drop something) 5 Jill: Where can I have put my bag? You: (be under the bed) 6 Zoe: Why hasn't anybody said 'Happy Birthday' to me? You: (plan a surprise) 7 Tim: Why does Henry look so miserable? You: (have some bad news) 8 Ella: Why isn't Sophie in the office today? You: (work at home) 9 John: Why didn't Rosemary come to the cinema last night? You: (feel tired)

Exercise 8. Read the situations and make sentences from the words in brackets. Use may or might.

1. I can't find George anywhere. I wonder where he is.
 - a. (he / go / shopping) ...He may have gone shopping....
 - b. (he / play / tennis) ...He might be playing tennis....
2. I'm looking for Helen. Do you know where she is?
 - a. (she / watch / TV / in her room)
 - b. (she / go / out)
3. I can't find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
 - a. (it / be / in the car)
 - b. (you / leave / in the restaurant last night)
4. Why didn't Tom answer the doorbell? I'm sure he was in the house at the time.
 - a. (he / be / in the bath)

b. (he/not/ hear/the bell)

Exercise 9. Complete the sentences using might not or couldn't. 1. A: Do you think she saw you? B: No, she was too far away. ... She couldn't have seen me. ... 2. A: I wonder why she didn't say hello. Perhaps she didn't see me. B: That's possible. ...She might not have seen you. 3. A: I wonder why Ann didn't come to the party. Perhaps she wasn't invited. B: Yes, it's possible. She 4. A: Tom loves parties. I'm sure he would have come to the party if he'd been invited. B: I agree. He5. A: I wonder how the fire started. Do you think it was an accident? B: No, the police say it 6. A: How did the fire start? I suppose it was an accident. B: Well, the police aren't sure. They say it

Exercise 10. Complete the sentences using might be able to or might have to + a suitable verb. 1. I can't help you but why don't you ask Jill? She ... might be able to help... you. 2. I can't meet you this evening but Iyou tomorrow evening. 3. I'm not working on Saturday but I on Sunday. 4. George isn't well. He to hospital for an operation.

Exercise 11. Write sentences with may not or might not. 1. (I don't know if Ann will come to the party.) ...Ann might not come to the party.... 2. (I don't know if I'll go out this evening.) I3. (I don't know if Tom will like the present I bought for him.) Tom 4. (I don't know if Sue will be able to meet us this evening.)

Exercise 12. Read the situations and make sentences with may/might as well. 1. You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour. You say: We'll have to wait an hour for the next bus.We might as well walk.... 2. You have a free ticket for a concert. You're not very keen on the concert but you decide to go. You say: I to the concert. It's a pity to waste a free ticket. 3. You're in a cafe with a friend. You've finished your drinks. It's a nice cafe and there is no reason to go now, so why not have another drink? You say: We What would you like? 4. You and a friend are at home. You are bored. There's a film on TV starting in a few minutes. You say: There's nothing else to do.

Exercise 13. Match column A to column B, then ask and answer questions, as in the example.

A	B
1. Tell someone where you are travelling to.	a. You could have trouble finding a place to stay.
2. Have some of the local currency with you.	b. Someone might steal them or you might lose them.
3. Reserve a hotel room before you leave.	c. You might have to prove your identity.
4. Don't take any valuables with you.	d. They might need to contact you.
5. Always carry your passport with you	e. You might not find banks open when you arrive.

Example: 1. - d. – Tell someone where you are travelling to. – Why? – They might need to contact you.

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English using 'may' in all of its possible meanings. 1. Ти не був так вже сильно зайнятий. Ти міг би нам допомогти. 2. Запитай його, чи можна нам оглянути лабораторію. 3. Він міг би зробити це для вас. Йому це зовсім не важко. 4. Він мало не розбив вікно. 5. Вона, може бути, запізниться. 6. Вони, можливо, працюють над цією ж проблемою. 7. До вечора може піти дощ. 8. Їх, можливо, не було вчора в місті. 9. Вони, можливо, подумали, що ми не прийдемо в такий дощ. 10. Я згоден, що дозволити Пітеру поїхати за кордон, можливо, було помилкою. Але я думав, що це, може бути, поверне його до роботи. 11. Я, може бути, не згадував про це в своїх листах, але я виконав там досить велику роботу. 12. Не побачивши ні свого батька, ні хлопчика, Меггі подумала, що вони, можливо, переставляють книги на полицях. 13. Ви, можливо, чули його ім'я. 14. Мені спало на думку, що він потай пишався сином, хоча він, можливо, і не знав цього. 15. У нього велика родина. Я можу собі уявити, що він, можливо, шукає собі кращу роботу. 16. У мене було враження, що гроза може вибухнути в будь-який момент. 17. Вона не була шведкою, але її можна було прийняти за шведку. 18. Може бути, він зараз в готелі і чекає мене. 19. Я мало не спізнився на останній автобус.

Exercise 15. Translate the following sentences into English using 'can' ('could') and 'may' ('might'). 1. Може, піде дощ. 2. Може, дощу не буде. 3. Не може бути, щоб пішов дощ. 4. Невже буде дощ? 5. Чи може, він уже бачив їх. 6. Чи може, він не бачив їх. 7. Не може бути, щоб він бачив їх. 8. Просто не може бути, щоб він бачив їх. 9. Невже він бачив їх? 10. І де це він міг їх бачити? 11. Може, вони чекають нас. 12. Може, вони не чекають нас. 13. Не може бути, щоб вони чекали нас. 14. Невже вони чекають нас? 15. І кого це вони можуть чекати? 16. Просто не може бути, щоб вони чекали нас. 17. Я, мабуть, піду. 18. Я, мабуть, краще залишуся вдома. 19. Я мало не загубив ключі. 20. Все могло б бути набагато гірше. 21. Погода - гірше нікуди. 22. Мені нічого не залишалося робити, як залишитися з ними. 23. Я не міг не погодитися з ними. 24. Мені це абсолютно байдуже.

Exercise 16. Where necessary, suggest a correction for these sentences, or put a √.

1. I think I saw her go out, so she mightn't be at home. 2. It mightn't be true. There must be some mistake. 3. It's snowing heavily in Scotland so it can take Hugh a long time to get here. 4. If we don't get to the market soon, they can't have any flowers left. They will all have been sold. 5. If you're free at the moment, we may have a job for you. 6. May you be given the job permanently? 7. I thought they were on holiday - but I can be wrong, of course. 8. I might go out later if the weather improves. 9. Children may enter only when accompanied by an adult. 10. 'I've had this birthday card, but it doesn't say who sent it.' 'May it be from Ron?'

Exercise 17. Which one means the same as the sentence given, (a) or (b)? (can't, mightn't)

1. It's possible that they don't live here any longer.
 - a. They mightn't live here any longer.

- b. They can't live here any longer.
- 2. It isn't possible that they are twins.
 - a. They mightn't be twins.
 - b. They can't be twins.
- 3. It could be that they are not married.
 - a. They mightn't be married.
 - b. They can't be married.

Exercise 18. Which sentence, (a) or (b), is most likely to follow the one given?

- 1. Don't throw the picture away, give it to Tony. a. He might have liked it. b. He might like it.
- 2. When she went out this morning, she left her briefcase here. a. She might have meant to leave it behind. b. She might mean to leave it behind.
- 3. Nobody knows where the jewels have gone. a. They might have been stolen. b. They might be stolen.
- 4. Don't throw away the rest of the meat. a. We might have wanted it for dinner. b. We might want it for dinner.
- 5. Don't wait for me. a. I might have been a few minutes late. b. I might be a few minutes late.

Exercise 19. Underline the word or words that are possible in each sentence. (can, could, may, might)

- 1. 'Do you know where Mark left the car keys?' 'He might/can have left them on the table.'
- 2. If Jerry hadn't grabbed my arm, I may/might have fallen off the bridge.
- 3. They might/could have chosen anyone for the job, but they picked me.
- 4. I could/may have stayed overnight with Don and Mary, but I thought I should get home as soon as possible.
- 5. In factories in the 19th century, a worker could/may be dismissed for being ill.
- 6. I may/could have cleaned the house by the time you get home.
- 7. By the end of the day I can/may have finished painting the walls. Tomorrow I'll start on the ceiling.
- 8. It can/could be possible one day to detect disease simply by looking at people's eyes.

Exercise 20. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use can or may. (Possibility)

Example: It is sometimes very hot here in the summer. → It can be very hot here in the summer.

- 1. Perhaps it will be very hot here tomorrow. → It
- 2. Perhaps I am wrong. → I
- 3. It is possible for anyone to be wrong. → Anyone
- 4. Cats sometimes live for 20 years. → Cats
- 5. Perhaps your cat will live for 20 years. → Your cat

Exercise 21. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs.

- 1. «Вам не можна вмикати музику надто гучно, люба» – сказала хазяйка квартири (landlady).
- 2. «Чи не могла б я вам чимось допомогти?» – сказала секретар нерішучим голосом (in a tentative voice).
- 3. Здається, у тебе нема грошей. Може, мені спробувати знайти тобі пристойну роботу?
- 4. Ти виглядаєш виснаженим. Може, тебе підвести додому?
- 5. Можна тебе запитати про щось особисте?
- 6. Коли я служив в армії (to do one's military service), нам можна було ходити у кафе тільки у вільний від служби час (to be off duty).
- 7. Тату, можна заплатити за навчання (tuition) твоєю кредитною карткою?
- 8. Ти могла хоча б сказати, що збираєшся витратити мої гроші.
- 9. Дівчина виглядає милою, але вона могла б понести сумки своєї мами.
- 10.

«Джейн знову запізнюється». «Так, вона жінка. Але вона могла б бути більш уважною до людей (to be considerate to sb)». 11. Нехай у новому році вас супроводжує успіх! 12. Директор каже, що у нас може бути один відгул (day off) на місяць за умови, якщо ми будемо напружено працювати впродовж цього часу. 13. Сутеніє. Ти міг би увімкнути ще одну лампу. 14. Ми могли б зайти до хлібного магазину дорогою додому. Я впевнена, що у нас закінчився хліб. 15. Акумулятор на комп'ютері (computer battery) розряджається (to get flat). Ти міг би його увімкнути в розетку (to plug smth in), щоб не втратити дані (data). 16. «Раніше люди дізнавались про життя в інших країнах з книг та телебачення». «Це не дивно, адже вони не могли їздити за кордон». 17. Вчитель сказав, що ми можемо піти додому на двадцять хвилин раніше. 18. Можна я вишлю повідомлення своєму покупцю по вашому комп'ютеру? 19. Діти з нетерпінням чекають, щоб їм дозволили піти на ковзанку (skating rink). 20. Я чула, що ти їдеш у відпустку. Можна я зустріну новий рік з друзями у твоїй квартирі? 21. Не міг би я позичити вашу парасольку? 22. Можна мені сьогодні піти на десять хвилин раніше? 23. Будь ласка, можна вашу кредитну картку? 24. Ваша швидкість перевищила шістдесят миль на годину. Можна поглянути на ваше водійське посвідчення? 25. Можна на хвилинку взяти вашу ручку?

Exercise 22. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. ... I (to ask) you a question? 2. ... we (to help) you find your seats? 3. ... I (to have) your phone number, please? 4. 'I have a high blood pressure. Maybe I should go to the chemist's and buy some medicine for it.' 'You ... also (to consult) your doctor.' 5. ... I (to use) your calculator? 6. 'I don't know whether to sign these documents or not.' 'You ... (to consult) your lawyer first.' 7. You ... (to do the washing up) more thoroughly. The plates were greasy. 8. They wanted to know if they ... (to come) later. 9. You ... (not to use) cellular phones on most aircraft. 10. Mummy, I want ... (to ride) the roller coaster (американські гірки) all by myself. 11. You ... at least (to say) 'thank you'. What are you waiting for? 12. '... Bhagwan (to bless) you,' he said. 13. 'I don't want to wear these jeans any longer.' 'You ... (to have) them cut and wear as shorts.' 14. You ... (not to borrow) the car until you can be more careful with it. 15. ... I (to make a suggestion)? 16. ... we (to be) of some assistance? 17. Christine wants ... (to have) a pet hamster. 18. We ... (to eat) sweets whenever we wanted in our childhood. 19. You ... (to help) gather all these beads. The child may accidentally swallow one of them. 20. ... I (to present) my sons? 21. ... I (to call) your attention to item seven on the agenda (порядок денний)? 22. He asks if he ... (to borrow) the car. 23. ... I (to show) you the way to the dean's room? 24. 'Hello, ... I (to speak) to Jim Smith?' 'Yes, speaking.' 25. You ... (not to buy) cigarettes if you are under the age of sixteen.

FIXED EXPRESSIONS

<p>May / might as well can be used to suggest that someone should do something, because there is no good reason to do anything else.</p>	<p>There's nobody interesting to talk to. We may as well go home. Тут нема з ким поспілкуватися. Краще ми підемо додому.</p>
---	---

<p>Might as well is also used to compare one unpleasant situation with another.</p>	<p>You never listen. I might as well talk to a brick wall. Ти ніколи не слухаєш. З таким же успіхом я можу розмовляти з цегляною стіною.</p>
<p>We use may after ‘so that’ or ‘in order that’ to say that someone does something in order to make something else possible.</p>	<p>The hero sacrifices his life so that his friend may live. Герой жертвує своїм життям заради свого друга.</p>
<p>This expression is used to say that even though something is perhaps true, something different or opposite is also true.</p>	<p>You <i>may not like</i> her, but you have to admit that she’s good at her job. Може, вона тобі і не подобається, але ти мусиш визнати, що обов’язки вона свої виконує добре.</p>
<p>An expression written at the beginning of a formal letter when you do not know the name of the person you want to communicate with or used, for example, at the beginning of a public notice or of a job reference about sb’s character and ability.</p>	<p>To whom it may concern, I have been a devoted customer of your company for years. I am writing to complain about the unsatisfactory service that I received last week. Усім зацікавленим особам</p>

Exercise 23. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs.

1. Дослідження показує, що комп’ютерні ігри можуть викликати агресію. 2. Можливо, буде дощ. Небо зтягнуто хмарами. 3. Вони, можливо, дзвонили, коли нас не було вдома. 4. Будь надалі (for future) обережним. Ти міг би підпалити (to set fire to smth) гараж. 5. Слони можуть їсти до 16 годин на день. 6. «Я чула, що фірма знаходиться у дуже скрутній ситуації і може збанкрутувати». «Не хвилюйся, можливо, це неправда». 7. Альпініст міг впасти зі скелі, якби не був прив’язаний товстою мотузкою. 8. Можливо, його роман стане бестселером. 9. Йому сподобається ця іграшка в подарунок? 10. Раніше дворяни могли запрошувати гувернанток для своїх дітей з-за кордону. 11. Ми, можливо, вже бродимо (to roam) в горах годин п’ять. Ми заблукали? 12. Я не можу знайти ключі. Мабуть, я їх загубила. 13. Біл погано спить. Я думаю, у нього можуть бути проблеми у школі. 14. Що ця аббревіатура може означати? (to stand for). 15. «У мене крутиться голова». «Мабуть, ти випив забагато кави». 16. Вона з нами не привіталась. Можливо, вона не впізнала нас. 17. Приходь о сьомій вечора. Можливо, до того часу усі зберуться. 18. Дивись який він вправний! Мабуть, він вже багато років займається грою на гітарі. 19. Як смачно пахне! Пиріг, мабуть, вже підрум’янився (to brown). 20. Присутність свіжих фруктів у харчуванні може запобігати (to protect against) ожирінню. 21. Що він може робити в офісі у такий пізній час? 22. Коли я був дитиною, я міг годинами безрезультатно (without any progress) сидіти за підручниками. Я навчався без ентузіазму. 23. Думаю, що це у мене може бути застуда. 24. Можливо, ти вже чув цю історію

раніше. 25. Його травма спини може йому завадити (prevent sb from doing smth) взяти участь у завтрашній грі.

Exercise 24. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. Children of divorced parents ... (to have difficulty) in forming stable relationships themselves. 2. It ... (to freeze) tonight, so bring those plants inside. 3. Diet ... (to hold) the clue to the causes of migraine. 4. If the snow stops, I ... (to venture out). 5. When in college she ... (to make) a lot of friends, but she concentrated on studying. 6. I think we ... (to have a leak) in the roof. 7. They are moving in. The restructuring ... (to finish). 8. We have received information that Grant ... (to leave) the country. 9. My hands itch. I ... (to eat) too much chocolate. 10. He leaves home at 7 sharp. He ... (to find) a job at last. 11. The police think the videotape ... (to hold) some vital clues to the identity of the robber. 12. ... he (not to agree) to our proposition? 13. Where is Jane? ... she still (to be sleeping)? 14. 'Why do you think she is so wet?' 'I'm not sure. She might ... (to walk) back home in the rain.' 15. When he won a lot of money in the lottery, he ... (to buy) a luxurious car, but decided give all his money to charity. 16. They have been theorizing about what ... (to cause) the fire. 17. Let's meet for a drink after midday. It ... (to stop) raining by then. 18. Sickness ... (to develop) from inadequate fluid intake. 19. Parents ... (to take to sb to task) children when the household chores were not done. 20. 'I don't believe a word of it.' 'Of course, it ... all (to be) complete fabrication.' 21. I don't know this girl. Who ... she (to be)? 22. At the beginning of the Industrial Revolution the working day of a worker ... (to last) up to twelve hours. 23. As many as 6,000 people ... (to be infected) with the disease. 24. Look! The river is overflowing its banks. No wonder it ... (to rain) for three days on end (підряд). 25. He ... (to say) 'no', but there's no harm in asking.

3. Must

The modal verb must has only one form. The expressions 'to have to' or 'to be obliged to' (БЫТЬ ОБЯЗАННЫМ) (US: to be obligated to) can be used to supply the missing tense forms of the verb must. Must may also be used in indirect speech after the verb in the past tense in the principal clause. Must expresses:

1. Strong obligation , necessity, duty to do something. We generally use 'must' when the speaker has decided that something is necessary.

o must expresses an obligation from the speaker's point of view, an obligation imposed (навязанный) by the speaker; must is used to give a strong personal opinion o must is used in affirmative, negative, interrogative sentences o must is used with the Indefinite Infinitive

o must corresponds to the Ukrainian: повинен, потрібно, необхідно (you are obliged to do something)

- I must pay the electricity bill today.
- Must you really go so soon? – Yes, I must.
- Do it if you must.
- You mustn't tell anybody else (= do not tell anybody else; it is necessary that you do not do it).

o must expresses a strong obligation and we do not often use it in face-to-face

conversation as it can seem impolite and often inappropriate.

We often use should and ought to as an alternative to must as they express a subjective (often moral) obligation felt by the speaker, but the obligation is weaker than with must

• You should treat your neighbours with more respect. We only use must to talk about the present and the future. When we talk about past obligation or necessity, we use had to.

Future obligation can be made more precise with the Future Indefinite of the verb have to.

• I had to work hard yesterday.

• I'll have to read it again.

• We shall have to give you a new copy of the book. Absence of necessity is expressed by needn't or needn't = не нужно, нет необходимости

• Must you really go so soon? – No, I needn't.

• We needn't hurry, we've got plenty of time (= it is not necessary to hurry) ·

Must has no infinitive, - ing form or Participle II. So when necessary, we make this form with have to.

• He hates having to get up early.

• She has had to work hard all her life.

• Because of the bus strike I've been having to walk to work every day.

• If he had asked me, I would have had to tell him the truth.

• The reason for our late arrival was that we had had to wait for hours while they checked the plane before take-off.

2. Prohibition; refusing permission or must is used in negative sentences

or must corresponds to the Ukrainian: не повинен, не дозволяється = do not do this! or must = it is forbidden/prohibited to do something; you are not allowed to do something; it is against the rules/laws

or it is not the person who prohibits the action but there are rules or circumstances prohibiting it (in e.g. public notices, documents)

or mustn't = it is important that something is not done or does not happen

• You mustn't talk with your mouth full.

• Cars must not be parked in front of this gate.

• You mustn't touch the statues. (it is forbidden)

• You mustn't do that! Не делайте этого!

• You mustn't come into the ward, it's against the rules.

• You mustn't drive if you haven't got a driving licence.

• He told me I mustn't cry.

3. Command, urgent, emphatic request, command in public notices or documents

• You must do as you are told.

• Guests must be out of the building before midnight.

or Must is used interchangeably with 'to be to' for instructions on notices or order (must is preferable)

• All rooms must be vacated by 11 a.m. and the keys handed to the porter on the day of the departure.

• Applications for admission to the Students' Room of the Department of Manuscripts must be accompanied by a letter of recommendation (= letter of reference рекомендація).

• Passengers must cross the lines by the footbridge. (the railway company instructs them to)

4. Supposition bordering on assurance, almost a conviction / probability / near certainty / logical assumption / deduction

o must is used with all forms of the Infinitive; (95% certain) o must is used only in affirmative sentences o the action refers to the present or past o must corresponds to the Ukrainian: напевно, ймовірно · must (= supposition) has the same meaning as the modal words: probably, evidently · must (= logical assumption/deduction) = I am sure/I am certain/I have no doubt that something is true.

• She must be lonely. (= Probably she is lonely.)

• You've been travelling all day, you must be exhausted! (=...I'm sure you are exhausted.)

• We use must and can't/couldn't to express the logical conclusion of the situation (logical assumption/deduction): we don't have all the facts, so we are not absolutely sure, but we believe something to be true because of evidence, i.e. we are making a logical deduction. " must = logically probable " can't = logically improbable

• We must have taken the wrong road. (=I'm sure we have taken the wrong road.) • We can't have taken the wrong road. (=I'm sure we haven't taken the wrong road.) • She must have gone to a party. (= I'm sure she has gone to a party.)

• She can't have gone to a party. (= I'm sure she hasn't gone to a party.)

• Suzie can't have a ten-year old daughter! She's only twenty five herself!

• Is there no reply? They must be in bed. They can't be out at this time of night.

• A walk in this weather! You must be joking!

o Supposition referring to the future is expressed by the modal words and modal expressions:

• probably – ймовірно, напевно

• evidently – вочевидь

• to be sure (bound/certain) to do something (= something is definitely going to happen) – обов'язково

• He will probably come tomorrow.

• Evidently he won't make a report.

• He is sure to come.

• Something is bound to happen.

o In negative sentences supposition is expressed in different ways:

• Evidently, the child doesn't sleep.

• The child is probably not asleep.

• The child must have woken up.

• The child must be awake already.

• She must have failed to see him.

5. Invitations, strong recommendations, emphatic advice. We use 'must' in invitations, for strong recommendations and emphatic advice

o must is used in pressing (настирливий) invitations, such as:

- You really must come and see me some time.

- You must come and have dinner with me.

o must is used to give strong recommendations, emphatic advice, such as:

- You really must take a holiday this year.

- You mustn't eat too many sweets.

- You must do something about that cough. Please go and see the doctor.

6. Notice the following set phrases with 'must': · I must be going = I must be off (= it's time for me to go) Мені час йти. · I must tell you that ... (The meaning of obligation is considerably weakened in 'must')

7. 'must' in Indirect Speech o must can express past time only in indirect speech

- The mother told her boy that he must go to bed.

- He told me that he had to go to bed early as he felt very tired.

- He told us we must wait (or we had to wait) until we were called.

She asked her boss if she must work (or had to work) overtime. ·

When referring to the past, must can remain unchanged in indirect speech when it is used to indicate inescapable obligation or we can use had to (the past of have to) in its place:

- "I must warn you of the consequences," he said. → He told me he must warn/had to warn me of the consequences. Must, indicating future necessity, can remain unchanged, or can be replaced by would have to or sometimes had to:

- "You must go early tomorrow," she said. → She said they must go early the next day. (or She said they would have to go early the next day. or She said they had to go early the next day.) ·

When must is used to indicate supposition bordering on assurance or logical assumption, it remains unchanged in indirect speech. It cannot be replaced by had to:

- "George must be a fool to behave like that," he said. → He said George must be a fool to behave like that. · Mustn't (prohibition) remains unchanged or changes to couldn't:

- "You mustn't/can't cross the border," the guard said. → The guard said we mustn't/couldn't cross the border.

Exercises Exercise 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb must. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. 1. You must talk to your daughter about her future. 2. You mustn't go home alone. It is very dark. 3. The electricity must always be switched off before repairs are attempted. 4. You must come to our party. 5. You must see a doctor right away. 6. A man must stand up for his rights. 7. You mustn't think it's so very easy. 8. Must it be done before tomorrow? 9. The only thing he knew for certain was that he must not meet Antonia. 10. Give him something to eat. He must be hungry. 11. That fellow must be made of steel. He's never tired. 12. You must have frightened her. 13. That fellow has seen and felt ten

times as much as I, although he must be ten years younger. 14. I hear somebody's steps on the stairs. She must be coming! 15. Judging from the books and papers on his writing-table he must have been working for several hours. 16. He must have been a sailor in his youth. 17. You must have misunderstood him, my dear. He can't have intended to say that. 18. It's the third time she's been skating this week – she must really enjoy it. 19. The film must be worth seeing. 20. They must be still arguing. 21. Hard work must have told on his health. 22. You must be joking. 23. He told us we must wait (or we had to wait) until we were called. 24. She asked her boss if she must work (or had to work) overtime. 25. You must phone home at once. It's urgent. 26. You really must come and see us some day. 27. Life belts must not be removed. (public notices; documents; 'must not' – in full.)

Exercise 2. Write comments with must after the following sentences. 1. You haven't eaten the whole day./ (you/starving) ...You must be starving..... 2. They've been travelling all night./ (they /tired out)3. He's passed his exam./ (he/delighted) 4. Your wife is in hospital./ (you/very worried)5. Your son has won a scholarship./ (you /very proud of him)

Exercise 3. Rewrite the parts in bold using must have. 1. He drove all the way from Glasgow. Obviously it was a long journey. It must have been a long journey. 2. He pretended to be innocent, but I'm sure he did it.3. George was standing very close to you. Of course you saw him.4. You look very well. It seems you enjoyed your holiday.5. There's nobody in. Probably they've gone shopping. 6. My coat isn't there. Perhaps someone has taken it by mistake.

Exercise 4. Rewrite the sections in bold using can't. 1. She looks so young. I'm sure she's not thirty yet. ... She can't be thirty yet. 2. It's still quite early. I'm sure it's not ten o'clock.3. She doesn't look at all like Mary. I'm sure she isn't her sister.4. He's been very ill lately. He's probably not very well even now. 5. There's no answer. They're probably not in.6. If you live near Coventry, you aren't very far from Birmingham. 7. He looks very ill. I'm sure he's not feeling very well.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences. Use must or can't and the correct form of the verb in brackets. (Logical assumption) 1. You haven't eaten all day. You hungry. (be) 2. You cold. It's 30 degrees in the shade! (be) 3. There are no lights on in the office. Everyone home. (go) 4. Peter ill. I've just seen him playing tennis. (be) 5. I my bag on the train. I can remember having it with me when I got off the train. (leave) 6. You drove home at night without any lights on? You crazy! (be) 7. 'I've just finished reading War and Peace in Ukrainian.' 'That a long time!' (take)

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences with must, mustn't or needn't. 1. We haven't got much time. We ... must ... hurry. 2. We've got plenty of time. We ... needn't ... hurry. 3. We have enough food at home so wego shopping today. 4. Jim gave me a letter to post. I remember to post it. 5. Jim gave me a letter to post. I forget to post it. 6. There's plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You decide now. 7. You wash those tomatoes. They've already been washed. 8. This is a valuable book.

You look after it carefully and you lose it. 9. 'What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?' 'Well, it be big - that's not important. But ithave a nice garden – that's essential.'

Exercise 7. Underline the correct word(s), as in the example. (Asking For/Giving and Refusing Permission).

1. A: We could/were allowed to leave work early yesterday. ... were allowed to ...

B: Really? That's nice.

2. A: Excuse me. May/Mustn't I ask you a question?

B: Yes, of course.

3. A: Might/Must I use your telephone, please?

B: I'm sorry. It's out of order.

4. A: Mum, could I go out with James tonight?

B: Yes, of course you can/could.

5. A: Are we allowed to/Must we use the Internet?

B: Yes, providing it's for work purposes.

6. A: Can I /Am I allowed to borrow your ruler, Pam?

B: Sure. Here you are.

7. A: Excuse me, sir. Visitors may not/couldn't park here, I'm afraid.

B: Oh, I'm sorry. Where can I park instead?

8. A: Alison, you mustn't/might not touch those files.

B: I didn't know that.

Exercise 8. Choose the correct form of the verbs. 1. You must be / can't be very proud of your son winning so many prizes. 2. We thought our cousins would visit us when they were in town last week, but they didn't even phone. I suppose they must be / must have been too busy. 3. The film has been such a big success I guess it must be / can't be easy to get tickets to see it. 4. I'm sure you could mend this if you really tried. You must be using / can't be using the right tools. 5. I've just rung the garage to check whether they've fixed my car, but I can't get an answer. I suppose they may have / may be having a tea-break out in the yard. 6. I don't know why you wanted to stay at that party. You might have enjoyed / can't have enjoyed talking to all those boring people. 7. I can't go out this morning. We're getting a new sofa and the store may be delivering / must be delivering it today. 8. You'll have to check these figures again. They're not accurate. You might have been concentrating / can't have been concentrating when you added them up. 9. You must be / must have been thirsty after carrying those heavy boxes. Shall I make some tea?

Exercise 9. Complete the conversations with suitable verbs. 1. Juan: Maria says her father's a farmer. Paul: But he can't ... be... ! They live in the middle of Madrid. 2. Jane: Oh, no. This carrier bag's split. Kate: You must ... have put ... too much in it. They're not very strong, you know. 3. Mark: Nigel says he met your sister in Berlin. Amy: But he can't her there! She's never been to Germany. 4. Jim: Where can I find out about visas for the US? Joe: Ann might about that sort of thing. She used to work in a travel agency. 5. Gary: This letter says you owe the bank £5,000. Philip: It must a

mistake. I don't even have a bank account. 6. Sue: Shall we go to the concert? Beth: I'd like to, but you'd better phone first. They may all the tickets. 7. Bert: Do you know where my address book is? May: It could in the hall cupboard. I think I saw it there the other day. 8. Dave: Why didn't Sally come to work in her car today? Tony: She didn't say. She could it to her sister, I suppose.

Exercise 10. Find the right response. Match a sentence on the left with a response on the right. (must, might)

1. I haven't eaten since breakfast.	a. You must be tired.
2. I've got a really sore throat.	b. The battery might be flat.
3. I can't stop singing and dancing.	c. You must be hungry.
4. I can't get the car to start.	d. You might be getting a cold.
5. I've been working all night.	e. You must be in love.

Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences into English. (must) 1. Я повинна прочитати цю книгу. 2. Вона, мабуть, читає цю книгу. 3. Доктор сказав, що він повинен жити на півдні. 4. Він, мабуть, живе на півдні. 5. Ми повинні поговорити з нею. 6. Напевно, він розмовляє по-англійськи. 7. Мабуть, він добре знає англійську мову. 8. Напевно, він ще тут. 8. Вона, мабуть, чекає нас в інституті. 10. Вона повинна чекати нас в інституті. 11. Мабуть, він забрав папери з собою. 12. Мабуть, вони тоді жили тут. 13. Мабуть, йде дощ. 14. Ймовірно, дощ вже припинився. 15. Він повинен мені читати вголос, щоб виправити свою вимову. 16. Він, мабуть, багато читає вголос. У нього хороша вимова. 17. Чи не галасуйте: діти, мабуть, сплять.

Exercise 12. Translate the following sentences into English.

Note: Remember that must in the meaning of supposition is not used in the negative

1. Там, мабуть, нікого немає. 2. Він, мабуть, нічого не зрозумів і образився. 3. Вона, напевно, не пам'ятає, що обіцяла принести нам карту Москви. 4. Вона, напевно, залишила двері незамкненими. 5. Ви, напевно, не зустрічали такого забавного хлопчачки, як наш Тим. 6. Вам, мабуть, нелегко це повірити. 7. Діти, мабуть, не помітили, що вже стемніло. 8. Він, напевно, нічого про це не знає. 9. Вона, напевно, зовсім недосвідчена в перекладі медичних статей з української англійською. 10. Це, мабуть, здається вам неймовірним, але це факт. 11. Він, мабуть, не впізнав вас в натовпі.

Exercise 13. Translate the following negative sentences into English.

Model 1: She must have given him no opportunity to object. Вона, мабуть, не дала йому можливості заперечити.

1. Мабуть, він не зробив помилки. 2. Напевно, вони не обідали. 3. Напевно, вона не мала досвіду. 4. Напевно, він не дав відповіді. 5. Напевно, вона не звертає уваги на це. 6. Напевно, у них немає книг. 7. Він, мабуть, не отримав відповіді. 8. Вона, мабуть, чи не намагалася (make attempt) зробити це правильно.

Model 2: Probably he didn't know about it. Напевно, він про це не знав.

1. Мабуць, вони ще не прийшли. 2. Ймовірно, вони цього не знають. 3. Очевидно, це не було зроблено вчасно. 4. Ймовірно, це не тут. 5. Це, мабуць, не зайняло багато часу. 6. Напевно, він прийде завтра.

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English using ‘must’ in all of its meanings. 1. Я повинен працювати щосили цей тиждень. 2. Міллі ледве бачила їх. Вона, мабуць, сказала вам про це. 3. Він повинен потрапити туди до 8-ми годин. 4. Вона розпалила камін і сказала: «Ну, сідай же. Ти, напевно, заляк». 5. Я повинна ще перемити всі стакани. 6. Джон, повернувшись від дверей, помітив, що стоїть на листі, який лежав на постілці. Його, мабуць, доставили через деякий час після його повернення. 7. «Ми будемо рано пити чай, - сказала Кет. - Ти, напевно, вмираєш від голоду». 8. «А, це ти!» - сказав він, глянувши з подивом. Він, мабуць, забув, як мене звать. 9. Я не бачив Джима, але я знав, що він, ймовірно, чекає мене десь тут. 10. Я почекав з півгодини, і коли я вже думав, що щось, мабуць, сталося з Кітті, вона приїхала на таксі. 11. Вона така бліда. Очевидно, вона була хвора. 12. Я повинен написати їм сьогодні ж. 13. Я повинен для нього що-небудь зробити, - подумав Джек. 14. Філіп, в твоїй книжці був якийсь лист. - Хіба? - Ти, напевно, забув його. 15. Я, мабуць, простояв там деякий час в глибокій задумі, коли побачив, як в тьмяному світлі переді мною з'явилася якась темна постать.

Exercise 15. Remembering that ‘must’ in the meaning of probability is not used either with reference to the future or in the negative form, find a suitable way of translating the following sentences into English. 1. Я не хочу здавати іспити. Так чи інакше, мене, мабуць, не буде в Лондоні в цей час. 2. Очевидно, в його розпорядженні ніколи раніше не було так багато грошей. 3. Мартін перебував по інший бік каміна. Я подумав, що він, мабуць, не чув їхніх слів. 4. Він, мабуць, не зміг умовити його поїхати з нами. 5. У нього, очевидно, поки просто не знайшлося часу для вас. 6. Вони, мабуць, не зустріли його на станції. 7. Я терпів це так довго, тому що думав, що вона мене по-своєму любить. Але, звичайно, вона, мабуць, ніколи не любила мене. 8. Викладач, мабуць, помилково не згадав твого прізвища. 9. Вона, мабуць, не знає, що ви тут. 10. Ми, ймовірно, не бачили її з літа. 11. Чи можу я поговорити з тобою завтра вранці? - Я, напевно, буду зайнятий вранці. 12. Він, ймовірно, не захоче говорити англійською. 13. У будинку, мабуць, немає нікого зараз. 14. Хто цей старий? - Новий президент компанії. - Не жартуй зі мною. - Я не шуткую. Ти, мабуць, не читав газет.

Exercise 16. Paraphrase the following sentences using ‘can’, ‘may’ or ‘must’ in them. 1. I don't think he did it all by himself. 2. Perhaps you're right. 3. It is possible that they forgot it in the car. 4. Is it really true? 5. I don't believe he has been meaning to do it. 6. It is impossible that he should have refused your request. 7. Evidently he has not read the book. 8. I wonder where it is that you met him. 9. I'm certain that he has heard the gong. 10. It was some special occasion, I'm sure. 11. He looks wet and muddy. I'm sure he has been fishing. 12. No doubt, she is out shopping. 13. I wonder what it is that you have brought in that box. 14. It's possible that he doesn't know we are here. 15. Is it possible that he is giving a

course on the Renaissance at the University? 16. It is possible that the news is being broadcast on all the channels. 17. I'm certain they didn't take notes of the meeting. 18. Is it possible that we are out of wrapping paper? 19. It is possible he will again forget to rule a margin down the left side. 20. "I don't now see him driving his car. Is it possible that something has happened?" "Evidently his car is undergoing repairs." 21. It is just impossible for you to get this thing done so soon. 22. I wonder what it is that he is doing in there. 23. Then the firing began again. This time it was impossible for it to be more than a mile away. 24. Let's give her a call again. It is possible that she was asleep and didn't hear the telephone. 25. You have used up all the money I gave you, I suppose.

Exercise 17. Translate the following sentences into English using 'can', 'may' or 'must' wherever possible. 1. Вони повинні робити, як їм сказано. 2. Я вважаю, що я повинна надіти інші туфлі на вечір. 3. Я не можу піти, не розплатившись. 4. Вони повинні повернути всі гроші. 5. Ти міг би їм подзвонити і сказати, що не прийдеш. 6. Я так хотів їсти, що ледь не з'їв все відразу. 7. Мені взяти парасольку? - Так, схоже, що буде дощ. 8. Ти зміг закінчити роботу? 9. Ситуація така погана, що далі нікуди. 10. Ти не міг би прийти трохи пізніше? 11. Невже ти сам це написав? 12. Це просто не може статися зі мною. 13. Я перебрав в думці всі можливі випадки, коли б це я міг з ним познайомитися. 14. Може, він не захотів виступити. 15. Вона ніколи не розповідала про своє дитинство, і для цього, мабуть, була якась причина. 16. Але я просто не можу йти далі. 17. «Він може відпочити в моєму кабінеті», - сказав м-р Болт. 18. Нора відвела сина в свою кімнату. Мені було чутно, як вони там розмовляли. 19. «Не потрібно применшувати небезпеку», - сказав він. 20. Я зможу написати їм завтра. 21. Ніхто не зміг би зробити більше, ніж зробив ти. 22. Нік був таким сином, яким будь-який батько міг би пишатися. 23. Я думаю, що він закохався в вас тому, що ніколи, мабуть, ще не зустрічав нікого схожого на вас. 24. Я думаю, що не буду нікуди виходити сьогодні. Я, мабуть, краще посиджу в комфорті біля каміна в таку погоду. 25. Напевно, ти що-небудь міг би зробити щодо цього. 26. Зрештою, не можна не захоплюватися людиною з такими високими принципами. 27. Ти можеш робити, що хочеш. 28. «Я не бачу, що ще я міг би тоді зробити», - сказав він. 29. Його мати знову в лікарні. Вона, мабуть, серйозно хвора. 30. Серед них не було нікого, до кого б я міг звернутися за допомогою. 31. Я не розумію, як ти міг тримати себе так нерозумно. 32. Я мимоволі подумав, що міс Грей видала себе цими словами. 33. Він рухався так тихо, що не міг би потурбувати сон самої чуйної людини. 34. Де мої окуляри? - Ні, їх тут немає. - Я, мабуть, залишив їх вдома. 35. Я повинен залишатися тут весь день? 36. Він запитав, чи може він покластися на мене. 37. Він запитав, чи можу я позайматися з його класом на наступному уроці. 38. Коли дитина така хвора, вона, мабуть, відчуває себе жахливо. 39. Ви повинні знайти його і привезти сюди з усіма його матеріалами. 40. «Це, напевно, зовсім не схоже на ваш будинок», - сказав Барт. 41. Я сказав, що він може взяти мій автомобіль. 42. Мені абсолютно байдуже. 43. Вона знала, що він, мабуть, відчуває. 44. Він не може бути старше вас більш, ніж на три або чотири роки. 45. Погода ще може

змінитися на краще. 46. Не може бути, що вона цього не знає. 47. У понеділок я ще не зможу дати вам повну відповідь. 48. Можливо, вони ще не приїхали. 49. Можливо, вони ще ведуть слідство у цій справі. 50. Можливо, вони були на вечірці, але я їх не бачив. 51. І хто це міг запалити світло в моїй кімнаті? 52. Батько дуже сердитий. Що це ти знову накоїв? 53. Вже зовсім темно. Я, мабуть, дуже довго спав. 54. Він, ймовірно, скоро подзвонить нам. 55. Невже він привів вас сюди? 56. Де мій ключ? - Ти, напевно, його загубив. - Не може бути, щоб я його загубив. Я, можливо, залишив його в кишені пальто.

Exercise 18. Complete the answers to the following questions. Use must, can't or might with any other words you need. 1. Tony: Can that be James phoning at this hour? It's gone midnight! You: It ... might be him He said he'd phone if he passed his exam. 2. Sally: Who's that going into the shop? You: It ... must be the cleaners. ... They always do the floors before we open. 3. Bill: Is that your sister's fur coat? You: It She never wears real fur. 4. Clive: I can't remember where I put my briefcase. You: It You often leave it there. 5. Dina: Where did Adam get that new guitar? He hasn't got any money. You: It After all, it was his birthday last week. 6. Eddy: Why did Moira ignore me at the party last night? You: She She wasn't wearing her glasses. 7. Fred: Do you think Cindy told the boss I left work early yesterday? You: She She left early yesterday too. 8. Heidi: Who was that man leaving the library? It looked like Peter. You: It They are so alike that people sometimes mistake them for one another. Heidi: Are you sure? I really thought it was Peter. You: It He's in hospital.

Exercise 19. Match the two halves of these sentences.

<p>1. You can't have lived in Tunisia for ten years 2. You must know Tokyo is expensive 3. You must have met some fascinating people 4. You can't be tired 5. You must be exhausted 6. You may find it difficult to settle down</p>	<p>a. after all your hard work. b. after touring the world for years. c. if you've lived there. d. without learning some Arabic. e. when you've just had a holiday. f. during your trip to Africa.</p>
--	---

Exercise 20. Write a sentence for each of these situations using must / can't / may / might (have). 1. Yesterday was payday. I don't believe you're short of money already. ...You can't have spent all your pay already. ... 2. It was Linda's suggestion to go for a meal. Surely she doesn't think I'm going to pay for it all? She ... can't think I'm going to pay for it all. ... 3. George has been engaged to Kay for three months. Today he received a box with the engagement ring in it and all his letters to her. Kay4. When Tina got back home, she couldn't find her purse. Perhaps a pickpocket stole it. A pickpocket 5. Isobel said she was short of money, but she's just moved into a new flat! Her uncle owns property in this area. She 6. This parcel is making a ticking noise - throw it out of the window! I'm sure it's a bomb. It! 7. I don't know who would

send me an alarm clock for a present. My brother sometimes plays practical jokes on people, so perhaps it's from him. It 8. Anna's always such a punctual person. The meeting started half an hour ago but she's not here. I know the traffic's very bad this morning. She

Exercise 21. Study these examples and do the same 1. I'm sure she comes from Italy. – She must come from Italy. 2. Perhaps he will cook dinner. – He may/might cook dinner. 3. It's possible that she's having a party tonight. – She could be having a party tonight. 4. Perhaps she'll be having a party tomorrow. – She may/might be having a party tomorrow. 5. I'm sure he didn't receive the message. – He can't/couldn't have received the message. 6. Perhaps they have won first prize. – They may/might have won first prize. 7. It's possible that she visited a friend. – She may/might/could have visited a friend. 8. I'm sure he is studying. – He must be studying. 9. I'm certain/I'm sure she was studying. – She must have been studying. 10. Perhaps she has been shopping. – She may/might have been shopping. 11. It's likely that they have been watching TV. – They could have been watching TV.

Exercise 22. Rephrase the following in as many ways as possible. 1. She might have misunderstood you. 2. I'm sure they are tired. 3. You can't park here. 4. I don't think she's sold her house. 5. It's likely that he'll object. 6. We may have to wait for them. 7. I'm sure she isn't Australian. 8. I'm sure he is terrified. 9. They'll probably want something to eat. 10. It is likely that she has got lost. 11. Might he have forgotten all about it?

Exercise 23. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words. 1 I'm sure she has given up smoking. **have** She must have given up smoking. 2 I'm sure she isn't feeling sick now. **be** Shenow. 3 Perhaps they were working for the enemy. **have** They for the enemy. 4 Perhaps he will be on time. **be** He time. 5 Perhaps he was too ill to take part in the race. **been** He to take part in the race. 6 I'm sure they informed the police about the robbery. **have** Theyabout the robbery. 7 Perhaps Harry will be sunbathing this time tomorrow. **be** Harry tomorrow. 8 I'm sure he warned the soldiers about the coming danger. **have** He about the coming danger. 9 I'm sure Jenny hasn't been working there that long. **have** Jenny there that long. 10 Perhaps she was telling you the truth. 11 Perhaps she's been working hard. **been** She hard. 12 Perhaps she'll come with us. **may** She us. 13 I'm sure she hasn't prepared her speech. **have** Sheher speech. 14 Perhaps he was asleep when we rang. **been** He when we rang. 15 Perhaps he'll be waiting when we get there. **may** He when we get there. 16 I'm sure she didn't know about it. **known** She about it. 17 I'm certain it has stopped raining now. **have** It raining now. 18 It's possible that Jane has left already. **have** Jane already. 19 I have no doubt that he was lying to you. **been** He to you.

Exercise 24. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Напевно, ти повністю (absolutely) виснажений. 2. Усіх собак треба тримати на повідку (to keep on a lead). 3. Ми маємо бути там до шостої, інакше (or

else) ми пропустимо початок. 4. На цій фотографії вона виглядає зовсім іншою. Напевно, вона зробила операцію на носі (to have a nose job). 5. Ти повинен викинути (to throw smth out) деякі свої старі речі. 6. Пілот повинен мати ідеальний зір (to have twentytwenty vision). 7. Суд постановив (to rule), що дія контракту повинна бути зупинена (to be terminated). 8. Це тільки (strictly) між нами. Більше ніхто не має знати про це. 9. Ваш дохід (income) повинен бути задекларований (be declared). 10. Мені треба відпочити. 11. Вранці вона, напевно, годинами накладає макіяж (take sb ages to do smth). 12. Я повинна передзвонити Майклу (to return one's call). 13. Захисний одяг (protective clothing) треба носити, коли апарат працює (to be in operation). 14. Мені треба полагодити велосипед. 15. Пасажири повинні пристебнути (to fasten) ремені перед посадкою літака (prior to descent). 16. Рахунок треба сплатити впродовж (within) десяти днів. 17. У контракті йшлося (to lay down), що робота має бути закінчена до 2025. 18. Мій гаманець має бути десь тут (to be somewhere around here). 19. Напевно, це правда. Я чув про це учора в новинах. 20. Ви повинні відкинути гордість (to put aside one's pride) та перепросити у нього (to apologise to sb). 21. Я не можу знайти свої ключі. Вони точно випали (to fall out of) з кишени. 22. «Звідки може доноситись цей шум?» «Напевно, у наших сусідів навпроти (from next door) вечірка (to have a party)». 23. Ти повинен перестати жити минулим (to live in the past). 24. Напевно, сталося якесь непорозуміння (to be some misunderstanding). Я не замовляв усі ці книги. 25. Їй точно вже зараз (by now) трохи за тридцять (to be in one's early thirties).

Exercise 25. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. Liz, you ... (to bring) a note from your parents as you were away from school yesterday. 2. You ... (not to say) things like that! 3. Pilots ... (to abstain from) alcohol for 24 hours before flying. 4. I ... (not to be late) or Dad will go up the wall. 5. In future, staff ... (to wear) identity badges at all times. 6. You ... (to buy) that jacket – it's so you! 7. I ... (to brush up) on my French before I go to Paris. 8. 'This house ... (to be very old),' he added. 9. I can see the light in her window. She ... (to prepare) for her tomorrow's maths exam. 10. Under the new law, all new buildings ... (to be approved) by the local government. 11. Candidates ... (to answer) two questions from each paper. 12. I'll tell you, but you ... (to keep) it secret. 13. All applications ... (to be submitted) before 31 January. 14. I ... (to remember) to send Carol a birthday card. 15. The house ... (to be worth) quite a lot of money now. 16. A label ... (to be affixed) to all parcels. 17. She ... (to be popular) judging by the number of letters that she receives. 18. You ... (to learn) how to manage your own finances. 19. You're really brown – you ... (to have) good weather. 20. To sum up, for a healthy heart you ... (to take) regular exercise and stop smoking. 21. I ... (to talk) to her about this, I can't put it off any longer. 22. Your boss ... (to think) highly of you if she gives you so much responsibility. 23. All tobacco products ... (to carry) a health warning. 24. Hi there, you ... (to be) Laura. 25. All climbers ... (to wear) safety harnesses (страхувальне спорядження) and helmets.

3. SHOULD / OUGHT TO

Should and Ought to are very much alike in meaning and are often interchangeable. They are very common in Spoken English. They have only one form; ought is always followed by the to-infinitive. Historically should was the past form of shall and both the forms expressed obligation. But in present-day English they have developed different meanings and are treated as two different verbs. Should and Ought to express:

1. Obligation, moral or mild/weak obligation or duty, responsibility (in this meaning ought to is preferable).

o should and ought to are less emphatic than must and have to

o must indicates complete obligation, it is stronger than should

o with should the person has some choice on whether or not to act, but with must he has no choice

In Ukrainian should and ought to correspond to: (не) слід, (не)

o all forms of the Infinitive are used:

• Should/Ought to + Indefinite Infinitive The action refers to the present or future /present or future reference.

• Should/Ought to + Indefinite or Continuous Infinitive The action refers to the present/ present reference.

• Should/Ought to + Perfect Infinitive The action refers to the past/ past reference.

• should do/ought to do

• shouldn't do/oughtn't to do

• should be doing/ought to be doing

• shouldn't be doing/oughtn't to be doing • should have done/ought to have done

• shouldn't have done/oughtn't to have done

• You should apologise. (= it would be a good thing to do) You must apologise. (= you have no alternative)

• People ought to live in peace. (It's the right thing to do, but people don't always do it.) •

People should be warned/ought to be warned of the danger of swimming off this beach.

• She ought to have treated us more fairly. (It was the right thing to do, but she didn't do it.)

I should have given them the money yesterday. (You mean that you had a mild obligation to give them the money yesterday, but you did not give it to him.)

2. Advice, desirabil, recommendation. (in this meaning should is more common) We are talking about what is a good thing to do or the right thing to do.

o In Ukrainian should and ought to correspond to: (не) слід, (не) потрібно (було) (б), ви б (не)

o should and ought to are used with all forms of the Infinitive in affirmative, negative, interrogative sentences ·

Should/Ought to + Perfect Infinitive in an affirmative sentence shows that a

desirable action was not carried out or that we expected something to happen but do not know if it happened. ·

Should/Ought to + Perfect Infinitive in a negative sentence shows that an undesirable action was carried out.

- You should stop smoking. (general advice; I advise you)
- You should have stopped smoking. (but you didn't)
- It is late. You should go to bed. • You shouldn't miss the opportunity.
- You shouldn't sit so close to the television! It's bad for your eyes.

o You can use I should... / I shouldn't ... to give somebody advice. (When we give advice with I, we use should (or would), not ought to.

• I should leave early tomorrow if I were you. or I would leave early tomorrow if I were you. or I'd leave early tomorrow if I were you.

• Shall I leave now? – No, I should wait a bit longer. (= I would wait if I were you, I advise you to wait.)

• It's very cold this morning. I should wear a coat when you go out.

o We use 'should', 'ought to' to give or ask for an opinion about a situation, often with: I think ...; I don't think ...; Do you think...

• I think that we should be paid more.

• I don't think you should work so hard.

• You are always asking me for money. I think you should spend less.

• Do you think I should apply for this job? – Yes, I think you should.

• Do you think he ought not to go?

• What do you think we should do?

o 'I should' + 'think' makes an opinion less direct

• I should think that model would sell quite well. (present reference)

• I should have thought you knew. (past reference)

o We use 'should' as a polite expression of thanks on receiving a gift or a favour

• I've done the washing up for you. – Oh, you really shouldn't have! (The intonation should be friendly, as this is not a criticism.)

3. Criticism; regret (should and ought to are used to criticise someone's actions or lack of action)

• They should warn us. (present or future reference)

• You ought to be more polite to her. (present or future reference)

• You should have thanked me for everything I've done for you. (= It would have been better if you had thanked me. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.) (past reference)

• He should have asked me before he took my bike. (I'm annoyed)

• You ought to have asked for advice. (past reference) (but you didn't)

• You oughtn't to have stopped on the motorway

• We should have taken/ought to have taken a taxi when it rained. (I'm sorry we didn't)

4. Expectation (= something which can be naturally expected)

o should/ought to = is expected to

o should and ought to are used in affirmative and negative sentences

o the action refers to the present or future
o in Ukrainian should and ought to correspond to: повинен, не повинен
• The book should be very interesting. (= the book is expected to be interesting)

- Apples ought to grow well here.

5. Probability (90 % certain) (With probability must is more common).

o the action refers to the present and future

o In Ukrainian should and ought to correspond to: повинен, ймовірно, навряд чи

- We should see him there. (= We will probably see him there.)
- We needn't be in a hurry. The guests shouldn't come for another hour.
- I shouldn't finish work early today. (= I won't probably finish work early.)
- Sally ought to be in Canada by now. (= She will probably be in Canada.)
- He should be here by nine o'clock. (= He will probably be here by nine o'clock.)
- The sweater should look nice with your tweed jacket.
- They should have started the course by now. (= They have probably started the course by now.)
- He should have received the report by now. (He has probably received the report.)
- She ought to be a clever child.

6. We use should to make an informal suggestion

- What should we have for dinner?
- What should we do tonight?
- Why shouldn't we go to the beach?

7. Should is used in set expressions corresponding to the Ukrainian: навіщо, заради чого

- o Why should (not) they do it?
- o Why should (not) he have done it?
- o How should I know? Звідки я знаю?
- Why should she interfere?
- Why should he have said so?
- Why should he think so?
- Why should we have argued?
- Why shouldn't he know?
- Why should I trust you?
- Why should he have bought the book?

8. Should is used in the if-clause to make it even less likely

- If you should require any further information, please do not hesitate to contact us.
 - Should you wish to contact me, I can be reached at the above address. (inversion)

9. There are two set phrases with 'ought to' expressing reproach/criticism.

1. You ought to know this. (= you are supposed to know this – ви маєте це знати)

2. You ought to know better. Міг би розуміти такі речі.

• You ought to know better than to go out without an overcoat on such a cold day

10. ought to + Infinitive – is used when describing something exciting, funny or beautiful in the meaning of: I wish you would.

• You ought to hear the way he plays the piano! = I wish you would hear the way he plays the piano!

11. We can use ‘be supposed to + infinitive’ instead of ‘should/ought to’ to talk about an obligation to do something. It is commonly used in spoken English to express a less strong obligation which is frequently ignored:

• I’m supposed to be there at 10.00.

• We are supposed to leave our textbooks at school, but we often take them home.

• The work was supposed to start last week. (= but it didn’t start)

o ‘You are not supposed to’ expresses prohibition

• You are not supposed to eat in the classroom.

o We use ‘be supposed to’ when we report what many people think is true.

• Eating sweets is supposed to be bad for your teeth. (not:...should be bad for...)

o ‘supposed’ – ‘said to’

• I’d like to read that book. It is supposed to be very good.

• He is supposed to have been married before. (= He is said to have been married before.)

o ‘be supposed to’ expresses the idea that someone else expects something to be done (you are supposed to = you are expected to):

• You are supposed to wear a suit to work. (= Your employer expects you to.)

• Cf.: You should wear a suit to work. (= It is a good idea because it makes a better impression.)

• We are supposed to start work at 8.00 every morning

12. ‘Should’ is used for emotional coloring (see: Emotional ‘Should’)

it’s/how odd that..., it’s/how strange that... etc.

It’s odd that both our husbands should have the same name.

It’s natural that you should be upset about what’s happened.

How incredible that we should have been living in the same street for two years and have never got to know each other.

It’s a pity that you should have missed the only talk worth hearing.

How preposterous that he should have asked you to come rather than me.

Exercises Exercise 1. Comment on the meaning of the verbs should/ought to. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian: 1. I think the government should do more to help homeless people. 2. You ought to say a word or two about yourself. 3. You shouldn’t have come so soon. 4. I shouldn’t stay up too late. You’ll be tired tomorrow. 5. I don’t think we ought to grumble. 6. You shouldn’t have paid the

plumber in advance. 7. She should be very glad to see you. 8. The nights should be cold up there in the mountains. 9. Why should I stay here? 10. Potatoes should grow well here. 11. You should have gone to the concert. Why should you have missed the music? 12. When is he going back? – How should I know? 13. Oughtn't you to be more careful? 14. Do you think I should see the doctor? 15. Do you think I should buy the red or the blue dress? 16. My friends don't think I should go to Britain next year. 17. I think we ought to go now. 18. You should have told me that you can't swim. You might have drowned.

Exercise 2. Match these situations with the advice you might give in each one.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It's raining 2. It's too far to walk. 3. Someone doesn't know which way to go. 4. Someone is going to live overseas. 5. Someone has to get up early in the morning. 6. Someone hasn't got any money with them. 7. It's going to be a cold day. 8. Someone is tired out. 9. Someone has seen someone breaking into a shop window. 10. Someone is feeling hot and has a headache. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. You should take a rest. b. You should ask a policeman. c. You should take an umbrella. d. You should wear an overcoat. e. You should see a doctor. f. You should learn the language before you go. g. You should pay by cheque. h. You should take a taxi. i. You should set your alarm clock. j. You should call the police.
---	---

Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using you ought to or you ought not to. 1. ... You ought to drive carefully on a busy road. 2. ... You ought not to ...eat between meals if you want to lose weight.

3.pay your bills regularly. 4. be selfish. 5.smoke too heavily. 6. go to the dentist's regularly. 7. lie in bed late everyday. 8. clean your teeth at least twice a day. 9. eat a lot of sugar. 10. be more careful.

Exercise 4. Give your friend advice or your opinion using I think you should... or I don't think you should ...

Example: I've got an exam tomorrow morning. What should I do? → I think you should have a good sleep before your exam.

1. I saw someone driving dangerously in town. What should I do? → 2. I found a small sum of money on the ground yesterday. What should I do? → 3. I've been invited to the party by a group of people I don't really know. But my favourite film is on TV. What should I do? → 4. The person next to me in the exam was cheating. What should I do? → 5. I need a holiday. I have enough money for either a weekend in New York, or a week in Scotland. I can't decide. Where should I go? →

Exercise 5. Rewrite these sentences using should have or shouldn't have.

1. Why didn't you phone to say you'd be late?/...You should have phoned to say you'd be late. ... 2. I wish they hadn't made such a mess./... They shouldn't have made such a me.. 3. I wish I had got home earlier./..... 4. We didn't read the instructions carefully./..... 5. Why did you spend so much money?/..... 6. I wish you had told me you were coming./..... 7. It was very bad of them to make such a noise./..... 8. John left the restaurant without paying his bill./..... 9. I wish Jack had explained what he was doing./..... 10. Why didn't you send Mary a birthday card?/..... •Now rewrite the first five sentences using ought to have or ought not to have.....

Exercise 6. Use should be or ought to be with one of these phrases to comment on each of the sentences below. a comfortable trip an exciting game a nice day fun really interesting very profitable nice and quiet

1. We are going to Japan for a holiday this summer. / It ...should be really interesting. 2. Bill's asked me to his birthday party. /That ought to be fun. 3. There's a good match on this weekend. /Yes, it 4. We couldn't get standard tickets so we're travelling first class. /Well, at least it 5. The weather forecast for tomorrow is excellent./Yes, it6. Jan has just opened a new shop in the High Street. /I know. It7. Our hotel is right out in the country. /That's good. It

Exercise 7. Read the situations and write what you would say using should, ought to, could, might and the correct tense of the Infinitive, as in the example.

1. Your best friend failed a very important exam because she didn't study. What do you say to her? You ... should /ought to/might/could have studied for the exam.... 2. Adam borrowed your favourite CD without asking you. You want him to ask you next time. What do you say to him? 3. One of your classmates misses the school bus every morning because he gets up late. What do you say to him?..... 4. Your younger sister took your scarf and didn't put it back in the right place. You want her to replace it next time. What do you say to her?..... 5. You arranged to meet your friend at 6 o'clock. He came at 7 o'clock but he didn't call you to tell you he'd be late. What do you say to him?..... 6. Fred lost his keys in town yesterday. He didn't report it to the police. What do you say to him?.....

Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English using 'ought to' and 'should' wherever possible.

1. Я прошу вибачення. Мені не слід було цього говорити. 2. Мені здається, вам треба б проявити хоч якусь повагу до старших. 3. Я подумав, що тобі потрібно б знати про це. 4. Тепер я засмутив її. Мені не потрібно було цього говорити. 5. «Я сказав що-небудь таке, чого мені не слід було говорити?» - запитав він у матері. 6. Не варто задавати таких питань. 7. Ну, що ж, ви мали рацію. Мені не так треба було робити це. 8. Як ти думаєш, чому мені слід було б зайнятися? 9. Я був з тобою більш відвертий, ніж мені слід було б. 10. Я сказав, що їй зовсім не слід було б приходити з ним. 11. Не варто бути настільки критичним в твоєму віці, Френк. 12. Енн - моя сестра. - Мені слід було б здогадатися. Ви схожі на неї.

13. Їй треба було б раніше про це згадати. 14. Мені хочеться зробити те, чого не слід робити.

Exercise 9. Read the situations and write sentences with I think /I don't think... should... 1. Peter and Judy are planning to get married. You think it's a bad idea. (get married) I ... don't think they should get married 2. You don't like smoking, especially in restaurants. (be banned) I think 3. I have a very bad cold but I plan to go out this evening. You don't think this is a good idea. You say to me: (go out) 4. You are fed up with the government. You think they have made too many mistakes. (resign).....

Exercise 10. Complete the sentences with should (have) + the verb in brackets. 1. Margaret should pass the exam. She's been studying very hard. (pass) 2. You missed a great party last night. You should have come..... (come) 3. We don't see you enough. Youand see us more often. (come) 4. I'm in a difficult position. What do you think I? (do) 5. I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I what you said. (do) 6. I'm playing tennis with Jill tomorrow. She - she's much better than me. (win) 7. We lost the match but we We were the better team. (win) 8. 'Is John here yet?' 'Not yet, but he here soon.' (be) 9. I posted the letter three days ago, so it by now. (arrive)

Exercise 11. Read the situations and write sentences with should/shouldn't. Some of the sentences are past and some are present. 1. I'm feeling sick. I ate too much. I shouldn't have eaten so much. 2. That man on the motorbike isn't wearing a helmet. That's dangerous. He should be wearing a helmet. 3. When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn't reserved one. We 4. The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o'clock now but the shop isn't open yet 5. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Catherine is doing 50. She 6. I went to Paris. A friend of mine lives in Paris but I didn't go to see him while I was there. When I saw him later, he said: You 7. I was driving behind another car. Suddenly, the driver in front stopped without warning and I drove into the back of his car. It wasn't my fault. 8. I walked into a wall. I wasn't looking where I was going.

Exercise 12. In which sentences can you put should or must and in which can you only put must? Where both are possible, consider the difference between should and must. 1. A timetable be set for withdrawing the army. 2. Les isn't home yet. Hehave been held up at work. 3. 'I wonder how old Mike is?' 'Well, he went to school with my mother, so he be well over 50.' 4. If you smell gas, you phone the emergency number. 5. You try to visit Nepal – it's a beautiful country. 6. 'I only live a couple of minutes from the town centre.' 'It be handy having shops nearby.'

Exercise 13. Here are some things that people often say in Britain. 1. Walking under a ladder is supposed to be unlucky. 2. It's supposed to be lucky if a black cat walks in front of you. 3. The call of the cuckoo (= a bird) is supposed to be the first sign of spring. 4. Drinking hot milk before you go to bed is supposed to

help you sleep. What other similar things do people often say in your country? Use supposed to in your answers.

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English using the emotional 'should'. 1. Ось я і подумав, що ж це абсурд, що ми живемо поруч і не розмовляємо. 2. Як дивно, що він нічого не сказав про це. 3. Було дивно, щоб Джон виявився так зайнятий, що у нього весь тиждень не було часу побачити її. 4. Не було ніякої причини, чому б їм не бути там. 5. Як його звуть? - А навіщо я буду тобі говорити? 6. Мені шкода, що ти так погано про мене думаєш. 7. Не знаю, чому це він хоче побачити Джорджа. 8. Було дивно, що в її віці вона була так байдужа до вечірок. 9. Все ж Розмарі не розуміла, чому вона повинна піти. 10. Адже немає заперечень, щоб я його побачив? - А чому б їм не прийти? 11. Мені дуже шкода, що мій брат відповідальний за це. 12. Як сталося, що ти привів його з собою? І чого це він захотів прийти сюди? 13. Він був дуже задоволений, що Кет все ж назвала дитину на його честь. 14. Що могло з ним статися? Уявити собі не можу, чому він так спізнюється. 15. Забавно, що її інстинкт мав рацію. 16. Йому, здавалося, було приємно, що хтось захотів почитати щось, написане ним. 17. Мене роздратувало, що він виявився таким слабовольним. 18. Вона почала розповідати чоловікові про Теда, але незабаром зупинилася і сказала: «Я просто не знаю, чому я надокучаю тобі цими розповідями про Теда».

Exercise 15. Use of English. Key Word Transformation. Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence. 1. Perhaps Laura is at the office. be Laura may/might/could be at the office. 2. I'm sure they are looking for another flat. be They must be looking for another flat. 3. People who work here are obliged to wear uniforms. to People who work here have to wear uniforms. 4. I'm sure Peter didn't steal the money. have Peter can't have stolen the money. 5. Why didn't you tell me about the accident? have You might/could/should/ought to have told me about the accident. 6. I don't think the report has been typed yet. been The report can't/couldn't have been typed yet. 7. Perhaps he forgot your birthday. have He may/might/could have forgotten your birthday. 8. It is forbidden to park here. not You must not/cannot park here.

Exercise 16. Complete each sentence with two to five words, including the word in bold. 1. I'm sure Kevin didn't do anything wrong. have Kevin anything wrong. 2. Perhaps they left the documents at home. have They the documents at home. 3. It wasn't necessary for her to call me today, but she did. have She today. 4. Perhaps Lucy is at the shops. be Lucy at the shops. 5. I don't think the money has been counted yet. been The money yet. 6. It is forbidden to take these books home with you. not You these books home with you. 7. I'm sure he is preparing his presentation. be He his presentation. 8. It wasn't necessary for Chris to reserve a table in advance. need Chris a table in advance. 9. Why didn't you tell him about the problem? have You him about the problem. 10. People who want to join the club are obliged to pay £20. to People who want to join the club

..... £20. 11. Perhaps Sheila is on holiday. may Sheila holiday.
12. Why didn't you clean up the mess? ought You the mess.

Exercise 17. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Тобі не слід одягати нічого занадто яскравого (loud) на співбесіду (job interview). 2. Подорож має тривати (напевно, буде тривати) дві години. 3. Операція має допомогти його легеням функціонувати знову як слід (properly). 4. Мені не слід було викидати чек (receipt). 5. Тобі не слід було цього робити, не порадившись зі мною. 6. Він не знав, як йому слід себе поводити. 7. Зустріч, напевно, вже (by now) закінчилась. 8. Лист має прийти з дня на день (any day now). 9. Припустимо, що він сьогодні подзвонить. Що мені слід казати? 10. Тобі не слід було читати листа, він був не для тебе (to be intended for sb). 11. Посилка має прийти (to arrive) до (by) п'ятниці. 12. Тобі слід показатися з цим кашлем лікарю (to see a doctor about smth). 13. Тобі слід купити їй на день народження квіти (to get sb smth for one's birthday). 14. Вам слід порадитися з незалежним радником з правових питань (to consult an independent legal adviser). 15. Багато людей вважає, що вченим не слід втручатися у природу (to interfere in nature). 16. До судді слід звертатися «Ваша честь» (to be addressed as 'Your Honour'). 17. Йому слід було їй розказати правду. 18. Він не мав (йому не слід було) на нас кричати. 19. Відповідь має прийти до середини наступного тижня. 20. Дітей не слід залишати самих (to leave on their own). 21. Вона постійно мені каже, що мені слід робити! 22. Якщо він почав о дев'ятій, то має вже (by now) бути тут. 23. Батькам слід контролювати, що їх діти дивляться по телебаченню. 24. Ситуація має покращитися в довготривалій перспективі (in the long term). 25. Тобі слід прочитати цю книжку. Вона дійсно цікава.

Exercise 18. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment. 1. 'Surely the ... (to tell) us about this problem sooner?' 'Exactly.' 2. The trip ... (to take) 30 minutes maximum. 3. Do you think I ... (to address) him as 'Mr Benson' or 'Albert'? 4. Education ... (not to be measured) purely by examination results. 5. Oops, I ... (not to say) that. Me and my big mouth. 6. This is delicious. You ... (to try) some. 7. They ... (to be) here by now. They left at six. 8. Children ... (not to be allowed) to play in the street. 9. Electricity can be dangerous and ... always (to be treated) with respect. 10. He ... (to resign), I think. 11. Two large cans of paint ... (to be enough). 12. Politicians ... (to be accountable) to the public that elects them. 13. I think you ... (to see) a psychologist. 14. 'You ... (to think) of them,' she said in a reproachful tone. 15. He ... (to pass) the exam this time. 16. The punishment ... (to fit) the crime. 17. You ... (to try) to develop interests beyond the family. 18. I think we ... (to keep) the truth from him until he's better. 19. I ... (to finish) the book by the middle of the week. 20. Elected officials ... (to obey) the law. 21. ... I (to phone) her? 22. I'm tired. I ... (not to go to bed) so late. 23. \$100 ... (to cover) your expenses. 24. There ... (to be) enough potatoes for eight people. 25. He ... (to pay) the fine. He wouldn't be in prison now.

5. TO HAVE TO

To have to is a modal verb, a modal expression. As a modal verb to have to is not a defective verb. It can have the category of person and number and all tenseaspect forms as well as verbals (неличные формы глагола: the Gerund, the Infinitive and the Participle). It is followed by a to-Infinitive. In the negative and interrogative sentences the auxiliary verb to do is used with to have to. To have to expresses:

1. Obligation or necessity arising out of circumstances

o We use to have to + only the Indefinite Infinitive Active and Passive in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences o Its meaning is close to that of 'to be obliged to'

o To have to corresponds to the Ukrainian: повинен, змушений

- He has fallen ill, so I have to change my plans.
- She had to put off her visit to the doctor.
- You will have to come again.
- Something has to be done.
- The form has to be signed in the presence of a witness.
- I have had to remind him several times to return my book.
- I didn't have to walk. I took a taxi. •

Note: " 'to have to' is close in its meaning to 'must' when we express present obligation or necessity. We use 'must' or 'have to' when we want to say that somebody has an obligation to do something or that it is necessary for them to do it. (present reference)

• She is short of time so she has to go by air. = She is short of time so she must go by air.

• Sorry, I must leave now. = Sorry, I have to leave now. (No difference)

• You must come to the meeting tomorrow.

• She has to travel to find work. " 'had to' replaces 'must' to express past obligation or necessity. In the past 'had to' shows a fulfilled obligation. (past reference)

" 'will have to' replaces 'must' to express future obligation or necessity.

• You will have to take a taxi if you want to catch the train. (future reference)

" There is sometimes difference between 'must' and 'have to' in the present.

In everyday statements of necessity 'have to' is used more commonly than 'must': 'must' is usually stronger than 'have to' and can indicate urgency or stress importance.

• I'm looking for Sue. I have to talk to her about our lunch date tomorrow. I can't meet her for lunch because I have to go to a business meeting at 1.00. (the speaker is simply saying, 'I need to do this and I need to do that')

• We normally use have to when the authority comes from outside the speaker; have to describes obligation made by someone else.

• I have to be at home by 10 o'clock. (= my parents insist)

• I have to go and see the doctor at 9.00 tomorrow morning. (= I have got an appointment)

I have to see the head teacher. (... she has called me to her office)

2. In spoken English the meaning of obligation and necessity is also

expressed by 'have got to'

- He has got to go right now.
- Has he got to go right now?
- He hasn't got to go right now.
- o We normally use 'had to', not 'had got to' for the past.
- We've got to move house. (informal; present reference)
- They had to move house. (past reference)
- o 'Have to' and 'have got to' are interchangeable for single actions.
- I have to check the oil level in the car. = I have got to check the oil level in the car. (= I've got to check the oil level in the car.)
- o But we normally use 'have to' (not: 'have got to') for things that happened repeatedly, especially with adverbs of frequency (often, always, regularly)
- I always have to do the shopping. (Not: I always have got to do the shopping.)
- Do you ever have to get up at 5?

3. Absence of necessity = there is no obligation or necessity to do something.

- o don't have to = it is not necessary to do something (present reference)
- o didn't have to = it was not necessary to do something and he didn't (past reference) · don't have to/don't need to/needn't + the Indefinite Infinitive (present reference)

- Many women don't have to work. Do many women have to work?
- You don't have to learn any typing skills.
- You don't need to take the dog for a walk, I will do it.
- You don't have to water the plants again. • You don't need to water the plants again.
- You needn't water the plants again. = It is not necessary to water the plants again. · didn't have to (the action didn't take place); didn't need to (past reference)
- He didn't have to buy this book (He knew it was unnecessary and he didn't buy it ему не пришлось покупать книгу)
- We didn't have to learn a foreign language when we were students.
- She didn't need to pay the whole amount today. (We don't know whether she paid it or not.)
- Did you have to work late yesterday? / Did you need to work late yesterday?
- Did you have to get up so early? / Did you need to get up so early? (= Was it necessary for you to get up so early?)

Note 1: 'mustn't' does not mean the same as 'don't have to'

'You mustn't do something' = it is necessary that you do not do it (so, don't do it); it is against the rules. o 'mustn't' describes something which is not allowed. (mustn't)

- You mustn't talk about politics. (= It is necessary that you do not talk about politics.)
- You mustn't leave any bags here. (It's against the rules.)
- You mustn't smoke in the patients' ward. (=Don't smoke here/prohibition) ·

Exercises 1. Comment on the meaning of to have to. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian: 1. I'm afraid, I shall have to send him away. 2. Was the

fire already laid or did you have to lay it? 3. The rope was so strong that he had to take a knife to cut it. 4. But was it worth while going to bed when he had to be up again at five? 5. I suppose I shall have to go back to London, shan't I? 6. Do you have to get up early every morning? 7. He will have to pay me back before Sunday. 8. How long did you have to stay there? 9. "We shall have to wait a long time for our holidays," she said with a sigh. 10. And you have to go there twice a week, don't you? 11. He hates having to get up early. 12. She has had to work hard all her life. 13. I couldn't go to the party last night because I had to baby-sit for my sister. 14. If you want to apply for this job, you have to be able to type at least 60 words a minute. 15. I have had to remind him several times to return my book. 16. The reason for our late arrival was that we had had to wait for hours while they checked the plane before take off. 17. If he had asked me, I would have had to tell him the truth.

Exercise 2. Change the following into the negative and interrogative. 1. Mother has to cook dinner after work. 2. He had to sit up late with this work. 3. You will have to get up very early to-morrow. 4. The girl had to take care of her younger sister and brothers. 5. She will have to do it once over again. 6. These documents have to be filed. 7. They had to cover the whole distance on foot. 8. We shall have to speak to him about it. 9. He had to wait at the station till it stopped raining. 10. The work will have to be done before nightfall. 11. She often has to go to the dentist's.

Exercise 3. What was life at school when you were young? Complete the sentences using had to or didn't have to.

1. ... We had to ...
2. ... We didn't have to ...

stand up when the teacher came into the room. wear a uniform. do a lot of homework. have short hair. study languages. eat at school. take a lot of exams.

Exercise 4. Complete these sentences with a form of have to or must (whichever is more likely) + an appropriate verb: do tell wake go go take/do come 1. He's got a lung problem and he to hospital every two weeks. 2. You and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again. 3. That's really good news. I my friend, Steve. 4. I always sleep through the alarm clock. My Dad me every morning. 5. As I won't be at home tonight, I my homework during my lunch break. 6. 'Can we meet on Thursday morning?' 'Sorry, no. I to the dentist at 11.00.' 7. I'm feeling really unfit. I more exercise.

Exercise 5. Underline the correct or more likely answer. If both are wrong, suggest a correct alternative. 1. I think she must/ has to be very rich. 2. 'They want us to leave by tomorrow.' 'They mustn't /haven't got to be serious.' 3. I heard about Jane's accident. You must / had to have been worried about her. 4. He says he's 50, but he mustn't / hasn't got to be that old. 5. I looked at my watch and must/ had to admit that I didn't have much time. 6. To get to Peru, I must /had to borrow money from my sister. 7. Being so well-known, you must /have to receive hundreds of letters each week.

Exercise 6. Match the sentence beginnings and ends.

1. You mustn't drink alcohol	a. to enjoy it.
------------------------------	-----------------

<p>2. You mustn't keep medicines</p> <p>3. You don't have to be a member</p> <p>4. You don't have to play golf well</p> <p>5. Newspapers mustn't</p> <p>6. You don't have to drink alcohol</p> <p>7. Newspapers don't have to say</p> <p>8. Children mustn't be allowed</p> <p>9. You mustn't be surprised</p>	<p>b. when you go into a pub.</p> <p>c. if teachers object to the new curriculum.</p> <p>d. to run up and down the aisle of the aircraft.</p> <p>e. to use the tennis club.</p> <p>f. when you drive.</p> <p>g. who provided their information.</p> <p>h. where children can get them.</p> <p>i. mislead the public.</p>
--	--

Exercise 7. Write new sentences with a similar meaning. Use have/has got to where it is possible or preferable; otherwise use have/has to. 1. It is necessary to do all of this work before the end of the day. ... All of this work has got to be done before the end of the day. ... ('has to be done' is also possible) 2. Was it necessary for you to pay Bob to paint the fence? 3. It is necessary to build the road to take traffic away from the city centre. 4. It is rarely necessary to tell Mary anything twice. 5. Is it necessary for us to get up early tomorrow morning? 6. It wasn't necessary for her to take time off work when her son was ill. 7. It is sometimes necessary for Peter to clean his parents' car before they give him any pocket money.

Exercise 8. Translate the sentences into English using to have to. 1. У мене немає цих книг вдома, і я змушений ходити в бібліотеку. 2. Мені не довелося писати їй листа. 3. Їй не треба поспішати зараз. 4. Нам не потрібно було / не довелося залишатися там довго. 5. Вже пізно. Ми повинні покинути бібліотеку. 6. Нам не потрібно буде дзвонити їм. 7. Йому не потрібно йти в їдальню обідати. Він може пообідати тут. 8. Вам доведеться проводити їх. Вони не знають дороги. 9. Ви повинні приготувати цю роботу до четверга. 10. Йому довелося приготувати цю роботу до четверга. 11. Якби ми приготували все заздалегідь, нам не потрібно було б робити це зараз. 12. Вибору не було, і йому довелося погодитися. 13. Я збирався зробити доповідь з цього питання, і для цього я повинен був переглянути багато літератури. 14. Я повинен був ходити в бібліотеку майже кожен день: до іспиту залишалося всього кілька днів. 15. Я думаю, що, якби вам довелося виконувати подібне завдання, то ви б теж були змушені звертатися до когонебудь за допомогою. 16. Мені зараз доводиться багато працювати, так як я хворіла і відстала від групи. 17. Я змушений був вибачитися, хоча мені це і було неприємно. 18. Книгу необхідно переплести (to bind), бо сторінки можуть загубитися. 18. Вам доводиться дуже рано вставати, чи не так?

Exercise 9. Choose the most suitable word or phrase. 1. There's someone at the door. It can be/must be the postman. ... must be ... 2. Don't worry, you don't have to/mustn't pay now. 3. I think you had better/would better take a pullover with you. 4. Jones could be/must be president if Smith has to resign. 5. Sorry, I can't stay any longer. I have to go/might go. 6. It was 5 o'clock an hour ago. Your watch can't be/mustn't be right. 7. It's a school rule, all the pupils have to

wear/must wear a uniform. 8. I suppose that our team must win/should win, but I'm not sure. 9. Let's tell Diana. She could not know/might not know. 10. In my opinion, the government might do/should do something about this.

Exercise 10. Complete the sentences using must, have to, may, might, could or can't, as in the example. 1. Perhaps Tom will work late tonight. ...Tom may/might work late tonight. 2. It's possible that Mary is trying to call us. Mary 3. The students are obliged to finish the test in one hour. The students 4. It's possible that Mum is working in the garden. Mum 5. I'm sure Rachel is hungry. Rachel 6. Perhaps Dad will take us out to dinner. Dad 7. I'm sure Lucy hasn't reached the station yet. Lucy 8. It is necessary for Grandma to take her medication every morning. Grandma..... 9. It's likely that they have gone to the supermarket. They 10. I'm certain Bob didn't leave the party early. Bob

Exercise 11. Modals. Choose the correct item.

1. Our English lessons at school were very boring. We long exercises and learn a lot of grammar rules by heart.

A) must to write B) must write C) had to write D) can write

2. I take your dictionary?

A) May B) Ought C) Have

3. It was a very difficult text. I look up a lot of words in the dictionary.

A) must B) have to C) had to D) must to

4. He come here every day.

A) must B) have to C) ought D) should to

5. He said that he leave Moscow soon.

A) may B) must C) have to

6. The weather change tomorrow.

A) may B) can C) must

7. He to go to the dentist because he has toothache.

A) ought B) must C) should D) have

8. The children left alone.

A) mustn't B) mustn't to be C) shouldn't be D) shouldn't to be

9. you translate this agreement into French?

A) ought to B) can C) may

10. I think that I will help you.

A) can B) must C) be able to

11. It a lovely day tomorrow.

A) can be B) could be C) must be

12. I'm getting fat. I think I eating the wrong kind of food.

A) must be B) can't C) can be

13. I'm not sure, but I Sue in town last night.

A) can see B) must have seen C) may have seen

14. My letter yesterday, but it didn't.

A) must have arrived B) may have arrived C) should have arrived

15. That girl 29 years old. She looks about 12!

A) may be B) must be C) can't be

16. We're very busy tomorrow so we time to visit you. We aren't sure.
A) could not have B) might not have C) ought to have

6. TO BE TO

To be to is a modal expression (or a modal verb). Some of its meanings are close to those of modal verbs and expressions denoting obligation: must, to have to, should, ought to, shall. 'to be to' is used in the Present and Past Indefinite Tense. To be to expresses:

1. Obligation or necessity arising out of an arrangement or plan; an agreement; part of plan.

o We use: to be to + the Indefinite and Perfect Infinitive in affirmative and interrogative sentences

o to be to corresponds to the Ukrainian: має, повинен · 'to be to' in the Past indefinite + Perfect Infinitive shows that the action had been arranged but did not happen. (was/were to have done) · 'to be to' in the Past Indefinite + Indefinite Infinitive does not show whether the action was or was not carried out and, on the other hand, it is the only way to show a fulfilled action. (was/were to do)

- We are to complete this work tomorrow. (somebody expects it)
- The next dance is to be mine.

o Note: to be to is used to refer to the future when we talk about things that can be controlled by people. Thus statements such as: 'It is going to rain' or 'I'm going to faint' cannot be expressed with 'to be to', which has restricted uses.

- We don't know where the meteorite is going to land. (not:the meteorite is to land.)
- I suppose we will all die eventually.

2. Strict orders, formal commands or formal instructions, formal or official arrangements in the future. The construction is common in writing, especially in news articles to talk about future events.

o We use: to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive in affirmative and negative sentences

o to be to corresponds to the Ukrainian: повинен, не повинен

- You are to stay here until I return. (I tell you to stay here until I return.)
- He is to return to Liverpool tomorrow.
- The students are to hand in their course paper by the first of May.
- You are not to leave the school without my permission.
- The medicine is to be taken after meals.

3. A strict prohibition.

o We use: to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive in negative sentences

o to be to corresponds to the Ukrainian: не повинен, не маєш · May not, can't, are not to, must not – are arranged in increasing order of severity

'must' being an absolute prohibition. • You are not to smoke in the room.

- We are not to leave the place until we are told.
- Poison: Not to be taken! (public notice)
- Can we go separately? – No, you may not/ No, you can't/ No, you are not/

No, you mustn't.

4. Something thought of as unavoidable, something that was destined to happen

o We use: to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive in affirmative and negative sentences mainly in the Past Indefinite Tense

o to be to corresponds to the Ukrainian: судилося

• I didn't know at that time she was to be my wife. He was to be my teacher and friend for many years.

• He was never to see her again.

5. Possibility o We use: to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive Passive in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences

o In questions beginning with the interrogative adverb How 'to be to' is used with the Indefinite Infinitive Active

o 'to be to' is very close to 'can' and 'may'

• He was often to be seen there. Его часто там можно было видеть.

• Where is he to be found. Де його можна знайти?

• Nothing was to be done. Нічого неможливо було зробити.

• They are not to be trusted.

• How are you to know it? Як ти це можеш знати?

• How am I to repay you for your kindness?

6. 'To be to' equals 'to want' after the conjunction 'if'

• If we are to be (= want to be) there on time, we must start at once.

• You must take sides (стать на чью-л. сторону) if you are to remain human.

• The law needs to be revised (переглядати) if justice is to be done.

We often use to be to + infinitive in the 'if-clause' to say that something must take place first in the principal clause before something else can take place in the 'if-clause' · We use the Present Indefinite in the 'if-clause' to say that the action must take place first in the 'if-clause';

• If British tennis is to reach world standard again, more money will be necessary. (= more money must be given first for British tennis to improve.)

• Jones needs to improve his technique if he is to win at the next Olympics.

• Where am I to go? Куди ж мені йти?

7. An unreal condition referring to the Future can be expressed by the form 'were' of the modal verb 'to be to'

• If you were to meet me, I would be happy.

• He had been a fool to spend so much money on Mildred; but he knew that if it were to come again he would act in the same way.

Exercise 1. Analyse the meaning of the verb to be to in the following sentences and translate them into Ukrainian. 1. There was something in his manner that was not to be resisted. 2. Why are you late? You were to have come an hour ago. 3. "My dear Trot!" cried my aunt, in a terrified whisper. "I don't know what I am to do!" 4. A little disconsolate, he watched the steamer splashing down the channel towards the pier. What sort of fellow-travellers was he to have? 5. It is evident that we are to have a backward season for grains. 6. What do you want with my things? Am I to be moved into another cell? 7. Large sums are now being

spent on educational development and still larger sums are to be spent in the near future. 8. I stood at the window, looking at them disappear, and my heart kept repeating "Good-bye, good-bye!" I was not to see them for nearly five years. 9. Nobody met me when I came. I was to have arrived by the ten o'clock train, but I couldn't get a ticket for it. 10. Remember that we are to be at his place not later than eight. 11. Why are you so late? Didn't you get my letter saying that we were to have met at four? 12. He was to find out years later that the car he had bought was stolen. 13. I was to have helped with the performance, but I got flu the day before. 14. The army needs to change its image if more women are to be recruited.

Exercise 2. Explain the difference in meaning between the two sentences in the following pairs.

1. a) The plane was not to take off at night as the weather was too bad.

b) The plane was to have taken off at night, but the weather was too bad.

2. a) There was to be an interesting concert last night, but I didn't feel well and had to stay at home.

b) There was to have been an interesting concert last night, but the singer fell ill and the concert had to be postponed.

3. a) The order came that we were not to leave the village before dawn.

b) We were not to have left the village before dawn, but by the time the order came we were two miles away from it.

Exercise 3. Choose the more appropriate alternative, (a) or (b), to complete these sentences. (to be to)

1. The meeting was to have taken place in the hall, ...

a. but had to be cancelled at the last moment.

b. and was well attended.

2. She was to have appeared with Elvis Presley in his last film, ...

a. and was a tremendous success.

b. but the part went to her sister.

3. Later, in Rome, I was to meet Professor Pearce ...

a. but she left before I got there.

b. and was very impressed by her knowledge.

4. The twenty police officers who were to have gone off duty at 8.00 ...

a. went to the Christmas party.

b. had to remain in the police station.

5. It was to take 48 hours to get to Japan ...

a. and we were exhausted when we arrived.

b. but we managed to do it in only a day.

6. After the war he was to teach at London University ...

a. but no money was available to employ him.

b. for 10 years.

Exercise 4. Choose a verb to complete the sentences. Use to be to + infinitive if possible, and will + infinitive if not. appear arrive become begin feel fit move resign

1. A man in court today after a car he was driving killed two pedestrians. 2. The danger is that the bacteria.....more resistant to antibiotics over time. 3. The Environment Department has announced that it

...2,000 jobs out of the capital. 4. When the news is broken to him, heboth upset and angry. 5. Workthis week on the new Thames bridge. 6. The Business Information Group said today that Brian Murdochas its executive director. 7. We are all hoping that warmer weather soon. 8. No more than six peoplearound the table comfortably.

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English. (to be to) 1. Коли ж він повинен прийти? 2. Ми повинні були зустрітися в театрі. 3. Йому треба переписати твір. 4. Коли ви повинні бути в інституті завтра? 4. Мені треба йти туди зараз? 5. Він повинен був стати музикантом. Це було вирішено ще до його народження. 6. Я повинен був закінчити роботу вчора, але не зміг цього зробити. 7. Чия чергу? Хто повинен йти за покупками? 8. Я повинен відвезти братові його речі. Так ми домовилися, коли він йшов. 9. Почекай трохи, я повинна дочитати главу до кінця. 10. Йому судилося стати моїм другом. 11. Коли він повинен приїхати? Ми домовилися зустрітися о восьмій. 12. Батько не дозволяє їй приходити додому пізно, вона повинна бути вдома о дев'ятій годині щовечора. 13. Що мені робити? / Як мені бути? 14. Як ти можеш знати це? / Звідки ти можеш знати? 15. Ліки потрібно приймати після їжі.

Exercise 6. Choose the most suitable word or phrase. 1. We can't be lost. It isn't allowed /I don't believe it. ... I don't believe it... 2. Jane is bound to be late. She always is/She must be. 3. Late-comers are to report to the main office. It's a good idea/It's the rule. 4. You don't have to stay unless it's necessary/if you don't want to. 5. Astronauts must feel afraid sometimes. They're supposed to/It's only natural. 6. You can't come in here. It isn't allowed/I don't believe it. 7. All motorcyclists have to wear crash helmets. It's a good idea/It's the rule. 8. I ought not to tell Jack. It's not a good idea/It's the rule. 9. We should be there soon. I expect so/It's absolutely certain. 10. You'd better leave now. That's my advice/That's an order.

Exercise 7. Translate into English. (must; to have to; to be to) 1. Мама була хвора, і мені довелося готувати обід. 2. Напевно, вона готувала обід, коли прийшов брат. 3. Я повинен був зайти (to call at) в деканат. 4. Напевно, він заходив в деканат. 5. Мені треба бачити його сьогодні ж. 6. Вам доведеться трохи почекати. 7. Було вже пізно, і нам довелося поїхати на метро. 8. Ви повинні вставати рано щодня? 9. Мені довелося написати про це сестрі. 10. Вона, мабуть, написала сестрі. 11. Вона, мабуть, писала сестрі, коли ви її побачили. 12. Вона, мабуть, гостює у своїх друзів, так як вона писала, що проведе відпустку у них. 13. Вони, мабуть, чекають мене, а я ніяк не можу дати їм знати про себе. 14. Книга розпродана; треба її пошукати в букіністичних магазинах (second-hand bookshop). 15. Він, ймовірно, забув, що обіцяв прийти. 16. Чи сказав викладач, що ми повинні вивчити цей текст напам'ять? 17. Я не знав, що цей текст не треба вчити напам'ять. 18. Вчора ввечері автобус був напівпорожній (half empty), і мені не довелося стояти. 19. Вони повинні були прийти в 5, а вже 6 годин. 20. Він напевно, забули, що повинні були прийти о 5 годині. 21. Сподіваюся, вам не довелося довго чекати, так? 22. Тобі доведеться взяти пальто. Стає холодніше.

Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English. (have to; be to)

1. Барт мав побачитися зі своїм швагром за ленчем на наступний день, але він не бачив причини розповідати про це дружині. 2. Їй довелося випити чай без цукру. 3. Я знав, що Пет повинна була прийти в клуб. 4. Я був дещо здивований, виявивши так багато народу в залі, де я повинен був виступати. 5. Мені немає необхідності бути там до трьох годин. 6. Руді запросили на обід додому до Мері. Після обіду вони повинні були піти в кіно. 7. Один з гостей сів біля мене. Мені не потрібно було говорити, хто він. 8. Вони бомбили нас весь день вчора, і ми змушені були залишатися в окопах. 9. У тебе коротке волосся і воно в'ється. - Я хворіла скарлатиною, і волосся довелося обрізати. 10. «Я ж ніколи не говорив тобі, що навчався у приватній школі?» - запитав Алек. - «В цьому не було необхідності». 11. Потім Франк взяв мене на довгу автомобільну прогулянку. А о сьомій годині ми повинні були обідати з Гріном. 12. По радіо оголосили, що ввечері повинен виступати президент. 13. Він повинен був підсунутися ближче, щоб почути її. 14. У цей час Філіпа ніколи не було видно. 15. Нам довелося зігнути квітку, щоб вона помістилася в коробці.

Exercise 9. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1.

«Ти повинен стрибати з парашутом (to do a parachute jump), коли я зроблю такий знак», – сказав інструктор. 2. Україні судилося стати найбільшим експортером сільськогосподарських товарів (agriculture exporter) у світі. 3. Якщо хочеш утримувати вівчарку, (to keep a German shepherd) назбирай гроші (to save up for smth) на новий будинок. 4. Той, хто останнім йде з офісу, повинен його зачиняти (to close up). 5. Пастилки для розм'якшення від кашлю (cough drops) треба приймати кожні три години. 6. Джеф (Jeff) виграв величезну суму грошей, і йому судилося здійснити свою дитячу мрію – вступити до Гарварду. 7. За умовами договору (under the terms of the agreement), будівельники мали закінчити роботу наприкінці року. 8. Працівники нашого офісу мають реєструватися на біометричній системі обліку робочого часу (to register on the fingerprint scanner), коли приходять на роботу та йдуть з роботи. 9. Якщо хочеш добре грати на музичному інструменті, тренуйся (to practise) кожного дня. 10. Студенти мають прочитати певну літературу (to do reading assignments) перш ніж прийти на заняття. 11. Ви маєте здати твір з історії (history essay) до кінця тижня. 12. Горло треба полоскати солоною водою кожного дня. 13. «Ніку, ти маєш залишитись після занять (to stay behind after school), щоб поговорити з директором», – сказала вчителька. 14. «О котрій годині я повинен починати працювати?» «Ви повинні приступати до виконання своїх обов'язків (to work) о дев'ятій ранку». 15. Цього року я маю опублікувати статтю про засвоєння мови (a paper on language acquisition). 16. Якщо хочеш бути якомога довше у хорошій формі, тренуйся, правильно (right) харчуйся та висипайся (to get plenty of sleep). 17. «Ви маєте сидіти на своїх місцях тихо», – сказала вчителька дітям. 18. Учора я повинен був зустріти сестру в аеропорту, але мене затримали (to be delayed) на роботі. 19. Ми з чоловіком вирішили окремо провести відпустку. Але за неочікуваним поворотом долі

(by some quirk of fate) ми забронювали номери у тому ж самому готелі. Нам судилося провести відпустку разом. 20. Гра між Барселоною та Реал Мадридом повинна була відбутися у середу. Футбольний матч відмінили (to call off) через погану погоду. 21. «Ви маєте менше палити (to cut down on cigarettes)», – сказав лікар. 22. «Що входить до моїх обов'язків?» «Ви повинні брати працівників на роботу та звільняти їх у разі потреби». 23. Минулого року сильний землетрус стався у їх регіоні. Їм не судилося жити у своєму рідному місті. 24. Якщо хочеш розвивати навички роботи на комп'ютері (to develop your computer skills), піди на заняття (to take a course). 25. Наступного року вона їде до Франції за програмою обміну студентами (on a student exchange).

Exercise 10. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. In American universities teaching fellows ... (to send) students information, help grade the class etc. 2. The foreign minister ... (to hold) talks with his Chinese counterpart. 3. 'You ... (to shoot) intruders on sight (стріляти без попередження),' the boss said to the guard. 4. If you ... (to build) a career in TV production or in the film industry, send a résumé and examples of your work. 5. Andy and I were on the same plane. We ... (to meet) after seven years of parting. 6. 'You ... (to defend) the borders,' the commander told his troops. 7. This nasal spray ... (to be used) by adults or children above twelve. 8. You need to learn to manage your time more effectively if you ... (to cope) with everything. 9. The pill ... (to be taken) three times a day after meals. 10. Local councillors (члени міської ради) ... (to serve) the community (населений пункт). 11. If you ... (not to be cheated) by employers, you should know your rights and duties. 12. Irene had been interested in history and politics since childhood. She ... (to be) a political analyst. 13. You ... (to tell) her everything before she finds it out from someone else. 14. The workers of our cleaning company ... (to keep) premises clean and tidy. 15. The US and Columbian authorities ... (to have) several hours of negotiations on Tuesday. 16. Sue was naturally skinny. She ... (to be) a fashion model. 17. Both sides ... (to sign) a treaty reducing long-range missiles (ракети дальньої дії). 18. The ear drops ... (to be put) in two times a day. 19. Under the Geneva agreement, the French force ... (to remain) in South Vietnam until July 1956. 20. 'Sam, you ... (to take) antibiotics,' the doctor said, 'we can treat this condition quite successfully with them.' 21. Parents ... (to see) that their children attend school. 22. Mary had learned a lot of culinary skills from Gerard, she ... (to win) in that culinary show. 23. The prime minister ... (to meet) other European leaders for talks. The meeting was postponed indefinitely. 24. This ointment ... (to be used) to reduce rash. 25. The government must pass stricter anti-pollution laws if people ... (to reduce) pollution.

Exercise 11. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Тобі доведеться отримати згоду (to get one's agreement) батьків, якщо ти хочеш поїхати у подорож. 2. Тобі просто (simply) необхідно знайти нову роботу. 3. Християни повинні у неділю ходити до церкви (to go to church). 4. «Знедолені» (Les Misérables), напевно, найкраща історична драма (historical drama film), яку я бачив. 5. Згідно (under the terms) з новим законопроектом, в

усіх повинна бути медична страховка (to have health insurance). 6. У червні я одружуюсь. Це точно найскладніше рішення, яке мені колись доводилось приймати. 7. Ти точно божевільний, якщо хочеш позичити йому гроші. 8. Отже, головне, що ви повинні знати про озон (ozone) – це його формула – O₃. 9. У 1970-х учні мали залишатися у класі на другий рік, якщо погано вчилися (not to show good progress). 10. Зараз я читаю книгу про маленьку дівчинку, яка у 19 столітті була рабинею в Атланті. Напевно, це найкраща книга, яку я колись читав. 11. Згідно з новими урядовими постановами (according to the new government regulations), населення повинно буде сплачувати за газ в п'ять разів більше, ніж зараз. 12. «У мене проблеми з комп'ютером». «Треба запросити програміста, щоб його полагодив (to get somebody to do something)». 13. Наступного року їм доведеться взяти в борг (to borrow) десять мільйонів фунтів для того, щоб залишитись на плаву (to stay afloat). 14. Нам довелося залишити (to abandon) машину і йти пішки решту шляху. 15. Згідно з цією квитанцією (bill), я маю сплатити за електроенергію сто доларів. Тут точно якась помилка! 16. Тобі треба якомога швидше відвідати стоматолога. 17. Мені треба сьогодні вдень піти по крамницях. 18. Менеджер каже, що відтепер (from now on) клієнтам доведеться сплачувати покупки у цьому гіпермаркеті кредитною карткою. 19. Нам не треба поспішати. У нас багато часу. 20. Ти точно не сповна розуму, якщо хочеш на це витратити усю зарплатню. 21. Студентам, які хочуть отримати кваліфікацію перекладача, доведеться проходити мовну практику за кордоном. 22. Мені не треба сьогодні мити підлогу, оскільки я її помила вчора. 23. Мій робочий день триває з десятої до сьомої. 24. В Англії ви маєте дотримуватися лівостороннього руху. 25. Усі рейси (flight) довелося скасувати (to be cancelled) через погану погоду.

Exercise 12. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. If the company doesn't receive a big order soon, it ... (to go) into liquidation. 2. I ... (to go) to the doctor's for a check-up (медичний огляд). 3. You ... (to be) completely insane. 4. In the absence of any evidence, the police ... (to let) Myers go. 5. 'Do you know that John got a job in Poland?' 'There ... (to be) a reason why he didn't accept the position of Chief Financial Officer here.' 6. We ... (to take) the engine apart. 7. The museum is free. You ... (not to pay) to get in. 8. That ... (to be) one of the most offensive headlines I've ever read in this paper. 9. Do Europeans ... (to have) visas when travelling inside the European Union? 10. 'Richard is glued to the TV.' 'The Olympics ... (to be) on.' 11. In this country people ... (not to pay) tax unless their income exceeds \$700. 12. You ... (to memorize) every formula the book gives you for this problem. 13. I ... (not to do) my washing because my mother does it for me. 14. You ... (to do) your best to do well in TOEFL. 15. In olden times wives ... (to address) their husbands very politely. 16. This toaster ... (to go back) – it's faulty. 17. When Sheila was in elementary school, she ... (to carry) a satchel, handbags were not allowed. 18. 'Eric is thirty minutes late.' 'Let's wait a little. He ... (to be) on his way.' 19. Under the terms of the new bill, women ... (to retire) at 55. 20. When he said that, I ... (to agree). 21. In some gas producing countries citizens ... (not to pay) for

utilities. 22. Your parents ... (to cover) your tuition fees. 23. Rick is a billionaire. He inherited a lot of money. He ... (not to go to work). 24. It's so delicious. This ... (to be) the best macaroni I've ever tasted. 25. In Japan, you ... (to drive) on the left-hand side of the road.

7. NEED

The modal verb need may be used either as a defective (недостатний, неповний) or a regular verb. As a defective verb need has only one form and combines with a bare infinitive. In reported speech it remains unchanged. As a regular, notional verb it has non-finite forms, analytical forms of the verb, is used with auxiliary verbs in negative and interrogative sentences and takes direct objects. There is a slight difference in the usage of regular and irregular forms. The regular form is used mainly when the following infinitive denotes habitual action. The defective form is more common for one particular occasion. Need expresses:

1. Necessity or absence of necessity

- to need + noun / pronoun = to be in need of, to be in want of o need is a regular, notional, normal, transitive verb ('need' is not a modal verb)

- o need is used in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences

- o need corresponds to the Ukrainian: потрібно, потребує, не потрібно

- He needs a dictionary. • Do you need my help? •

- to need + verb o need is a regular, notional, normal, transitive verb ('need' is not a modal verb)

- o need is used in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences

- o need is used with the Indefinite Infinitive only

- o need corresponds to the Ukrainian: потрібно, не потрібно

- o need is close to 'to have to'

- You don't need to tell me about it. (= You don't have to tell me about it.)

- You didn't need to tell me about it

- Did you need to read all these books? (= Did you have to read all these books? = Was it necessary for you to read all these books?)

- I'm afraid you need to know all about it.

- I'm tired. I need to get some sleep.

- We need to complete this report by Friday. (= we complete it) and

- We need them to complete this report by Friday. (= they complete it)

- o when we say that it is necessary to do something, we use need, must, to have to, to have got to (have got to is less formal than the others, and is particularly common in spoken English)

- Before you buy a house, you must consider/ need to consider/ have to consider/ have got to consider all the costs.

- need + verb

- o need is a modal, defective, anomalous (аномальний, неправильний) verb

- o need has only one form o need is followed by the bare Infinitive o need is used most commonly in negative sentences, although it is sometimes also used in interrogative sentences o need is used with the Indefinite and Perfect Infinitive

- needn't + the Indefinite Infinitive shows that an unnecessary action refers to

the present or future (present or future reference) (needn't do – немає необхідності)

- needn't do – не потрібно (present or future reference)

- needn't + the Perfect Infinitive shows that the action refers to the past and that an unnecessary action was carried out. You are often implying that the person didn't know at the time that their action was not necessary. (past reference) (need't have done – відсутність необхідності)

- need't have done – не було потреби, даремно (past reference)

- He needn't do it just now.

- You needn't be afraid of me

- You needn't have spent all the money. Now we've got nothing left.

Need I repeat it? (or, more commonly: Do I have to repeat it?)

- Need I tell you what has happened? (or, more commonly: Do I have to tell you what has happened?)

- Need she come tomorrow? (or, more commonly: Does she have to come tomorrow?/

- Will she have to come tomorrow?)

1a. Absence of necessity. It is expressed by the negative forms of 'need' and 'to have to' o Present reference:

- You don't need to water the flowers. (need – a regular verb)/You needn't water the flowers. (need – a modal verb)/You don't have to water the flowers. = It is not necessary to do something./It is unnecessary to do something. Confer:

- He doesn't have to get up early on Sundays.

Past reference:

- I didn't need to buy this book. (need – a regular verb)/I didn't have to buy this book. = It was not necessary to do something in the past, and it wasn't done. (= I didn't buy the book.)

- I needn't have bought this book. (need – a modal verb) = We think something that was done is not necessary. (= I did buy the book. / It wasn't necessary for me to buy this book but I did.)

Note 1: In Interrogative sentences 'need' is used when there is a strong element of negation or doubt or when the speaker expects a negative answer.

- Need she go there?

- Need I help you?

Note 2: In Negative sentences the negation is not always combined with the verb, but may be expressed by other parts of the sentence.

- I don't think we need mention him at all.

- I need hardly say that I agree with you. (= It is almost unnecessary for me to say that I agree with you; formal context)

- Cf.: I hardly need to say that I agree with you. (less formal context)

- I need scarcely point out that there is a water shortage at the moment. (= It is almost unnecessary for me to point out that there is a water shortage at the moment; formal context)

- Cf.: I scarcely need to point out that there is a water shortage at the moment; less formal context

• The changes need only be small to make the proposals acceptable. (- formal context) Cf.: The changes only need to be small to make the proposals acceptable; less formal context

2. 'need + to-Infinitive'; 'need + -ing form'

o The regular verb 'need' is followed by the Infinitive only if a living being is the subject.

- John and his brother need to paint the house.
- My friend needs to learn Spanish.
- He will need to drive alone tonight.

o If a lifeless thing (an inanimate object) is the subject of this verb, the verb is followed by a gerund or the verb to be + Participle II. (the -ing form has a passive meaning)

- The grass needs cutting. or The grass needs to be cut.
- The television needs repairing. or The television needs to be repaired.
- The carpet needs cleaning. or The carpet needs to be cleaned.
- The flowers need watering. or The flowers need to be watered

3. Confer:

• = You shouldn't have come (because you are ill.) – The action is undesirable.

o = You needn't have come (because the lesson doesn't take place.) – The action is unnecessary.

4. 'must needs' or 'needs must' = **must necessarily** – обов'язково. The form is always 'needs' not 'need' and the expression is usually used ironically or sarcastically

• He knew they were vegetarians, and he must needs take them to a steak house.

• He must needs go away just when I want his help. (= He foolishly or stupidly insists on going away when I want his help.)

• He needs must go; he must needs go.

• Needs must when the devil drives. (proverb) = Circumstances may compel us to act in a certain way.

5 a) 'need be' and 'if need be' are convenient idioms for use in the present or future

• We'll go by bus if need be. (if need be – якщо потрібно буде)

• We'll leave earlier than need be. b) In the past we replace them by '(if) necessary'

• We left earlier than was necessary

Exercise 1. Explain the meaning of need in the following sentences and translate them into Ukrainian: 1. He needs sea air. 2. We don't need anything else. 3. I needn't finish my sentence, for you already know what I was going to say. 4. If you don't like the cocktail, you needn't drink it. 5. "Do you remember what you did when you were twenty-five?" "You need not have reminded me of it." 6. Need we insist upon the date? 7. You needn't worry. 8. Need you bring your girl-friend with you? 9. She said that if he didn't like to come to her parties he

needn't come at all. 10. I was rather afraid that he might act as though we were intimate friends, which would have been embarrassing. But I need not have worried. 11. Does he need to study more at home? "Why don't you go and look at the snake?" her mother suggested. "You needn't go up close." 12. It's not easy to hold responsibility. I needn't tell you that. 13. Angela opened the door and walked in. Her daughter was still up. "You needn't have stayed up, waiting for me." said Angela. 14. What else do you need? 15. You needn't have carried all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had asked them. 16. I must go at once, but you needn't. 17. You needn't have waited for me; I could have found the way all right. 18. You needn't pay me back the money you owe me until next week. 19. I needn't have made so much food for the party. Nobody was very hungry. (= It was not necessary to make so much food, but I did, – it was a waste of time.) 20. She didn't need to wait. (= It was not necessary to wait; we do not know whether she did or not.) 21. I didn't need to unlock the door because it was already unlocked.

Exercise 2. Underline the more likely answer. If they are equally likely, underline them both. 1. You needn't close/don't need to close the door. I'm just going out. 2. In most developed countries, people needn't boil/don't need to boil water before they drink it. 3. Hannah has agreed to organise the party, so she said that the rest of us needn't do /don't need to do anything. 4. I've brought the car, so you needn't carry/don't need to carry your bags to the station. 5. You needn't have/don't need to have any qualifications to be a politician. 6. Now that it has been eradicated, doctors needn't vaccinate/don't need to vaccinate against smallpox. 7. You needn't go/don't need to go to the supermarket. I went shopping earlier. 8. In many countries you needn't pay/don't need to pay to use public libraries.

Exercise 3. Read the situations and make sentences with needn't have. 1. George went out. He took an umbrella because he thought it was going to rain. But it didn't rain. He needn't have taken an umbrella. 2. Ann bought some eggs when she went shopping. When she got home, she found that she already had plenty of eggs. She 3. A friend got angry with you and shouted at you. You think this was unnecessary. Later you say to him/her: You 4. Brian had no money, so he sold his car. A few days later he won some money in a lottery. He 5. When we went on holiday, we took the camera with us but we didn't use it in the end. 6. I thought I was going to miss my train so I rushed to the station. But the train was late and in the end I had to wait 20 minutes.

Exercise 4. Write two sentences for each situation. Use needn't have in the first sentence and could have in the second (as in the example). 1. Why did you rush? Why didn't you take your time? You needn't have rushed. You could have taken your time. 2. Why did you walk home? Why didn't you take a taxi? 3. Why did you stay at a hotel? Why didn't you stay with us? 4. Why did she phone me in the middle of the night? Why didn't she phone me in the morning? 5. Why did you leave without saying anything? Why didn't you say goodbye to me?

Exercise 5. Supply needn't have ... or didn't have to... and the correct form of the verbs in brackets. 1. I ... (phone) the mechanic. I learnt later that Michael had already phoned him. 2. I ... (phone) the mechanic. I knew that Michael had already phoned him. 3. Kate ... (make) lunch when she came home, because her husband had already done it. 4. I ... (wake) her up because she was awake before me. 5. You ... (bring) your umbrella after all. It hasn't rained. 6. Mother ... (cook) a meal last night as we were going out. 7. I ... (cook) a meal last night because we went out and the food I prepared was uneaten. 8. You ... (pay) the man. He didn't deserve it. 9. Claire ... (bring) the tape. We didn't plan to listen to it. 10. Ann ... (buy) any eggs as on coming home she found that she had plenty of eggs.

Exercise 6. Fill in the gaps with needn't have or didn't need to and the correct form of the verb in brackets, as in the example. 1. I had been to the restaurant many times before so I ...didn't need to use... (use) a map to find my way there. 2. You(come) here to tell me. You could have called me instead. 3. We didn't go abroad for our holidays last year so we(take) our passports with us. 4. I cooked dinner last night so we (order) a takeaway. 5. You(wash) your suit. I would have taken it to the dry-cleaner's for you. 6. I(buy) anything from the supermarket so I went straight home after work. 7. My brother told me he was taking two sleeping bags so I (pack) one for myself. 8. You(call) from a phone box. You could have used my mobile phone instead. 9. I (send) Tom's birthday card because I knew I was going to see him on his birthday. 10. You (book) the tickets yourself. My secretary would have done it for you. 11. I bought a new car last year, and then a month later I won one in a competition. So I(to spend) all that money. 12. I(to have) an interview. They accepted me without one. 13. Sue was feeling a lot better by the weekend, so we (to do) her shopping for her. 14. I got a lift to the station, so I(to take) a taxi after all.

Exercise 7. Here are some extracts from a speech made by the managing director of a company to her employees. Correct any mistakes. 1. I need hardly to tell you how important it is that we win this order. 2. I don't have to remind you that we are competing with two other companies. 3. We don't need to allow our competitors to gain an advantage over us. 4. We were delighted that we needn't have sold off our subsidiary company last year. 5. We mustn't allow our production rates to drop. 6. You mustn't work at weekends for the moment. 7. You needn't to worry about redundancies.

Exercise 8. Choose the correct item.

1. Ben is very rude. He have talked to Sarah that way.
A. could B. shouldn't C. mustn't
2. It's very late. The children be sleeping.
A. must B. can't C. shouldn't
3. We finish the project by Friday or else we'll lose the client.
A. might B. needn't C. have to
4. You made anything for the party. I have plenty of food.

A. needn't have B. needn't C. mustn't

5. The north of England get very cold during the winter.

A. may B. can C. could

6. You write and thank everyone for the birthday presents they gave you.

A. shouldn't B. need C. ought to

7. John isn't at home. He be at the gym.

A. might B. couldn't C. can't

8. Susan has a broken leg. She gone skiing.

A. can't have B. couldn't C. may

9. It's your own fault you crashed the car. You been driving so fast.

A. might not have B. may not have C. shouldn't have

10. I call David now? - Yes, he said it was an emergency.

A. Need B. Needn't C. Could

11. That be Eve on the phone. She doesn't know our new number.

A. mustn't B. needn't C. can't

12. Why are Bob and Moira late? – Well, they missed the 5 o'clock bus.

A. could have been B. might have C. should

13. You bring your tent with you. We can both sleep in mine.

A. need B. don't need to C. needn't have

14. You have brought so many jumpers. I could have lent you some of mine.

A. needn't B. couldn't C. didn't need to

15. Diana must the stage props all night. She looks extremely tired.

A. be preparing B. have been preparing C. have prepared

Exercise 9. Translate the following sentences into English using need. 1.

Тому потрібно нове пальто. 2. Йому не потрібно нових черевиків. 3. Потрібно йому нову сорочку? 4. Робота вимагала часу і терпіння. 5. Потрібно перевести (щоб хто-небудь перевів) того сліпого через вулицю. 6. Мої туфлі потребують ремонту. 7. Йому необхідно працювати так пізно? 8. Йому немає необхідності працювати так пізно, чи не так? 9. Вам потрібно відправитися раніше, щоб приїхати завідна. 10. Вам доведеться / Вам треба поквапитися, якщо ви хочете потрапити на поїзд, який відходить в чверть на третю. 11. Нам не потрібно було поспішати (і ми не поспішали). 12. Нам не потрібно було б поспішати (Ми поспішали, а тепер бачимо, що в цьому не було необхідності).

Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into English using need. 1.

Те, що вона зробила, так нерозумно, що нам нема чого обговорювати це. 2. Це було так близько, що навіть Алан, який не любив ходити пішки, погодився, що їм не потрібно брати його машину. 3. Нам ні до чого варити всю картоплю. 4. Нам потрібно переодягнутися до обіду? 5. У нас маса часу. Ми даремно поспішали. 6. А нам обов'язково туди йти? 7. Тобі нема чого витратити на них всі гроші. 8. Я сказав твоєму дядькові, що поговорю з тобою. - Ти даремно турбувався. Я пообіцяв своїм батькам побути тут ще трохи. 9. Він поклав конверт на стіл. «Гроші всі там, - сказав він. - Можеш не перераховувати їх». 10. Ти знаєш дітей. Вони все ламають. Мені немає

потреби говорити тобі про це. 11. Він знав, що йому не треба нікому нічого пояснювати. 12. Я думаю, що нам нема чого приділяти їй стільки уваги. 13. Тобі нема чого боятися мене. 14. Нам не обов'язково слухати всіх ораторів.

Exercise 11. Translate the following sentences expressing absence of necessity into Ukrainian using have to or need. 1. Розповісти тобі, як все це сталося? - Не треба. Я все знаю. 2. Погода зараз тепла, і мені не треба топити камін ввечері. 3. Він чітко усвідомлював, що він хоче сказати, і йому не треба було підбирати слова. 4. Мені не треба було нічого купувати, так як мій чоловік не обідав вдома в той день. 5. У нього зараз канікули. Йому не треба працювати до осені. 6. Скажи моєму синові, що йому не треба працювати до осені. Йому треба добре відпочити вдома. 7. Вона знала, що їй не треба бути присутнім при їх розмові. 8. У нього не було необхідності жити влітку в Лондоні.

Exercise 12. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using shouldn't, oughtn't to or needn't followed by a Perfect Infinitive. 1. Тобі не слід було поступатися її капризам. 2. Тобі не треба було приводити свого приятеля сьогодні. Я погано себе почуваю. 3. Мені не слід було говорити їм цього. 4. Ти даремно замовив номер в готелі. У нас є вільна спальня. 5. Тобі не слід було одружитися так рано. 6. Ти даремно написав йому про це. Він тепер буде турбуватися. 7. Ти даремно приїхав в Лондон. Тут його немає. 8. Тобі не треба було купувати цю машину. Вона дуже дорога. 9. Ти даремно приїхав на машині. Тут немає моста через річку. 10. Даремно ти був з нею такий грубий. Вона тепер плаче.

Exercise 13. Choose the most suitable response to each comment or question.

A. What did I do wrong? –

B.

1. You shouldn't have connected these two wires.
2. You didn't have to connect these two wires.

A. Why is the dog barking? –

B.

1. It should have heard something.
2. It must have heard something.

A. Why are you home so early? –

B.

1. I needn't have worked this afternoon.
2. I didn't have to work this afternoon.

A. Why did you worry about me? I didn't take any risks. –

B.

1. You must have been injured.
2. You could have been injured.

A. You forgot my birthday again! –

B.

1. Sorry, I should have looked in my diary.
2. Sorry, I had to look in my diary.

A. We had a terrible crossing on the boat in a storm. –

B.

1. That didn't have to be very pleasant!

2. That can't have been very pleasant!

A. Where were you yesterday? You didn't turn up! –

B.

1. I had to go to London.

2. I must have gone to London.

A. What do you think about the election? –

B.

1. The Freedom Party had to win.

2. The Freedom Party should have won.

A. There's a lot of food left over from the party, isn't here? –

B.

1. Yes, you couldn't have made so many sandwiches.

2. Yes, you needn't have made so many sandwiches,

A. What do you think has happened to Tony? –

B.

1. I don't know, he should have got lost.

2. I don't know, he might have got lost.

Exercise 14. Tick the correct item, as in the example.

1. Dan can't be a teacher.

a) I'm sure Dan isn't a teacher.

✓ b) I think Dan isn't a teacher.

2. Need I take the tablets every day?

a) Is it a good idea to take the tablets every day?

b) Is it necessary to take the tablets every day?

3. You needn't have bought me flowers.

a) You bought me flowers.

b) You didn't buy me flowers.

4. If it is hot tomorrow, we might go to the beach.

a) We will definitely go to the beach tomorrow.

b) It is possible that we will go to the beach tomorrow.

5. You ought to have apologised to Mary.

a) You apologised to Mary.

b) You didn't apologise to Mary.

6. You mustn't steal.

a) It is against the law to steal.

b) It isn't necessary to steal.

7. Alison has to work on Saturday. Her boss told her so.

a) Alison wants to work on Saturday.

b) Alison's boss wants her to work on Saturday.

8. Sam must have finished lunch by now.

a) I'm sure Sam has finished lunch.

b) I'm sure Sam hasn't finished lunch.

Exercise 15. Translate the following sentences into English. (Modal Verbs) 1. Мабуть, він йшов цією дорогою: ось сліди його ніг. 2. Не варто нам поспішати. Ми прийшли занадто рано. 3. Хочете чашку чаю? 4. Хочете, я куплю овочі? 5. Допомогти тобі нести сумки? 6. Не пообідати чи нам в ресторані? 7. Закрити вікно? (Я закрию вікно?) 8. Купити яблук? 9. Я втратила сумку. Що мені робити? 10. Студенти не повинні їсти під час лекцій. 11. Не можна залишати дітей без нагляду! 12. Я не повинен пояснювати тобі (немає необхідності пояснювати), що це за люди. 13. Не потрібно бути особливо розумним, щоб вирішити цю задачу. 14. Ми не зобов'язані знижувати податки (немає необхідності знижувати податки). 15. Не обов'язково бути багатим, щоб жити щасливо. 16. Я повинен піти і поговорити з нею. (Вона мене сама викликала). 17. Я повинен піти і поговорити з нею. (Я сам хочу з нею дещо обговорити). 18. Я повинен з'їсти три гамбургера, щоб відчути себе ситим. 19. Він повинен спати вночі як мінімум дев'ять годин. 20. Мені не довелося нічого пояснювати.

Exercise 16. Fill in the gaps with must, mustn't or needn't/don't have to, as in the example.

1.

A: You ... needn't/don't have to do the washing-up. I'll do it.

B: Thanks, Mum.

2.

A: Paul go to the dentist more often.

B: I know. His teeth are in terrible condition.

3.

A: If we want to see the beginning of the film, weleave now

B: Alright. I'm ready.

4.

A: Youspeak with your mouth full.

B: I know. It's very rude.

5.

A: Shall I mow the lawn?

B: No, you I did it earlier.

6.

A: I walk the dog now?

B: Yes, it'll be dark in half an hour.

7.

A: John and I are going to the theatre on Friday night.

B: You get a baby-sitter. I'll take care of the children for you.

8.

A: You forget to post those letters.

B: I'll post them on my way to work.

Exercise 17. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Вам треба їхати прямо зараз? 2. Нам треба виходити на наступній зупинці. 3. Тобі не треба купувати таку дорогу сукню. Я можу тобі дати одягнути (to lend) свою. 4. Учора мені не треба було пилюсосити, черга була мого

старшого брата. 5. Мені не треба було видаляти зуб, оскільки проблема була незначна. 6. «Як пройшла співбесіда (a job interview)?» «Я марно хвилювалась, це була чиста формальність». 7. У цій компанії працівникам-чоловікам не треба одягати костюм. 8. Нам не треба було викликати поліцію. З'ясувалося, вони як раз патрулювали (to patrol) на нашій вулиці. 9. Мені на сорочку треба пришити гудзик. 10. Тобі не потрібно сьогодні друкувати цей лист. Це не терміново (to be urgent). 11. Мені не треба було розсилати запрошення на весілля своїм далеким родичам. З'ясувалося, мій майбутній чоловік (a fiancé) хотів мене здивувати і зробив це сам. 12. За нашим сином доглядає твоя мама, тому тобі не слід хвилюватися за його безпеку. 13. Тобі не треба хвилюватися через свою вагу. 14. Мені не треба було боятися свого начальника. Виявилось, що він не дуже вимогливий (to be demanding). 15. Нам не треба було запрошувати перекладача. Коли ми приїхали, то з'ясувалося, що голова американської делегації знає українську.

Exercise 18. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. I ... (to talk) to you in private. 2. You ... (not to give) a long speech – a few sentences will suffice. 3. ... we (to go away) so soon? 4. You ... (not to keep) all these documents – just bin them. 5. You ... (not to obtain) planning permission if you want to extend your house in this country. 6. We ... (not to bother) about booking a taxi – my brother gave us a lift to the station. 7. We ... (not to call) the doctor. Several minutes later Paula felt well. 8. He ... (not to heat up) the meal – it was hot. 9. All the windows had screens so I ... (not to worry) about being bitten by mosquitoes. 10. Samuel ... (not to buy) a tailcoat. It turned out there was not a dress code at the cocktail party. 11. She ... (to go shopping) this afternoon. 12. You ... (not to worry) too much about what she said – she tends to dramatize things. 13. ‘Did you ask Sophia to help?’ ‘I ... (not to ask) – I managed perfectly well on my own.’ 14. I ... (not to cook) lunch. Just as it was ready, my friends phoned to say that they couldn't come to eat. 15. You ... (not to concern) yourself with the hotel booking. The travel agent will take care of it.

8. SHALL

Shall is never a purely modal verb. It always combines its modal meaning with the function of an auxiliary expressing futurity. As a rule shall as a modal verb is not translated into Ukrainian, its meaning is rendered by emphatic intonation. Shall expresses:

<p>1. Compulsion, strict order, prohibition. In this meaning it is always used with the second and third persons and has a strong stress. He shall go there now. Він повинен піти туди зараз.</p>
<p>2. Offer. We use shall in questions with ‘I’ to make offers (with shall ‘offers’ are more tentative than with will in the affirmative). (tentative невпевнений = less direct) Shall I wash up this evening? Shall I open the window? (= Do you want me to open the window?) · What shall I do for you? o Compare shall I...? and will you...?: · Shall I shut the door? (= Do you want me to shut the door?) · Will you shut the door? (= I want you to shut the</p>

door.)

3. Suggestion. We use shall in questions with 'we' to make suggestions. · Shall I get you the chair? – Yes, please. · Shall we go out for a meal tonight? – Mmm. I'd love to. (=Why don't we go out? / How about going out?) ·

Shall we go for a swim tomorrow? – Yes, let's . / Yes, let's, shall we? / No, I'd rather not. / No, I'd rather we didn't. ·

o In Am. E. 'should' is used in preference to 'shall' for suggestions. ·

Let's decide what to do this evening. Should we go bowling?

4. Asking for instruction. We use shall in questions with 'I, we, he, she' to ask about the wish of the person addressed. · Shall I shut the door, ma'am? (=Do you want me to shut the door?) · Shall he go there? (=Do you want him to go there?)

4a. Formal instruction, especially in official documents. · The secretary shall minute the proceedings (протоколи) of each meeting.

5. Threat or warning. In this meaning it is also used in the second and third persons and with a weak stress. "That's the last time!" she cried. "You shall never see me again!" Ви ніколи мене тут не побачите! · You shall pay for this, you shall.

6. Promise. It is also used with the second and third persons and with a weak stress. Don't be afraid, Jane, I saw it was an accident. You shall not be punished.

I shall make you happy, see if I don't.

7. Unwillingness or refusal to do something. · Go and buy some milk, will you, love? – No, I shan't. I'm busy. · Drink your milk, Jimmy! – I shan't!

8. We use shall in questions asking about decisions with 'I' and 'we' only.

Shall I see you next week, then?

Exercise 1. Comment on the meaning of shall. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. 1. Where shall we put this vase? 2. I'll begin again and you shan't stop me this time! 3. He shall repent (жалкувати) for this neglect of duty. 4. You shall have it back tomorrow. 5. He shall never come here again! I'll take care of it. 6. 'How long shall you be away?' Sarah asked. 7. 'Shall I leave the candle for a little while?' I asked. 8. I give you my word; the work shall be done on time. 9. Persons under 18 shan't be employed in night-work. 10. I'll have coffee with you and then you shall play and sing for me. 11. I must ask that what I tell you shall be understood to be entirely confidential. 12. You shall not search my rooms. You have no right to do it. I forbid you! 13. He hasn't seen you and he shan't. 14. The police shall take you up (арестовувати). 15. You shall have all the news I can send you. 16. 'Shall I order a taxi?' he asked. 17. That shall be put an end to now and for ever! 18. He shall get his money. 18. When he come in, nobody shall say a word. (order)

Exercise 2. Make suggestions to a friend for the following situations. Begin each sentence with Shall we ... ?

1. You feel like going out this evening. ... Shall we go out this evening? ... 2. You feel like having a snack in the nearest cafe.3. You feel like having a holiday abroad. 4. You feel like going to a concert tonight.

..... 5. You feel like travelling first class. 6. You feel like finishing the experiment sooner. 7. You feel like visiting your friends in the country. 8. You feel like going for a ride in the country.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using shall I ... and the most suitable of these verbs: wait tell get invite paint ask play talk 1. How much money ... shall I get ... from the bank? 2. Where ... for you? 3. What colour ... my kitchen? Have you got any ideas? 4. What ... my parents about it? 5. Who ... chess with? 6. Where ... to him? 7. Who ... to help me? 8. Who ... to my party?

Exercise 4. What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with shall I ...? or shall we ...? 1. You and a friend want to do something this evening but you don't know what. You ask your friend. What shall we do this evening?..... 2. You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not. You ask a friend for advice. ... it? 3. It's Ann's birthday next week. You want to give her a present but you don't know what. You ask a friend for advice. What 4. You and a friend are going on holiday together but you haven't decided where. You ask him/her 5. You and a friend are going out. You haven't decided whether to go by car or to walk. You ask him/her.or 6. Your friend wants you to phone later. You don't know what time to phone. You ask him/her.

Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into English using shall wherever possible. 1. Мені зараз йому зателефонувати? 2. Вона пошкодує, що сказала це, я впевнений. 3. Ви не закриєте кімнату, поки я вам не дозволю. 4. Запалити світло? У кімнаті стає темно. 5. Ви отримаєте ваше замовлення завтра, не сумнівайтесь. 6. Мені читати? 7. Нам йти нагору? 8. Скільки мені заплатити носієві? 9. Коли ми дізнаємося щось, ви неодмінно почуєте про це. 10. Ви відпустіть мене додому? - Ні. Ти у вівторок підеш пароплавом в Сан-Франциско. 11. Це можна зробити і це буде зроблено, якщо ти тільки допоможеш мені. 12. «Тобі пограти?» - запитала вона. - "Так будь ласка". 13. Коли він говорить: «Зроби», я відповідаю: «Буде зроблено». 14. «Я хочу, щоб цей багаж віднесли в мою кімнату». «Його зараз же віднесуть наверх, сер».

Exercise 6. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Тобі допомогти з домашнім завданням? 2. Я куплю тобі квитки на концерт в Карнегі-хол. 3. Усі платежі мають бути здійснені кредитною картою (by credit card). 4. Закон повинен гарантувати рівні права для жінок та чоловіків. 5. Чайник кипить. Мені його виключити? 6. Давайте зробимо перерву на обід. 7. Мені допомогти тобі помити посуд? 8. Давай поговоримо відкрито та прямо (to speak openly and directly), добре? 9. «Тобі позичити п'ятдесят фунтів?» «Так, дякую. Я думаю, цього вистачить». 10. На чий машині поїдемо (to use)? 11. Мені купити тобі газету дорогою додому? 12. Вчителька сказала нам: «Я заберу (to confiscate) телефони, якщо ви будете ними користуватися на занятті». 13. «Коли мені йому розповісти?» «Чим швидше, тим краще». 14. Мені доглянути дітей замість тебе? 15. «Куди підемо їсти?» «Мені все одно».

Exercise 7. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment on their use. 1. You ... (to be dismissed) you if you continue to turn up

late for work. 2. ... we (to use) the stairs or take the lift? 3 '... I (to carry) this bag for you?' 'Oh, yes. It's terribly heavy.' 4. ... I (to babysit) for you on Friday night? 5. We ... (to guarantee) adequate supplies of raw materials. 6. 'When ... we (to meet)?' 'Thursday would be a good day for me.' 7. Their landlord said, 'The bailiffs ... (to be sent in) if you don't pay your rent.' 8. ... I (to help) you change the bed? 9. Two MPs said, 'The politicians ... (to be resigned) if the government doesn't agree to examine this case.' 10. ... we (to help) you carry these cases up the stairs? 11. '... we (to meet) at 8 o'clock?' 'Yes, that's fine.' 12. I'm tired of that café, let's go somewhere else for a change, ... we? 13. ... I (to buy) you some coffee? 14. We ... (to provide) a solution that is acceptable to both parties. 15. '... we (to get a takeaway) on the way home?' 'If you like.'

9. WILL

Will is hardly ever a purely modal verb. It generally combines its modal meaning with the function of an auxiliary expressing futurity. In most cases will is rendered in Ukrainian by emphatic intonation, but sometimes the verb хотеть is used. It is used with all persons but mostly with the first person. The modal verb will expresses:

1. Polite request. These requests are informal and we usually use them with people we know quite well.

Will you help me? – Yes, I will. / I'm afraid I can't. ('No, I won't' – is not common because it is impolite. It means: 'I don't want to help you'.)

Will you give me a piece of bread, for I am very hungry? – Yes, of course.

Will you give me a call when you get to the hotel? – Yes, of course, I will.

Will you kindly turn that stereo down?

Will you hold the door open for me please?

Will you please be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.

2. Offer made at the time of speaking. We usually contract will to 'll with this use. We use will in the affirmative sentences, both to make offers to do something ourselves and on behalf of other people. (I'll = I'm willing to do something)

You are busy. I'll do it for you.

That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.

Come over after work. I'll make a meal for you.

I'll pick you up at the airport if you like.

I'll give you a hand with this. · That's the phone. I'll get it for you, shall I?

Give him your suitcase. He'll carry it for you.

Will you have some more of the pie? (neutral)

Won't you have some more of the pie? (more encouraging)

What will you have?

o Invitation. We can use will or won't in questions when we invite somebody to do something.

Will you come into my parlour?

3. Promise

Don't worry. We will help him. I promise I won't tell anyone what happened.

My government will turn round the economy and reduce unemployment.
I will be careful with the car, I promise.
I'll buy you a bicycle for your birthday.
I'll give you another opportunity to get the correct answer.
Thanks for lending me the money. I'll pay you back on Friday.

4. Threat or warning. (will не має сильного наміру) ·
Stop making that noise or I will scream!
If you play that CD one more time, I'll throw it out of the window.
Give it back or we'll call the Police!

5. Orders, rules and formal instructions.
You will all stay behind for thirty minutes and clean the room.
The judge's decision will be final.
You will do exactly as I say.

6. Decision , volition (воля) made at the time of speaking. We usually contract will to 'll with this use.

'It's Jane's birthday today.' 'Is it? I'll buy her some flowers.'
'Somebody is ringing at the door' 'I'll get it.'
I'll have the steak, please.
I'll see you tomorrow. Bye!
Give me a ring some time. We'll go out for a drink.
Jane, there's someone at the door! – OK, I'll get it.
I think I'll lie down for a moment.
'What would you like to drink?' 'I'll have an orange juice, please.'
'Did you phone Ruth?' 'Oh, no, I forgot. I'll phone her now.'

7. Persistence referring to the present or to the future, determination, intention, willingness, unwillingness or refusal to do something. In speech we stress will/won't to indicate determination, especially when the action is decided on or the determination is strengthened at the time of speaking.

I will go with you, I have no choice.
Don't tell me about it. - But I will tell you. (will – обов'язково)
I will write as soon as I can.
I'll take the money anyway! – You won't! (= I refuse you.) – I will.
I won't do it! (= I refuse to do it.) – Yes, you will! (= I insist that you should do it)
I will come with you at the weekend, whatever my parents say!
I will give up smoking! o Note: we do not usually contract will to 'll with this use, as we usually stress the modal verb will, but we can make the contraction when we stress the adverb:
He'll never agree to that!

8. Characteristic habits, behaviour or quality, repeated actions. (Will can sometimes be used in place of the Simple Present to refer to a person's characteristic habits or behaviour; will is unstressed.)

In fine weather, he will often sit in the sun for hours. Cf. In fine weather, he often sits in the sun for hours.

Danny will sit and look at the sea for hours. (He has often done it and I'm sure he'll go on doing it.) He will always complain if he gets the opportunity.

This car will hold six people comfortably. ·

Every day he works for an hour in the garden. (This use of 'will' meaning 'is in the habit of doing' is often ambiguous (нечіткий) and unnecessary since the Present Tense expresses the idea just as well or better.)

o Note common fixed phrases with 'will':

Boys will be boys. Хлопці завжди залишаються хлопцями.

Accidents will happen. Нещасний випадок може трапитись з кожним

What will be will be. – Що має бути, тому неможливо запобігти.

9. We use will/won't to criticize inanimate (неживий) things describing an annoying habit. We do not contract will as we stress it. (Speaking about lifeless things, the speaker is annoyed at something and speaks about a thing or a phenomenon of nature as if it possessed a will of its own; there is an element of personification here).

It's no use trying to open the door, it won't open. The key won't fit the lock.

My pen won't write. Ручка ніяк не пише.

The stamp won't stick to the envelope.

The car won't start. I wonder what's wrong with it.

10. Prediction. We use will/won't to make predictions about the future; prediction is based more on our opinion or our past experience than a fact.

According to statistics, smokers won't live as long as non-smokers.

I imagine the stadium will be full for the match on Saturday.

People will always say the things you want to hear.

Why not come over at the weekend? The children will enjoy seeing you again.

It will be a difficult test to pass.

These flowers won't grow under the tree. It's dark. ·

o We can make predictions, intentions or decisions stronger or weaker by using certain adverbs, for example: definitely, certainly, probably (вероятно, наверное), possibly.

You'll certainly like their new CD.

I certainly won't give you a lift to the station – it's only down the road!

The lecture probably won't start on time – they rarely do here. ·

o We use will/won't have + past participle (the Future Perfect) to make predictions about actions which we expect to be completed by a particular time in the future.

By the time you get home I will have cleaned the house from top to bottom. o Notice that we can use other modal verbs instead of 'will' to talk about the future in a less certain way:

By the time you get home I will/may/should have cleaned the house.

11. Certainty (впевненість) about the present (100% certainty). We make confident 'predictions' about the present based on our knowledge or previous experience or on current expectations or based on what we know about people and

things, their routines, character and qualities. In this meaning 'will' is an equivalent of 'must' (напевно).

There is a knock at the door. – That will be the postman. He always calls at this time (100% certainty).

It's five o'clock. Janet'll be in Paris now. (We use 'will be' to say that we believe something is certain. 'Certainty' – the speaker believes it's true.) Janet isn't here at the moment. She's in France. (We use the Present Simple to state a fact without expressing an opinion as to certainty or otherwise (щось протилежне) of the event).

'Shall I ask Sandra?' 'No, don't disturb her – she'll be working.'

o Certainty about the past. To refer to something which we feel certain has happened (but do not actually know), we use will have + past participle:

We sent the invitations on Monday, so they will have received them by now. Why hasn't anyone replied? (This is similar to must have + past participle:

We sent the invitations on Monday, so they must have received them by now.) · 'What time is it?' 'Half past twelve.' 'Well, the last bus will have left.'

o We use won't have + past participle to refer to something which we feel certain has not happened:

We sent the invitations by second-class post. They won't have received them yet. (This is similar to can't have + past participle:

We sent the invitations by second-class post. They can't have received them yet.

12. Very often will is used after the conjunction if in conditional sentences where it retains its modal meaning, that of volition, willingness. (will = want; to be willing to) (A sentence of this type is often a conditional sentence only in form; it is actually a polite request.)

If you will help me, we can finish by six.

If you will wait, I'll see if Mr. Green is free.

If you will take a seat for a moment, Mr. Frank will be with you soon. (=If you are willing to take a seat for a moment, Mr. Frank will be with you soon.)

If you will hold these bags for me, I can open the door.

If you will clear the table, I'll wash the dishes.

If you will wait for me, I'll be very grateful.

And if you will excuse me, I must be going.

Exercise 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb will. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. 1. I will let you know, so you can be there. 2. Oil will float on water. 3. I will make your excuses to Margaret. 4. Will you go out on the terrace and look at the sunset? 5. I am afraid – if you will excuse me – I must join my wife. 6. Will you ask them to call my carriage, please? 7. Will you go and look over the photograph album that I see here? 8. I will never speak to you again. 9. I suppose this will be the last ball of the season? 10. I smoke like a chimney! And my lighter won't work. 11. I want to be helpful to both; if you will let me. 12. Don't worry. I will be all right. 13. 'You must always come to me if anything goes wrong.' 'Of course, I will,' she said as if she were soothing him. 14. 'Do give my love to Christine,' said Dora. 'Surely I will,' said Michael. 15. Children, have you

been playing with my umbrella? It won't open! 16. Will you have something to drink? 17. How long will your friends be here? 18. Will you come to tea tomorrow? 19. If you will wait here a moment, I'll fetch you a chair. 20. I will not listen to such foolish talk. 21. Children will say such things. 22. I will tell you what it is. 23. If you will help me, we can finish this in no time.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences with I'll + a suitable verb. 1. I'm too tired to walk home. I think ... I'll get a taxi. 2. 'It's a bit cold in this room.' 'Is it?on the heating then.' 3. 'We haven't got any milk.' 'Oh, haven't we? and get some.' 4. 'Do you want me to do the washing-up?' 'No, it's all rightit.' 5. 'I don't know how to use this computer.' 'OK, you.' 6. 'Would you like tea or coffee?' ' coffee, please.' 7. 'Goodbye! Have a nice holiday.' 'Thanks. you a postcard.' 8. Thank you for lending me your camera.it back to you on Monday, OK? 9. 'Are you coming with us?' 'No, I thinkhere.'

Exercise 3. Read the situations and write sentences with I think I'll... or I don't think I'll... . 1. It's a bit cold. You decide to close the window. You say: ...I think I'll close the window. 2. You are feeling tired and it's quite late. You decide to go to bed. You say: I think 3. A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car but you decide to walk. You say: Thank you but 4. You arranged to play tennis today. Now you decide that you don't want to play. You say: I don't think 5. You were going to go swimming. Now you decide that you don't want to go. You say: I don't think

Exercise 4. Read the following sentences and translate them into Ukrainian. 1. The door won't shut. 2. The video won't play properly. 3. The computer won't print. 4. The tap won't turn off. 5. The car won't start. 6. The cork won't come out. 7. The window won't open.

Exercise 5. Which is correct? 1. 'Did you phone Ruth?' 'Oh no, I forgot. I phone her now. / I'll phone her now.' (I'll phone is correct) 2. I can't meet you tomorrow afternoon. I'm playing tennis. / I'll play tennis. (I'm playing is correct) 3. 'I meet / I'll meet you outside the hotel in half an hour, OK?' 'Yes, that's fine.' 4. 'I need some money.' 'OK, I'm lending / I'll lend you some. How much do you need?' 5. I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come. 6. 'Remember to buy a newspaper when you go out.' 'OK. I don't forget / I won't forget.' 7. What time does your train leave / will your train leave tomorrow? 8. I asked Sue what happened but she doesn't tell / won't tell me. 9. 'Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm free. Why?' 10. I don't want to go out alone. Do you come / Will you come with me? 11. It's a secret between us. I promise I don't tell / I won't tell anybody.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences with will ('ll) + one of these verbs: be be come get like look meet pass 1. Don't worry about your exam. I'm sure you... 'll pass.... 2. Why don't you try on this jacket? It nice on you. 3. You must meet George sometime. I think you..... him. 4. It's raining. Don't go out. You wet. 5. They've invited me to their house. They offended if I don't go. 6. Goodbye. I expect weagain before long. 7. I've

invited Sue to the party but I don't think she 8. I wonder where I20 years from now.

Exercise 7. Put in will ('ll) or won't. 1. Can you wait for me? Iwon't..... be very long. 2. There's no need to take an umbrella with you. Itrain. 3. If you don't eat anything now, you be hungry later. 4. I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. Ithappen again. 5. I've got some incredible news! You never believe what's happened. 6. Don't ask Margaret for advice. Sheknow what to do.

Exercise 8. Write questions using do you think ... will ... ? + one of these verbs: be back cost finish get married happen like rain 1. I've bought Mary a present. Do you think she'll like it? 2. The weather doesn't look very good. Do you 3. The meeting is still going on. When do you4. My car needs to be repaired. How much 5. Sally and David are in love. Do 6. 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time 7. The future situation is uncertain. What

Exercise 9. Replace shall and will with the suggested alternative verb, making any necessary changes: 1. It will soon rain. Look at the clouds. (to be going) 2. You shall stay here till I come back. (to be to) 3. I won't do what you tell me. (to refuse) 4. You shall have an apple after dinner. (to promise) 5. What will you do now? (to be going) 6. We shall visit all the sights of London. (to hope) 7. When will you learn English properly? (to intend) 8. This time next week I shall be in St. Petersburg, (to hope) 9. Do you think they'll follow us all the way home? (to mean)

Exercise 10. Underline the correct word(s) in bold, as in the example.

1.

A: Can/Will I make anything for the party on Saturday?

B: Yes, please. A pasta salad would be great.

2.

A: What about/Shall we invite the Tildons round for lunch on Sunday?

B: Yes, that's a great idea.

3.

A: Where could/shall I put these books?

B: On the counter, please.

4.

A: You look exhausted! I will/may do the cooking tonight.

B: Thanks so much.

5.

A: What do you want to do today?

B: Why don't we/What about going for a bike ride?

6.

A: Oh dear. The car has a flat tyre again.

B: Would you like me/Do you want to change the tyre for you?

Exercise 11. Read the following sentences and make offers or suggestions, as in the example. 1. You and your friends want to go away this weekend but you can't decide where to go. You would like to go skiing. What do you say? ...Let's

go skiing.... Shall we go skiing?... We can/could go skiing. ... Why don't we go skiing?... Why shouldn't we go skiing?... Why not go skiing?... ...How/What about going skiing?... 2. Your cousin is going on a business trip tomorrow morning. He is afraid he won't find a taxi and won't get to the airport on time. What do you say?3. Your sister doesn't know what to study at university. You believe that she would make a great lawyer. What do you say? 4. Your mother is throwing a party (влаштувати вечірку) and has a lot of things to do. She can't do them all by herself. What do you say? 5. Your friend has been complaining of headaches. You think her eyes need checking. What do you say?

Exercise 12. Complete these pairs of sentences appropriately using the modal verb given in brackets in one sentence, and its negative form in the other sentence. 1. He certainly ... won't ... understand if you don't explain it. (will) I ... will ... come round later if I have time. 2. Unfortunately many elderly people afford telephones. (can) You borrow my pen if you want to. 3. When I was young you buy them for under a pound. (could) They complained that they sleep. 4. If you don't work harder, you have your job much longer. (may) This medicine cause sleepiness. 5. I thought I find you here. (might) It's a long journey. They be here before midnight. 6. Schools teach children the difference between right and wrong, (must) Whatever you do you tell anyone about it. 7. I get angry in a moment. (shall) That was a moment I forget in a hurry. 8. We can't be certain how an unfamiliar word be pronounced. (should) These birds be in a cage. 9. I be back in a few minutes. (will) If we're lucky perhaps this time it rain. 10. If you can manage to help me, I be very grateful. (would) I invited her even though I knew she come. 11. You to wait too long. (ought) She to see the doctor.

Exercise 13. Rewrite the following sentences to form questions beginning with the modals given. 1. I would like to help you. /Can I ... help you? ... 2. I'd like to speak to Nicky please. /Can I ... 3. It would help if you could give me a few examples. / Could you ... 4. I'd like to have a word with you please. /May I ... 5. I wish she wouldn't be so nasty to me. /Why must she ... 6. I don't know what to give them for dinner. /What shall I ... 7. Would you like me to shut the door? /Shall I ... 8. I don't know where to meet you tonight. /Where should ... 9. I don't know who to see about my teaching programme. /Who should ... 10. Doctor, can I offer you a drink? /Will you ... 11. Please tell her that Adrian phoned. /Would you ...

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English using will. 1. Сьогодні неділя, і всі магазини будуть закриті. 2. Я заплатив гроші, і я хочу подивитися виставу. 3. Я думаю, що я піду і подивлюся телевізор, якщо ви вибачте мене. 4. «Дядько Едвін, - покликав хлопчик. - Ти обіцяв мені допомогти з моїм іграшковим потягом. Він ніяк не рухається». 5. Ти повинен стримуватися. Я не дозволю тобі так поводитися в моєму домі. 6. Якщо ви підете за мною, я покажу вам дорогу. 7. Батько не допустить, щоб ти так розмовляв зі мною. 8. Не розумію, чому вікно не відкривається. 9. Я нізащо не поміняю свою роботу. 10. Я прошу її не палити, а вона все одно

продовжує палити. 11. Дитина не слухає батьків. Вона буде покараний. 12. Вона не говорить, що трапилося, просто продовжує плакати. 13. Ти виглядаєш втомленою. Я приготую обід сьогодні ввечері. 14. Закрий двері, будь ласка. 15. Я обіцяю, завтра я не спізнюся. 16. Ну, почекай - ти пошкодуєш про це! 17. О, я залишила двері відкритими. Піду і закрию. 18. Після того, що сталося, я не вірю жодному твоєму слову. 19. Апельсин ніяк не можна було почистити. 20. Тобі не сподобається ця страва: вона дуже гостра.

Exercise 15. Change the following statements of fact into expressions of certainty by using will + infinitive. Use the Indefinite Infinitive when speaking about the present, the Perfect Infinitive when speaking about the past. 1. The tall building in the centre is the bank. ...The tall building in the centre will be the bank. ... 2. The blonde in black was the secretary. ...The blonde in black will have been the secretary. ... 3. And this is the person in question. 4. This is your mother. 5. You have noticed it already. 6. She left a message for us. 7. Something was decided. 8. The man noticed you leaving the grounds. 9. It was someone the dog knew. 10. That is the asylum.

10. WOULD

Would was originally the past tense of will in the same way as should was the past tense of shall. But while should has acquired new shades of meaning, would has preserved those of will and refers the action to the past.

1. Polite request. We use would to make request more polite, or to request things of people we do not know so well.

- Would you fill in this form, please, sir?

Would you mind opening the window? – Yes, I will./ I'm afraid I can't at the moment.

Would you mind answering a few questions, please?

Would you mind if I opened the window?

Do you mind if we don't discuss it? Would you mind my waiting here?

Would you mind not smoking?

Would you mind not talking during the examination, please?

Would you really do it for me? · Would you be so kind as to lend me your book? · Shut the door, would you?

o I wonder if you would mind if... (formal request)

- I wonder if you would mind very much if I went to bed?

2. Offer. We can use would when we offer something to another person.

Would you have some more of the pie? (neutral) – Yes, please./ No, thank you./ Yes, I'd like one please./ Yes, I'd love some please.

Would you like me to open the window (for you)? ·

Would you like to come to Scotland with me?

Would you like another drink?

What would you like to have?

What would you prefer? What would you rather have?

3. Invitation, suggestion. We can use would in questions with the verbs 'to like, to prefer' when we invite somebody to do something. (Invitation with 'would' is more polite than with 'will')

Would you like to stay with us? · Would you like to go shopping?

4. Past habits and repeated actions but not past states; persistence (наполегливсть), willingness. We use would in the affirmative only to refer to general or repeated willingness in the past.

When I was a child, I would go to see my grandparents every week.

When I was a child, my father would sometimes take me fishing. As he grew older, he would often talk about his war experiences.

When I was little, I would dress up in our mother's old clothes.

Dad would always help us with our maths homework. ·

o We can refer to past habit in the following ways:

When I worked on a farm, I always used to get up at 5 a.m.

When I worked on a farm, I would always get up at 5 a.m.

When I worked on a farm, I always got up at 5 a.m.

o Would can be used in place of used to, but, like the Simple Past, would always requires a time reference. We often use would to talk about regular activities, particularly in narrative, or when we are reminiscing пригадуємо минуле. Would is never used at the beginning of a story: the scene must first be set with the Simple Past or used to.

In familiar narrative, would can be reduced to 'd:

When I was a boy, we always spent (or used to spent) our holiday on a farm. We'd get up at 5 and we'd help milk the cows. Then we'd return to the farm kitchen, where we would eat a huge breakfast.

o We do not use would in the affirmative to express willingness to do something on a single, particular occasion in the past. Compare:

The tour guide was very helpful. She would contact the Consulate (консульство) for me when I lost my passport.

The tour guide was very helpful. She contacted/offered to contact the Consulate for me when I lost my passport.

Whenever I had to go to town, Ron would give me a lift. (= repeated)

I was late, so Ron gave me a lift to town. (not ...Ron would give me...) (= particular occasion)

5. Unwillingness or refusal, volition (воля).

Several times he tried to get away, but she would not let him go. I knocked but they wouldn't open the door.

She was going away and would not say where she was going.

o We can use 'would not' for refusal both on general or repeated occasions and on a single, particular occasion in the past.

The shop assistant wouldn't change this jumper for me, even though I hadn't worn it.

We thought that people wouldn't buy / would buy the book. (= general occasion) · She wouldn't say / would say what was wrong when I asked. (= a single occasion)

6. We use would/wouldn't to criticize inanimate (неживий) things describing an annoying habit. It is used in speaking about lifeless things in the same way as will, but in this use would is more common than will.

She was angry because the car wouldn't start.

He had a wound that wouldn't heal. У нього була рана, яка ніяк не заживала.

7. In conditional sentences after the conjunction if. ('Would' after 'if' with 'will' or 'would' in the principal clause produces a more hesitant or a politer effect. A sentence of this type is often a conditional sentence only in form; it is actually a polite request.)

If you would be frank with me, I might be of more help.

If you would write to me, I will/would answer it at once.

If you would stay here, I should be very much obliged to you. ·

A friendly invitation: We are having a few guests to dinner tomorrow, and should be delighted if you would join us. Looking forward to seeing you. ·

We should be obliged if you would kindly inform us about their financial standing. I should be very grateful if you would consider my application and could send me the necessary forms.

8. Disagreement. We can use wouldn't to show disagreement in a polite way.

I wouldn't say that.

I wouldn't go that far.

9. Desires and preferences. We often use 'would' with verbs of 'liking and preference' (like, love, prefer) to express desires and preferences which we think we can realize. ·

I'd like to say a few words about this problem.

They would like to know what time we will be back home. ·

We would like an English-German dictionary, please?

I'd prefer to lose weight by a tried (первірений) and tested method than by a new trendy diet.

Would you like to dance? – Yes, I would./ No, thank you. ('No, I wouldn't' is not common because it is impolite.)

Would you like to come for a walk with me? – (Yes,) I'd like to/I'd love to/ No, I'd prefer not to, thank you.

o Preference. We can use 'would' with 'rather' or 'sooner' to express a preference. · We would rather not stay at the conference centre. (present or future reference)

I would rather have stayed at home. (past reference) ·

I'd rather he gave me a cash refund. A credit note is no use to me. (= I would prefer a refund/ I wish he would give me a refund.)

• Careful! We don't normally use 'I want' when you are asking for something. It is not polite. In a shop you don't say: 'I want a packet of chewing gum.' It is better to say: 'Can/Could I have a packet of chewing gum?' or 'I'd like a packet of chewing gum, please?'

Exercises Exercise 1. Comment on the meaning of would. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian: 1. Arthur, would you mind seeing if Mrs. Smith has come back? 2. I want a photograph of you, – would you give me one? 3. But I told him I wouldn't give him an answer till tomorrow. 4. You did want to come, although you wouldn't say so. 5. She'd like you to ring her up this afternoon, before five-thirty, if you would. 6. I should be so glad if you would tell him to come up, Jane. 7. I knocked more than once but she wouldn't let me in. 8. He would sit on the bed beside him and watch him for hours. 9. I asked what the matter was with him but he wouldn't answer. 10. He tried the window but it wouldn't give in either. 11. As he grew older, he would often talk about his war experience.

Exercise 2. Change these questions using would you like to make them into polite offers. 1. Do you want to watch TV now? → Would you like to watch TV now? 2. Do you want soup with your meal? 3. Do you want to go home now or later? 4. Do you want sugar in your tea? 5. Do you want me to type these letters? 6. Do you want us to help you plan the meeting? 7. Do you want a single or a double room? 8. Do you want me to start work early tomorrow?

Exercise 3. Rewrites the following sentences as in the example. 1. You want your friend to have a holiday with you. ...Would you like to have a holiday with me? ... 2. You want your friend to go on an excursion with you. 3. You want your friends to join you for a meal. 4. You want to offer your friend a cup of coffee. 5. You want your friend to have a game of chess. 6. You want your friend to go for a swim with you. 7. You want to invite your friend to the theatre.

Exercise 4. Complete the requests using Would you mind...? following the model: (polite request) Example: I'm hot. (open the window) → Would you mind opening the window? 1. It's cold in here. (close the door) 2. I can't concentrate. (turn the music down) 3. I've got a cough. (not smoke) 4. We can't understand you. (not speak French) 5. The manager is busy at the moment. (wait a minute) 6. I'm sorry, Simon's not here now. (leave a message)

Exercise 5. Rewrite these sentences using wouldn't mind. 1. I'd quite like to live in London. /I wouldn't mind ... living in London. ... 2. She said she'd quite like to learn English./She said she wouldn't mind ... 3. Bill agreed that he would quite like to be chairman./Bill agreed he wouldn't mind .. 4. We all agreed we'd quite like to go back to work./We all agreed we wouldn't mind 5. I'd quite like to go into politics./I wouldn't mind ... 6. We'd quite like to catch an early train./We wouldn't mind ...

Exercise 6. Replace the words in italics with won't or wouldn't. 1. I asked my father but he refused to lend me the money. I asked my father but he wouldn't lend me the money..... 2. I've asked John to help but he refuses. 3. I've decided to take the job and I refuse to change my mind. 4. He tried to put his arm around her, but she didn't let him. 5. He hates the radio; he refuses to listen to it. 6. She switched on the machine but it refused to work. 7. He proposed to her but she refused to marry him. 8. I pushed hard but the door refused to open. 9. Tell him I refuse to discuss anything until I've spoken with my colleagues.

Exercise 7. Complete the sentences. (Making Offers and Suggestion). 1. Why don't we rent a video? Let's 2. Can I help you write the report? Would? 3. Shall we buy Peter a CD-player for his birthday? We could 4. Let's go to the beach this weekend. What about? 5. Would you like me to make sandwiches for your Christmas party? I could 6. Would you like me to help you carry the bags into the house? Can?

Exercise 8. Translate the sentences into English. (would, wouldn't) 1. Я просила, я благала (to implore), але він так і не дав мені грошей. 2. Я не зміг з'їздити за місто минулої неділі, так як батьки ні за що не дозволили взяти їх машину. 3. Він сказав, що йому доведеться поїхати через кілька днів, але ми і слухати не хотіли. 4. Бувало, по дорозі додому вони заходили (to call at) в кафе. 5. Зазвичай вечорами він сідав на веранді (verandah) в викурював сигару. 6. Сестра ні за що не хотіла взяти мене на пікнік. 7. За неділях вона зазвичай сідала за піаніно і співала нам. 8. Друзі намагалися переконати (to persuade) мене, але я не хотів їх слухати.

Exercise 9. Correct the sentences if necessary, or put a √.

1. I had to work late on Friday, so my mother would pick up Sue from school.picked

2. Mary wouldn't sing for me, even though I often asked her to. ...√

3. The moment I asked Steve, he would agree to lend me the car for the day. 4. When I phoned, the receptionist wouldn't let me have an appointment with Dr Johnson before next week. 5. At the interview they wouldn't tell me how much travelling was involved in the job. 6. Yesterday he would make me sandwiches and would bring me a cup of coffee. 7. When I had problems with my homework last night, my father would do it for me. 8. Five years ago, the children in this school would help to plant all the trees you see before you. 9. Before he moved to London, Thomas would meet me every day after work. 10. When I was young, shopkeepers would cycle around town, delivering food to customers.

Exercise 10. If possible, complete the sentences with either will or would followed by the bare infinitive form of the verb in brackets. If it is not possible to use will or would, write only the verb in brackets in the Past Simple.

1. Around 2 o'clock every night, Sue ... will start... talking in her sleep. It's very annoying. (start) 2. As soon as he woke up he things ready for breakfast. (get) 3. He work in 2008 as an assistant to the managing director. (begin) 4. After I read about the place in a magazine, Ito visit Madagascar myself. (want) 5. When I was younger, I hours just kicking a ball around the garden. (spend) 6. Even when it's freezing cold, some people just jeans and a T-shirt. (wear) 7. When I was at school, all the children in silence when the teacher came into the room. (stand up) 8. Everywhere she went, people her name and ask for her autograph. (call out) 9. Jack three days ago from a holiday in France. (return) 10. I usually get up late, so most mornings, I just a cup of tea for breakfast. (have) 11. There's a boy in my maths class who the most ridiculous questions. (ask)

12. Sheall her closest friends and relatives to her 50th birthday party last summer. (invite)

Exercise 11. Complete these sentences with will, would or used to. If more than one answer is possible, write them both. 1. I like going to pop concerts when I was a teenager. 2. Business people watch what their competitors are doing with great interest. 3. The country now known as Myanmar be called Burma. 4. My father didn't know that we borrow the car when he was at work. 5. When I was a child, summers be warmer and winters colder than now. 6. Accidents happen in the home, however safe we try to make them. 7. When the weather was good, we go walking in the hills every weekend.

Exercise 12. Complete the following sentences with will or would. 1. When we were at the seaside, wewould.... go bathing every day. 2. She walk to the station when the weather was fine. 3. He's very good. He play with that toy for hours on end. 4. As she grew old, she often talk about her father. 5. Kate is very generous. She lend you money if you need it. 6. When he needed extra money, he work overtime. 7. Mrs. Selby is a real chatterbox. She carry on talking for hours and hours if you give her a chance. 8. When he went out, Jack always take an umbrella with him whether it was raining or not. 9. He always say something which makes me laugh. 10. He slam the door when he comes in.

Exercise 13. Translate the following sentences into English using would. 1. Ну, будь ласка, розкажи мені, що сталося. 2. Джон спробував відкрити кришку, але вона ніяк не піддавалася. 3. Я б все зробив, щоб допомогти йому. 4. Він сказав, що він був би радий, якби я погодився приїхати і погостювати у нього декілька днів. 5. Він спробував пояснити, але я не став його слухати. 6. 'Він не погодився зі мною'. - 'Природньо!'. 7. Він зробив дві або три спроби запалити запальничку, але вона ніяк не запалювалася. 8. Я запитав його дружину, що з ним, але вона мені не відповіла. 9. Вечори він, більшою мірою, проводив за грою в шахи. 10. Він вимкнув лампу, але сон до нього не йшов. 11. Я хотів подивитися тільки одну картину, але вони мене не впустили, так як було пізно. 12. Я запропонував їй сходити до лікаря, але вона й слухати не хотіла про це. 13. Він часто засинав з книжкою в руках і з окулярами на носі. 14. Після роботи він зазвичай чекав нас біля мосту. 15. Він зазвичай прогулював собаку перед сном. 16. Чи не хочете ви погуляти сьогодні ввечері? 17. Я просив його не грюкати дверима, а він все продовжував плескати. 18. Якщо ви почекаєте хвилинку, я сходжу і принесу книги.

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences into English using 'would rather (sooner)' or 'would like'. 1. Коли ми сіли в машину, він сказав: «Ми могли б поїхати зараз. Тут недалеко є одне місце, яке я б хотів тобі показати». 2. Хочете ще склянку соку? 3. Я б вважав за краще не говорити тобі того, що я знаю про нього. 4. Мені зовсім не хотілося йти на цей вечір. Я б вважав за краще залишитися вдома і поговорити з батьками. 5. Він вважав за краще слухати інших і не говорити сам. 6. «Я б краще зовсім не

приїжджала додому», - сказала вона голосом, тремтячим від відчаю. 7. Вона б віддала перевагу спочатку прочитати лист.

Exercise 15. Use of English. Key Word Transformation. Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence. 1. Shall I help you move this piece of furniture? Would you like me to help you move this piece of furniture? 2. He suggested going out to dinner. go 'Why don't we go out to dinner?' he said. 3. Let's try calling him at his office. we Shall we try calling him at his office? 4. You are allowed to take photographs of the excavations. can You can take photographs of the excavations. may You may take photographs of the excavations. 5. The teacher didn't allow us to use a dictionary during the exam. may 'You may not use a dictionary during the exam,' the teacher said. cannot 'You cannot use a dictionary during the exam,' the teacher said. 6. It wasn't necessary for me to wake up so early, but I did. have I needn't have woken up so early. 7. It wasn't necessary for Kim to work overtime. need Kim didn't need to work overtime.

Exercise 16. Complete each sentence with two to five words. 1. Let's try making some bread today. we Shall bread today? 2. The policeman didn't allow us to cross the road until it was safe. may 'You the road until it is safe,' the policeman said. 3. Shall I do the shopping? me Would the shopping? 4. Terry suggested having a barbecue. have 'Why a barbecue?' Terry said. 5. Staff members are allowed to leave their cars in the car park. may Staff members in the car park. 6. My parents didn't allow me to walk home alone. cannot 'You home alone,' my parents said. 7. It wasn't necessary for her to call me today, but she did. have Shetoday. 8. It wasn't necessary for Chris to reserve a table in advance. need Chris a table in advance.

Exercise 17. Choose the most suitable expression for each situation.

a) You want to invite someone you have just met to go to the theatre with you. 1) May I go to the theatre?

2) Would you like to come to the theatre?

3) Do you think you should go to the theatre?

b) You are recommending a new restaurant to a friend.

1) You really must try the new Italian restaurant in Green Street.

2) You had better try the new Italian restaurant in Green Street.

3) You would try the new Italian restaurant in Green Street.

c) Your boss suggests that you work overtime on Saturday, but you don't want to.

1) You must be joking!

2) It's nice of you to ask, but I refuse.

3) Sorry, but I have something already arranged.

d) You want to ask the waiter to bring you another drink.

1) I'd like another beer, please.

2) Excuse me, but do you think I could take another beer?

3) You can bring me a beer if you like.

e) You ask your boss for permission to leave work early.

1) Look out! Do you mind leaving early?

2) Is it all right if I go now?

3) I'm off now, bye!

f) You want some advice from a friend.

1) What do you think I should do?

2) Tell me what I must do.

3) What could you do if you were me?

g) You are sitting on a bus and want the person in front of you to shut the window.

1) Could you shut the window, please?

2) May I shut the window, please?

3) Do you want to shut the window, please?

h) You want to know how to get to the station, and you ask a stranger.

1) Tell me, where is the station?

2) Do you mind telling me where the station is?

3) Could you tell me the way to the station, please?

Exercise 18. Correct these offers and requests, or put a \checkmark . offers requests

1 What will you have for the main course? 2 Where would you go for a meal? 3 When would you like me to collect you? 4 What will you like to do first? 5 What would you order? 6 I'd like a pizza and a lemonade, please. 7 I'll like a sandwich. 8 I'd like you to look at this essay for me. 9 I'll like more information, please. 10 She should like you to meet her from school.

Exercise 19. Fill in a modal or a synonymous expression and the appropriate form of the verb in brackets. 1. There's no reply when I ring him. He ...must have left...(leave) the office already. 2. Don't give up so easily. You(do) it if you tried a little harder. 3. That's no excuse! You know you(finish) this report by today. 4. He (mention) his plans on the phone last night but I really can't remember. 5. Since she crashed the car, she (walk) to work every day. 6. If you find something valuable, you (take) it to the nearest police station. 7. Passengers (not/walk) across the lines. They should use the footbridge. 8. You (know) better than to tell her all your secrets. 9. You (destroy) the letter as soon as you receive it. 10. You (enter) the building if you have a special pass. 11. Can you help me? I (find out) what time the London train arrives. 12. He looks very annoyed. He (wait) for ages. 13. I (take) the library books back yesterday but I forgot and now I'll have to pay a fine. 14. Increased sales mean that all employees (be given) an extra Christmas bonus. 15. (you/take) grandma to the cinema tonight as I have to go out? 16. When I was at school, we (not/wear) jewellery. 17. You (bring) the map with you so we wouldn't have to ask people the way. 18. These bags look heavy. (I/carry) some of them for you? 19. Don't pretend you don't know that you (have) a valid ticket on the bus. 20. You(ring) me to let me know you'd be late. I was worried.

Exercise 20. Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence. ·

Perhaps he is working now. He may be working now. ·

I'm sure he hasn't got the letter yet. He can't have got the letter yet. ·

I'm sure she understood. She must have understood. ·

Shall I help you do your homework? Would you like me to help you do your homework? ·

Was it necessary for you to help her? Did you need to help her? ·

It's forbidden to smoke in here. You mustn't smoke in here. You aren't allowed to smoke in here.

Would you mind if I used your pen? May/Might I use your pen?

He is likely to buy a sports car. It is likely that he will buy a sports car. He'll probably buy a sports car. ·

It isn't necessary for him to work today. He doesn't have to work today./He doesn't need to work today./He needn't work today. ·

It wasn't necessary for them to buy so much food. They needn't have bought so much food. ·

It would be a good idea to avoid eating sweets. You should avoid eating sweets. · Let's try doing this exercise. Shall we try doing this exercise?

Exercise 21. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

1. Perhaps the bridge collapsed because of the storm. have The bridgemay/might have collapsedbecause of the storm. 2. He'll probably come to the party. likely Hethe party. 3. You mustn't photograph any of the paintings. allowed Youany of the paintings. 4. It's forbidden to touch the statues in the museum. touch You n the museum. 5. I'm sure he didn't cheat in the exam. cheated Hein the exam. 6. Was it necessary for you to call a doctor? need Dida doctor? 7. Shall I carry your shopping for you? me Wouldyour shopping for you? 8. I'm sure Ann didn't do it on purpose. have Annon purpose. 9. Might I take some photos? if Wouldsome photos? 10. Let's go and see "The Blob" tonight. we Shall "The Blob" tonight? 11. It isn't necessary for you to do that exercise need Youthat exercise. 12. It would be a good idea to eat less high-cholesterol food. should Youhigh-cholesterol food. 13. It wasn't necessary for him to take a coat but he did. taken He coat. 14. I'm sure Ann spends all her money on clothes. spend Annon clothes. 15. Was it necessary for you to say that? have Didthat? 16. I'm sure he knew what he was doing. known Hehe was doing. 17. Perhaps she's busy at the moment. be Sheat the moment.

Exercise 22. Look carefully at each line. Some lines are correct, but some have a word which should not be there. Tick each correct line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word in the space. Putting up a friend

Dear Brenda, Thanks for replying so quickly to my last letter. ... ✓... You must to have been surprised when you received ... to.. a letter from me. I'm glad you will be able

1)... to have put me up when I come to London. 2)... Could you be possibly give me some directions 3)... for your flat? I'm bound to get lost. Do I 4)... have to

take a taxi from the station, or is it 5)... near enough to walk? Perhaps if I should buy 6).. a street map of Birmingham when I am arrive. And 7)... is it all right if I can bring my little brother, Tim? 8)... By the way, congratulations on your new job. 9).. You must not be very happy. Do you think that 10)... you made the right decision, though? I think 11)... you should or have gone to university like me. 12)... I'm sure that you would have been enjoyed it. I 13)... have done to study a lot, but with any luck I should 14)... get a good job when I finish. I'd be better post 15)... this letter now. Best Wishes, Sheila

Exercise 23. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs.

1. Ти мені нагадаєш купити хліба? 2. Ця клята машина ніяк не заводиться! Ти можеш її полагодити? 3. Коли б (whenever) у мене не було складнощів з домашнім завданням з математики, Сем мені допомагав. 4. Ти ще все життя будеш шкодувати про своє рішення! 5. Будь ласка, підійдіть хтось до телефону (to answer the phone). 6. Кавоварку вже, напевно, відремонтували. Піди та забери її. 7. Я тебе попереджала, що буде холодно, а ти відмовлявся одягати пальто. А тепер у тебе нежить. 8. Тату, ти не міг би мені дати (to lend) завтра на вечір машину? 9. Я йому вже показала фотографії, але він і зараз мені не хоче вірити. 10. Сер, будь ласка, ви не могли б заповнити цю анкету (to fill in a form)? 11. Ненсі буде базікати, поки не скажеш їй замовчати. 12. Я подзвоню до центрального офісу, щоб поскаржитись! 13. Вона хотіла дати мені в борг гроші (to lend sb money), але я їй не дозволяв. 14. Куди б її чоловік не їхав, вона усюди його супроводжувала. 15. Боюся, що Ральфа тут немає. Він має бути в офісі.

Exercise 24. Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the modal verbs and comment. 1. ... you (to give) me a call when you get to the hotel? 2. She ... (not to follow) my advice and wants to sell the car. 3. It's a relief that Annie's changed class. She ... (to argue) with everything I said. 4. ... you (to help) me? 5. ... you (to open) the window, please? 6. That ... (to be) Tim coming home now. 7. As you ... (to notice), there are some gaps in the data. 8. We ... (to go on strike) if we don't receive a pay increase. 9. The fire ... (not to light). Can you put another log on the fire? 10. I worry. She ... (to come) and (to spoil) everything, as usual. 11. The interviewer kept butting in (втручатися) and ... (not to let) me answer the question. 12. If you persist in listening to music at this late hour, I ... (to call) the police. 13. She tried to explain but he ... (not to listen). 14. Dad ... always (to help) us out financially when we were at university, however difficult it was for him. 15. 'Isabel, ... you just (to listen) when I'm talking to you?' 'Whatever.'

11. DARE

1. Dare means 'to have the courage or impertinence to do something (impertinence - наглість), to venture (наважитись)'. In the negative it denotes the lack of courage to do something. (dare) The verb dare as well as need has some peculiarities which make it different from other modal verbs. It is used both as:

a) a normal verb (taking the auxiliary do in the interrogative and negative forms, -s in the third person singular and the to-Infinitive) and as:

b) an anomalous verb (without any auxiliary in its interrogative and negative

forms, without -s in the third person singular and without the particle to before the infinitive which follows it).

o Dare has two forms - dare for the present and dared for the past.

o Both dare not and dared not can be used to refer to the past.

o Dare is mostly used in negative and interrogative sentences.

o Dare is used only with the Indefinite Infinitive.

How dare you say such a thing?

How dared you teach me?

How dare you go out by yourself after the orders I gave you?

I dare not protest. / I daren't protest.

Did he dare to strike me when I was down?

He did not dare to meet his uncle.

She dare not open/dared not open her mouth..

She dare not tell/dared not tell the truth.

I'd like to ask for the day off, but I daren't/don't dare to.

I wanted to ask for the day off, but I didn't dare to.

I hardly dare tell him what happened. (implied negative)

You dare address me in that tone! (dare can be used in the affirmative, but this is less common)

Do you dare to tell him? – I don't dare to tell him.

Dare you ask him? (Are you brave enough to ask him?) I daren't ask him.

Dare you tell him? – I daren't tell him.

o Sometimes dare takes the auxiliary but is followed by the bare infinitive. ·

I don't dare protest. Do you dare tell him? – I don't dare tell him.

2. Dare as a full transitive verb means 'to challenge', 'to defy'. It is used especially by children when challenging each other to do something dangerous. (dare = to challenge)

I dare you to jump the stream!

I dare you to jump off that wall!

He dared me to sue him.

I dare you to say this straight to her face. I didn't want to do it but he dared me (to).

3. However, we often come across I dare say/I daresay which has become a stock phrase (кліше) and acquired a new meaning = 'I suppose'; 'It is possible' (I dare say/I daresay - я вважаю.

I dare say you are right. I daresay he will come later. I daresay you'll phone me if you are going to be late tonight.

I daresay you have thought me very neglectful. This is supposed to be a cheap restaurant. It says so in this guidebook. – I daresay it does, but look at these prices!

Exercises 1. Explain the meaning of 'dare' in the following sentences and translate them into Ukrainian. 1. He felt he dare not reply. 2. Her face bore an expression of such ferocity (жорстокість) that no one dared come near to speak with her. 3. I dare say you're a little tired after your walk, dear. 4. He dared not look into her face. 5. I did not dare to ask him to call off his trip. 6. She was aware that they were too intent (зосередженість) upon their business to think that anyone

was watching them, but she dared not move. 7. Who dares to jump over the stream? 8. She did not dare to leave the house in case he telephoned. 9. He didn't dare lie to his mother. 10. Dare you ask for more money? 11. How dare he speak to you like that? (I wonder at such impudence-наглість)

Exercise 2. Rewrite these sentences using dare or dared. 1. I am not brave enough to speak to him about his daughter. 2. I challenge you to tell the teacher the truth. 3. The boys hadn't the courage to wake the father. 4. How can you be so impudent (нахальний) as to go out by yourself after the orders I gave you. 5. I challenge you to fight him. 6. I haven't the courage to reproach her for it. 7. How could he venture (наважитись) to strike me when I was down? 8. I wanted to ask for some time off but I hadn't the courage.

Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into English. 1. Гаррі зустрів вчора містера Гріна, але не посмів сказати йому, що ми розбили автомобіль, який взяли у нього на час. 2. Не скажете ви містеру Гріну, що ми розбили його автомобіль? У мене не вистачає сміливості сказати йому про це. 3. Як ви смієте так говорити зі мною? 4. Як він сміє говорити так грубо про мене? 5. Чи посміє він визнати це? 6. І вони сміють говорити, що ми вчинили нечесно? 7. Він підбурював мене перестрибнути через струмок. 8. Нехай хто завгодно спробує довести, що мої факти, неправильна (моє повідомлення неточне).

Exercise 4. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Тобі забракне сміливості вийти на вулицю в такому вбранні. 2. Як ти смієш так зі мною розмовляти! 3. А ти ж не зможеш сам вийти на вулицю так пізно. 4. Як ти смієш звинувачувати мене в брехні! 5. Як вона сміє натякати (to imply), що я брехав! 6. Я так розумію, що ви вже все знаєте. 7. Як ти смієш мене не слухати (to disobey)! 8. Не смій так зі мною розмовляти! 9. Так, стрибай! Чи тобі забракло сміливості? 10. Як ти смієш зі мною сперечатися! 11. «Я все їй розповім». «Не смій!» 12. Тобі забракне сміливості сказати батькові, що це ти подряпав його машину. 13. Як смієш мені таке пропонувати? 14. Ти не зможеш подивитися вниз (to look over the edge). 15. Він був, осмілюся сказати, якийсь трохи дивний. 16. Як вона сміє мене критикувати! 17. Не смійте битися! 18. Як ти смієш ставити під сумнів (to question) його рішення! 19. Думаю, що вони прийдуть до згоди. 20. Не смій підвищувати голос!

Reported Speech ■ Modals Study this chart: Modals change as follows in Reported Speech.

can → could (present reference)

can → would be able to (past reference)

may → might (possibility)

may → could (permission)

must → had to (obligation)

must → must (logical assumption)

needn't → didn't need to/didn't have to (present reference)

needn't → wouldn't have to (future reference)

mustn't → mustn't

should → should

o Study these examples:

• “I may go abroad this summer,” Julie said. Julie said that she might go abroad that summer.

• “May I see the manager, please?” Susan asked the shop assistant. Susan asked the shop assistant if she could see the manager.

• “I must pay my electricity bill,” he said. He said that he had to pay his electricity bill. · “She must be at least twenty-five,” he said to me. He told me that she must be at least twenty-five. · “You needn’t leave now,” she said to him. She told him that he didn’t need to leave/didn’t have to leave at that moment.

• “We needn’t wake up early tomorrow; it’s Sunday,” Greg said. Greg said that they wouldn’t have to wake up early the next day as it was Sunday.

• “M. Rollands can dance and sing very well,” the film director said. The film director said that M. Rollands could dance and sing very well.

• “I think we can visit Uncle Louis tomorrow,” Father said to us. Father told us that we would be able to visit Uncle Louis the next day. · “You mustn’t tell lies,” Mother said to us. Mother said that we mustn’t tell lies. · “All of you should be more careful!” the teacher said. The teacher said that we should all be more careful.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words. 1. “I must feed the cat before I leave.” Terry said. **to** Terry said that he the cat before he left. 2. “Nancy needn’t type any more letters today,” Bob said. **would** Bob said that Nancy any more letters that day. 3. “Jordan can tell us about the expedition,” Mary said. **said** Mary us about the expedition. 4. “You needn’t waste any more time on this matter,” John said to Helen. **have** John said that waste any more time on that matter. 5. “They may decide to have a party this month,” she said to me. **told** She decide to have a party that month. 6. “The children can go to the zoo this weekend,” Dad said. **able** Dad said that the children to the zoo that weekend. 7. “May I go out for a minute, sir?” Doug asked the teacher. **if** Doug asked the teacher for a minute. 8. “You needn’t prepare so much food for tomorrow,” Fiona said to me. **have** Fiona said that I so much food for the next day. 9. “She must be very efficient,” said the boss. **said** The boss very efficient. 10. “We can cancel tomorrow’s meeting if you have got something urgent to do,” Alice said to her boss. **be** Alice said that they the next day’s meeting if her boss had got something urgent to do.

Revision.

Exercise 1. Modal verbs. Ability (can/be able to). Mild and strong obligation (have to/should/must).

1. There was a woman with a big hat in front of me. I see anything.

A. couldn’t B. wasn’t able to C. can’t

2. Students attend gym classes if they don’t want to.

A. don’t have to B. mustn’t C. shouldn’t

3. I'm sorry, you're in my light, I see what I'm doing.
A. couldn't B. 'm not able to C. can't
4. He dial the number although he was going to faint.
A. could B. was able to C. couldn't
5. I think I visit you only next month.
A. have to B. 'm able to C. 'll be able to
6. The car has broken down so I'm afraid we walk.
A. must B. have to C. can
7. Put your hands up if you hear me.
A. can B. 'll be able to C. are able to
8. Iwalk until I was three years old.
A. wasn't able to B. couldn't C. could
9. They walk 10 miles although it rained hard.
A. were able to B. could C. weren't able to
10. My cough is terrible. I stop smoking.
A. must B. should C. have to
11. Don't you think you visit your grandmother in hospital?
A. have to B. should C. need to
12. According to our rules, you run around making so much noise.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. don't have to
13. That sign means you park here. Try the next street.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. don't have to
14. I wear glasses since my childhood.
A. have to B. have had to C. must
15. If you hadn't been so late, wehim.
A. could meet B. were able to meet C. could have met
16. I can sleep late tomorrow because I go to work.
A. don't have to B. mustn't C. shouldn't
17. She a famous dancer but she had broken her leg in childhood.
A. was able to become B. could become C. could have become
18. You water this plant every day or it will die.
A. mustn't B. don't have to C. shouldn't
19. What do to get a driving license?
A. do people have to B. must people C. have people
20. I'm not particularly busy. I type this text for you in an hour.
A. can B. am able to C. 'll have to

Exercise 2. Modal verbs: deduction ('must be/can't be'); obligation ('have to/must'); 'didn't need to' and 'needn't have done'.

1. The film starts at 10 o'clock and you. late, because you have our tickets.
A. can't be B. mustn't be C. don't need to be
2. I a meal last night because we went out and the food was uneaten.
A. needn't have cooked B. didn't have to cook C. mustn't cook
3. You baked a lot of cakes. I think you us.
A. must have been expecting B. have to be expecting C. must expect

4. Something to him. He promised to be here two hours ago.
A. must happen B. must have happened C. had to happen
5. They be hungry. They haven't eaten since morning.
A. must B. have to C. had to
6. I called you yesterday, but you didn't answer. You
A. had to sleep B. must be sleeping C. must have been sleeping
7. – Where is she now? – She her final exam.
A. has to take B. must be taking C. must have been taking
8. Don't panic! We miss our plane, we have plenty of time.
A. mustn't B. can't C. don't have to
9. I the washing because I knew they had already washed everything.
A. mustn't do B. didn't need to do C. needn't have done
10. Your handwriting clear otherwise it is not possible to read your papers.
A. must be B. can be C. must have been
11. The alarm clock went off and I
A. must get up B. must have got up C. had to get up
12. He thought he had lost the key and he kicked the door down. He it because the key was in his pocket.
A. mustn't do B. didn't need to do C. needn't have done
13. Someone is calling. It Ann, she's having a lecture now.
A. mustn't be B. can't be C. doesn't have to be
14. We had enough foreign currency left, so I any more.
A. mustn't buy B. didn't need to buy C. needn't have bought
15. We late for the train or we'll miss the meeting.
A. mustn't be B. can't be C. mustn't have been
16. I be very careful not to upset him.
A. can B. must C. need to
17. I enjoy parties unless I make speeches.
A. don't have B. should C. have to
18. Bill has just left the Army. He wear a uniform.
A. doesn't need to B. mustn't C. oughtn't to
19. The doctor says that I get out of bed.
A. mustn't B. don't have to C. need not to
20. There is nobody in. They shopping.
A. should have gone B. must have gone C. ought to have done

Exercise 3. Rewrite these suggestions to make them more direct.

(suggestion) 1. I always use a word processor. /You should ... always use a word processor. ... 2. Most people try to get there a bit earlier./ Couldn't you ... 3. My mother borrowed the money from the bank./Couldn't you ... 4. My father always gets the information from the local library./You could ... 5. A lot of people take a later train./Why not ...

Exercise 4. Rewrite these suggestions starting with the words given.

(suggestion) 1. Let's go to the theatre./How about ... going to the theatre? ... 2. We should get started as soon as possible. /It might be a good idea ... 3. You could

write and ask her yourself./You might like to ... 4. Why don't we take a winter holiday for a change?/What about ... 5. Couldn't you just pay at the end of the month?/You could ... 6. We could take a week off in July./Let's ... 7. You could ask Bill to help./What ... 8. Why don't you ring and tell them you're coming?/You ... 9. We could borrow the equipment from Peter./Couldn't ... 10. Why don't we keep quiet about that?/It might ...

Exercise 5. Find the word which should not be in the sentence. 1 You shouldn't to have told him that. ... to ... 2 Would you have mind helping me with this? 3 We were been able to book a hotel room through a travel agency. 4 Can you please to pass the salt? 5 He might have had left his wallet at home. 6 You are not allowed it to enter that part of the building. 7 Sonia should be know about his refusal to co-operate. 8 They needn't to have spent so much money redecorating their house. 9 He may be is waiting for the bus. 10 Mr. Beaumont is to will arrive at 9.00 a.m. tomorrow. 11 Ellen is likely that to return sooner than expected. 12 How about we calling him to find out if he has been invited too? 13 That can't to have been Richard Gere! 14 You should to go now. 15 Might does he still be waiting for us? 16 She will has to make an appointment to see the doctor. 17 He has had got to borrow money twice already this month. 18 You mustn't to let anyone know about our agreement. 19 She may have had given you the wrong address. 20 Would you mind if my asking you a personal question?

Exercise 6. Choose the most appropriate meaning for each sentence.

1. You mustn't lose heart.
a. Don't have an operation. b. Don't give up hope.
2. Where's my glass?
a. I need a drink. b. I can't see.
3. All goods must be paid for in advance.
a. Nothing enjoyable in life is free. b. You have to pay for these things first.
4. This hotel has class.
a. You can study hotel management here. b. It is a good quality hotel.
5. I don't have the means to help you.
a. I'm not able to help. b. I can't understand what help you need.
6. I'd like some china.
a. I want to go abroad. b. I need some cups and plates.

Exercise 7. Choose the sentence closest in meaning to the sentence given.

1. It's possible that we'll know the answers tomorrow.
a) We may know all the answers tomorrow. b) We should know all the answers tomorrow.
2. I don't think you should ring him now. It's rather late.
a) You might not ring him now. It's rather late. b) You'd better not ring him now. It's rather late.
3. You needn't come if you don't want to.
a) You won't come if you don't want to. b) You don't have to come if you don't want to.
4. I think it's wrong for you to work so hard.
a) You don't have to work so hard. b) You shouldn't work so hard.

5. Perhaps these are the keys.

a) These might be the keys. b) These must be the keys.

6. I know. Why don't we go out to eat instead.

a) I know. We must go out to eat instead. b) I know. We could go out to eat instead.

7. It would be quite wrong for us to lock the cat in the house for a week.

a) We'd better not lock the cat in the house for a week, b) We can't lock the cat in the house for a week.

8. It's possible that the decision will be announced next week.

a) The decision might be announced next week. b) The decision will be announced next week.

9. Although I try hard, I can never solve The Times crossword.

a) Try as I may, I can never solve The Times crossword. b) Try as I can, I may never solve The Times crossword.

Exercise 8. Choose the most suitable word or phrase underlined. a) We can't be lost. It isn't allowed/I don't believe it. b) Jane is bound to be late. She always is/She must be. c) Late-comers are to report to the main office. It's a good idea/It's the rule. d) You don't have to stay unless it's necessary/if you don't want to. e) Astronauts must feel afraid sometimes. They're supposed to/It's only natural. f) You can't come in here. It isn't allowed/I don't believe it. g) All motorcyclists have to wear crash helmets. It's a good idea/It's the rule. h) I ought not to tell Jack. It's not a good idea/It's the rule. i) We should be there soon. I expect so/It's absolutely certain. j) You'd better leave now. That's my advice/That's an order!

Exercise 9. Choose the most suitable words underlined. a) That can't have been/shouldn't have been Nick that you saw.... can't have been ... b) You had to give/might have given me a hand! c) I caught a later train because I had to see/must have seen a client. d) I suppose Bill should have lost/might have lost his way. e) I didn't refuse the cake, as it must have been/would have been rude. f) I don't know who rang, but it could have been/must have been Jim. g) It was odd that you should have bought/would have bought the same car. h) I asked them to leave but they couldn't go/wouldn't go. i) It's a pity you didn't ask because I could help/could have helped you. j) It's your own fault, you can't have gone/shouldn't have gone to bed so late.

Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences into English. (can, could, may, might, to be allowed to) 1. Можна піти пограти на вулиці? - Ні, не можна. 2. Невже ця робота була зроблена в такий короткий термін? 3. Можна мені скористатися твоїм велосипедом? - Так, ти можеш взяти мій велосипед. 4. Не може бути, щоб він пересунув це піаніно сам. 5. Можливо, в чайнику залишалося ще трохи чаю. 6. Не може бути, щоб вона виїхала звідси по суші. 7. Якби ми поїхали по іншій дорозі, ми, можливо, приїхали б раніше. 8. Ваш друг міг би ще прийти, але я не впевнений, що він прийде. 9. Ти б міг приділяти більше уваги своїм заняттям. 10. Ти міг би поїхати провідати свою сестру, коли у неї були неприємності. 11. Думаєш, літак прилетить вчасно? - Можливо, він затримається. 12. Квіти бувають дуже дорогими. 13. Цікаво, де ж Том. - Він може бути в бібліотеці. 14. Невже вони нас чекають? (Можуть

вони нас чекати?) 15. Коли ти можеш приїхати? 16. Можливо, цього не станеться. 17. Неможливо, щоб це відбулося. 18. До наступного понеділка я, можливо, закінчу цю роботу. 19. Можна зараз побачити шефа? - Так. - Він сказав, що я можу взяти його книгу. 20. Чому він засмучений? - Може, тому, що він втратив свою сумку. 21. Можливо, він чекає нас на станції. 22. Думаєш, Емі прийде вчасно? - Можливо, вона затримається. 23. Людям було дозволено займатися дрібним і середнім бізнесом. 24. Коли ти можеш приїхати? 25. Допомогти тобі з підготовкою їжі? 26. Ти можеш взяти цю книгу, якщо хочеш. 27. Чи можу я поговорити з Мері?

Exercise 11. Tick the correct sentence, as in the example.

1. a) You can't have called a taxi. I would have driven you to the station.
b) You needn't have called a taxi. I would have driven you to the station. ...✓
2. a) Robert can't be very talented. He plays the piano, the violin and the flute.
b) Robert must be very talented. He plays the piano, the violin and the flute.
3. a) If Jane sings well in the competition, she might win a prize.
b) If Jane sings well in the competition, she couldn't win a prize.
4. a) You must go to the bank. I can lend you some money.
b) You don't need to go to the bank. I can lend you some money.
5. a) Terry looks tired. He must have been studying all night
b) Terry looks tired. He mustn't have been studying all night
6. a) Sarah needn't be away on holiday. I saw her in the shop this morning
b) Sarah can't be away on holiday. I saw her in the shop this morning
7. a) We didn't need to catch the early train so we woke up late.
b) We needn't have caught the early train so we woke up late.
8. a) I would love to come with you, but I could finish my report
b) I would love to come with you, but I have to finish my report
9. a) You couldn't drive a car without a driving licence.
b) You mustn't drive a car without a driving licence.
10. a) You must be on the platform by 10 o'clock or the train will leave without you. b) You could be on the platform by 10 o'clock or the train will leave without you.

Exercise 12. Underline the correct item.

1. a. Mustn't/Must I eat all my broccoli?
b) Yes. It's very good for you.
2. a) Must/Could I do the washing-up now?
b) Yes, because I want to make a cake afterwards.
3. a) I saw a suspicious man in our street yesterday, but I didn't call the police.
b) You ought to/need have called them immediately.
4. a) The beach can/could get very crowded tomorrow as it's a holiday.
b) Shall we go somewhere else instead?
5. a) You mustn't/can wear high heels while you're on the boat.
b) Alright. I'll take them off.
6. a) Where's Bill?

- b) Well, it's half past six. He needn't/must be at home by now.
7. a) I've done all the ironing for you.
- b) You needn't have done/mustn't do that, but thanks anyway.
8. a) Oh dear. The car seat is wet.
- b) Well, you shouldn't have left/didn't need to leave the car window open.
9. a) Dad, can we go swimming?
- b) Not yet. You mustn't/needn't swim when you have just eaten.
- 10.a) I photocopied some recipes from my cook book for you.
- b) Oh, Carmen! You couldn't have/needn't have! I went out and bought the book this morning.
- 11.a) Liz crossed the road without looking.
- b) I know. She might/may have been hit by a car. She was lucky that she wasn't.
- 12.a) I'm so angry. I just got a speeding ticket.
- b) Didn't you know that you needn't/mustn't drive over 35mph through the city centre?

Exercise 13. There are nine more mistakes in this text connected with shall, shan't, will, won't, would, wouldn't. Underline the mistakes and correct them. 1 I'll never forget the day my life changed. It was a normal day - in those days I 2 shall do my homework after school so that I could go and listen to pop ...would... 3 music at Janice's after dinner. So I was sitting in front of the fire, trying to keep 4 warm. Mum was ironing. I looked at the clock. 5 'Dad's late,' I remarked to Mum. 6 'It's Thursday. He'd be visiting Granny.' 7 My grandmother lived in a cold, draughty cottage on the moors. Mum and 8 Dad wanted her to move in with us, but our house was very small, and she won't. ... 9 They knew that the cold winter months would have hastened her death - she 10 already suffered from chronic bronchitis - but she was a stubborn old woman 11 who will insist on her independence. 12 'Won't it be nice if we had some money? We could buy a big house and 13 Granny could have a flat of her own in it. I hate being poor.' 14 'Oh, pet, I shan't say we're poor. We're not as well off as some, but we've 15 got a roof over our heads and food in our bellies.' Mum would always see 16 the best in every situation. It really annoyed me! 'Will I make a nice cup of tea? 17 Your Dad would be frozen when he gets in. He'll want to save the bus fare so 18 I'm sure he's walked all the way from your grandmother's.' 19 At that moment, the door opened and Dad walked in, waving a slip of paper. 20 Forget the tea, Mary. We're going out tonight. First prize in the lottery. 21 We're rich!'

Exercise 14. Translate the following sentences from Ukrainian into English: (Modal Verbs). 1. Я ніколи не міг зрозуміти Пітера. 2. Ти не повинна включати телевізор, коли він зайнятий. 3. Подивися, на вулиці сиро. Напевно, цілу ніч ішов дощ. 4. Петров не прийшов на заняття сьогодні. Він, мабуть, захворів. 5. Вам доведеться погодитися зі мною. 6. Він сказав, що мені теж слід було прийняти участь в роботі клубу. 7. Вам не було необхідності їхати на вокзал, щоб купити квитки. Ви могли б замовити їх по телефону. 8. Ти міг би сказати мені про це раніше. Якби я знав, що він не хоче мене бачити, я б

йому не дзвонив. 9. Він повинен був прочитати цю книгу, щоб бути готовим відповідати на питання. Його відповіді були прекрасні. 10. Ручка ніяк не пише. 11. Ключ ніяк не повертається. 12. Ви повинні були попередити його, і він не потрапив би в біду. 13. Він повинен був приїхати минулого тижня, але не зміг. 14. Він повинен був написати цю розповідь через гроші. Він був зайнятий цілий тиждень і впорався з роботою. Якби у нього тоді були гроші, йому не довелося б так багато працювати.

Exercise 15. Supply the necessary modal verbs for the following sentences, noticing carefully the Ukrainian equivalents given in brackets. 1. He ... not and ... not believe her. (не міг, не хотів) 2. He sat, thinking unhappily of his talk with Jimmy. He wondered if he ... have stayed with him. He felt he ... have said something at least, to warn Jimmy against Smith. But what ... he have said? And Jimmy ... not have listened. (потрібно б було; міг би; не став би) 3. “By the way,” I asked, “what’s Bill doing now?” “How in the world ... I know?” Arthur looked tired. “I thought he ... have been bothering you for money.” (звідки мені знати, можливо) 4. He came out of the water, smiling. “You ... have come earlier,” he said. “We ... have swum together. The water is great.” (дарма не прийшов, могли б) 5. “Last night, you know, Hugh suddenly began to speak to me about what my future was going to be like.” “What ... it have meant?” “How ... I know?” (і що це могло означати, звідки мені знати) 6. There was an old apple tree beside the path. I said, “I bet I ... climb that.” “No, you ... not,” said Jack. (можу, не потрібно) 7. “Well, then, ... you hold the line while I find the letter?” “I ... not, I’m in a telephone box.” “Then ...I ring you back?” “I’m not on the telephone.” “Then I think perhaps you ... ring me back in half an hour. By then I ... have some idea what this is all about.” (чи можеш, не можу; можна мені; тебе краще; може бути) 8. He knows he ... read classics. He ... change to something else. (немає потреби, міг би) 9. “Monday will be my last day in London,” Hudson said. “I ... stay down here fairly late.” (можливо, прийдеться) 10. In any case, I ... not hang about outside indefinitely while the sisters finished their quarrel. They ... continue for hours. (не міг же, може бути) 11. It’s too bad she ... not have a drink with us. We ... have learned a great deal about the theatre tonight. (не могла; могли б) 12. If you help me now, I ... help you later. (можливо, зможу) 13. “I shall wait to hear what Lily has to say about it.” “You ...wait a long time.” (можливо, прийдеться) 14. I think you ... certainly have told us the truth, and we ... have decided what was the best thing to do. (слід би, могли б) 15. If your mother calls, tell her I ... be a little late. (можливо, прийдеться) 16. On Saturday Charles broke the news to his father. Mr. March began to grumble: “You ... have chosen a more suitable time to tell me. You ... have known that hearing this would put me out of step for the day.” (слід би, міг би)

Exercise 16. Translate into English. (must; to have to; to be to) 1. Вистава мала початися о шостій годині, але її довелося відкласти, тому що один актор захворів. 2. Мені треба було (довелося) залишитися вдома вчора, оскільки у мене було дуже багато роботи. 3. Ви повинні вставати рано щодня? 4. Ми домовилися зустрітися в театрі. Він повинен був приїхати до пів на восьму і чекати мене у входа. 5. Він вчора був удома, так як йому не потрібно було

йти в інститут. 6. Я повернувся додому раніше, ніж звичайно, тому що мої друзі повинні були зайти до мене о сьомій годині. 7. Я повинен був закінчити цю роботу вчора, але не зміг цього зробити. Мені доведеться закінчити сьогодні. 8. О котрій годині ви повинні бути в інституті завтра? 9. Вам довго довелося чекати його? - Мені довелося чекати його недовго. 10. Директор ще не прийшов. Він повинен бути тут о 11 годині. Вам доведеться почекати трохи. 10. Їй довелося передруковувати лист кілька разів. Вона, мабуть, втомилася і зробила багато помилок. 11. Ви бліді, ви, ймовірно, втомилися. 12. Виходу не було, і йому довелося заплатити штраф.

Exercise 17. Translate the following sentences into English using 'can', 'may', 'must', 'have to', 'be to', 'ought to' or 'should'. 1. Тобі треба було б ще раз прочитати свій твір. Там, мабуть, є помилки. 2. Невже зараз лише шість годин? 3. Даремно ти так розмовляв з ним. Він міг образитися. 4. Він, мовляв, повинен це знати. 5. Він, мабуть, не сказав їм нічого, і вони, можливо, укладають речі. 6. У нього, мабуть, є почуття гумору. Інакше він не міг би так сказати. 7. Завтра день народження твоєї сестри. Я думаю, що ти повинен подарувати їй що-небудь. 8. Напевно, йде сильний дощ. На вулиці нікого немає. 9. Не може бути, щоб він забув про свою обіцянку. 10. Даремно ти не послав їм телеграму. Тепер вони могли б уже приїхати. 11. Вибачте, що я запізнився. Вам довго довелося чекати мене? 12. Я нікуди не виходив в той вечір, так як після роботи до мене повинен був зайти Джордж. 13. Він повинен був повернутися в готель, так як виліт його літака затримувався. 14. Він знав, що він мав бути на двох нарадах наступного тижня. 15. Вона нічого не повинна знати про твої справи. 16. Вона, мабуть, нічого не знає про його справах. 17. Цей іспит я повинен буду здавати через тиждень. 18. Тобі треба буде ще раз зателефонувати їм? 19. Тобі не треба йти сьогодні в магазин, так як ми обідаємо в гостях. 20. Про що вони розмовляють? - Вони, напевно, сперечаються про сценарії. 21. Новина може налякати її. 22. Вона знала, що повинна все пояснити їм. 23. Тобі треба самому заробляти на життя. 24. Їх будинок мали знести, і йому довелося переїхати в новий житловий район. 25. Я сподіваюся, твоїй дружині не доводиться прибирати цей величезний будинок. 26. Погода хороша, і ми могли б проїхатися за місто. 27. Мені дуже шкода, але я повинен йти. Я повинен зустріти Бетті у кіно. Вже за чверть сім! Вона, мабуть, вже чекає на мене. Мені доведеться сісти на автобус. 28. Чи не міг би ти зробити це сьогодні? 29. Мені можна йти? 30. Навіщо мені йти туди пішки? 31. Уже пізно. Де ж може бути Дік? - Мені абсолютно байдуже. 32. Тобі треба відвідати брата в лікарні. 33. Його можна було б сприйняти як стару людину. 34. Тобі не слід звинувачувати його за це. Це частково також і твоя вина. 35. Ти міг би сказати нам, що відбувається. 36. Вони вже, можливо, зробили свій вибір. 37. Я не знаю, чому це вона не хоче поговорити з ними сама. 38. Дивно, що вони включили його в команду. 39. Вам слід було б знайти фахівця, який би впорався з цим завданням. 40. Батько каже, що я повинен залишитися з ним ще трохи.

Exercise 18. Read this article from a popular psychology magazine. Discuss it. (Obligation and desirability in the Past: should have, ought to have, could have, might have)

For all sad words of tongue and pen

The saddest are these: "It might have been." John Greenleaf Whittier Not only the saddest, but perhaps the most destructive. According to recent ideas in psychology, our feelings are mainly the result of the way we think about reality, not reality itself. Take Paul, for example. Talented in school, he decided not to go on to college. Here's what Paul thinks about this decision now: I ought to have applied to college. I could have become a doctor. My parents might have encouraged me more. I shouldn't have missed that opportunity. I could have been rich and famous by now. According to Nathan S. Kline, M.D., it's not unusual to feel deep regret about things in the past that you think you should have done and did not do – or the opposite, about things you did do and feel you should not have done. In fact, we learn by thinking about past errors. However, dwelling too much on past mistakes and missed opportunities can create such bad feelings that people become paralyzed and can't move on with their lives. Arthur Freeman, Ph.D. and Rose DeWolf have labelled this process "woulda/coulda/shoulda thinking," and they have written an entire book about this type of disorder. In *Woulda/Coulda/Shoulda: Overcoming Regrets, Mistakes, and Missed Opportunities* (New York: William Morrow, 1989), Freeman and DeWolf suggest challenging regrets with specifics. "Instead of saying, 'I should have done better,'" they suggest, "write down an example of a way in which you might have done better. Exactly what should you have done to produce the desired result? Did you have the skills, money, experience, etc., at the time?" When people examine their feelings of regret about the past, they often find that many of them are simply not based in fact. A mother regrets missing a football game in which her son's leg was injured. She blames herself and the officials. "I should have gone," she laments. "I could have prevented the injury. They might at least have telephoned me as soon as it happened." Did she really have the power to prevent her son's injury? Should the officials have called her before they had looked at the injury? Probably not. Once people realise how unrealistic their feelings of regret are, they are more ready to let go of them. Cognitive psychologist David Burns, M.D., suggests specific strategies for dealing with useless feelings of regret and getting on with the present. One amusing technique is to spend ten minutes a day writing down all the things you regret. Then say them all aloud (better yet, record them), and listen to yourself. Here's a typical session: I shouldn't have told that joke in the office. My career is ruined. I ought to have cleaned the house instead of going out this weekend. My mother's right. I'm just lazy. My boyfriend could have told me he was going out of town this weekend. He's an inconsiderate jerk. I should never have started going out with him. Once you listen to your own "woulda/coulda/shoulda" thoughts, it's easier to see their illogic. For example, it's unlikely that your entire career is in ruins because of one joke. You're an adult and you can choose to go out instead of cleaning house. That doesn't make you a lazy person. Nor is your boyfriend a jerk for making a single mistake. After you recognize how foolish most feelings of

regret sound, the next step is to let go of them and to start dealing with life in the present. For some, this might be harder than sighing over past errors. An Italian proverb notes, "When the ship has sunk, everyone knows how she could have been saved." The message from cognitive psychology is similar. It's easy to speculate about the past; the real challenge is to solve the problems you face right now.

Exercise 19. Translate the following sentences into English using suitable modal verbs. 1. Мені піти і дізнатися, чи зробив він роботу? Він повинен був закінчити її вчора. 2. Тобі довго довелося чекати його? 3. Даремно ти прийшов. Збори скасовано. 4. Він повинен був все закінчити вчора, але його несподівано викликали в Лондон. 5. Ти мав би сказати нам про це, а то тепер ми не знаємо, що нам робити. 6. Всі владналося. Тепер мені не треба їхати в Лондон. 7. Він, мабуть, не зміг передати їм нашу записку, і вони, можливо, чекають нас. 8. Невже він забув замовити нам номери в готелі? - Він, напевно, замовив їх на ваше ім'я. 9. Не може бути, щоб вона зробила таку дурість. 10. Мені можна йти? 11. Ви могли б зробити це для мене? 12. Він повинен був приїхати п'ятигодинним поїздом. Невже він запізнився на нього? - Звідки мені знати? 13. Він, напевно, не сказав їм про це, і вони, можливо, не прийдуть. 14. Ти повинен був нам сказати, що не зможеш виступити за команду сьогодні. 15. Навіщо тобі відкладати на завтра те, що ти можеш (міг би) зробити сьогодні? 16. Я повинна з ним побачитися у вівторок ввечері. 17. Він міг би хоч що-небудь сказати в мою користь. 18. Вона ніяк не хотіла пояснити, в чому справа. 19. На жаль, мені не довелося поговорити з батьком. Я не застав його вдома. Мені слід було б приїхати рано вранці. 20. Ти міг би мені сказати, що запізнився. 21. Вона, мабуть, не зрозуміла, якою дорогою вона прийшла, то і, можливо, вона заблукала. 22. Тобі довелося залишитися там до кінця, так? 23. Ти вся промокла. Даремно ти не попросила когось підвезти тебе. 24. Мені, можливо, доведеться поїхати туди на таксі. Так, напевно, буде швидше. 25. Я всюди шукав його вчора. Я хотів, щоб він теж виступив на зборах. - Ти даремно турбувався. Він міг би все зіпсувати. 26. Вчора мені не довелося перевірити зошити своїх студентів, так як мені довелося замінювати іншого викладача. 27. Мені нема чого говорити вам, чому це треба зробити, не привертаючи нічийої уваги. 28. Ти марно ходив за ключем. Двері були відчинені. 29. Вчора ввечері я бачив його дружину. Її можна було б сприйняти як французенку. 30. Як ти думаєш, чому це він так зникнув? 31. Тобі слід захопити плащ. Може піти дощ. 32. Земля сира. Тут, мабуть, тільки що йшов дощ. 33. Вам нема чого було приходити. Ми могли б закінчити це без вас. 34. Увечері вона повинна була піти на вечірку. Тому після сніданку їй довелося вимити голову. 35. Дивно, що він пішов, не сказавши нам, куди він пішов. 36. Я не бачу, чому б вам не бути друзями. 37. Обережно. Ви мало не впали. 38. Тобі не треба було дзвонити їй так пізно. 39. Це - несуттєвий пункт. Його можна було і не включати до звіту. 40. Він сказав, що повинен поспішати, і пішов, не дочекавшись, щоб вона щось відповіла. 41. Вам не потрібно приходити завтра. Я буду зайнятий.

Exercise 20. Modals. Choose the correct item.

1. You mad if you think I'm going to lend you any more money.

- A. should be B. are supposed to be C. must be D. ought to be
2. I happy to see him, but I didn't have time.
A. will have been B. would be C. will be D. would have been
3. We Switzerland four times during the 1970s.
A. used to visit B. would visit C. visited D. will visit
4. 'Why isn't Tim here yet?' 'It ... be because his mother is ill again.'
A. may B. can C. might D. could
5. If I hadn't come along at that moment, Jim the one arrested instead of the real thief.
A. might have been B. may have been C. can have been D. could have been
6. Jenny leave the hospital only six hours after the baby was born.
A. was able to B. could C. can D. is able to
7. The car broke down and we a taxi.
A. must have got B. had got to get C. had to get D. must get
8. You whisper. Nobody can hear us.
A. needn't B. don't have to C. mustn't D. need to
9. Although he didn't have a ticket, Ken come in.
A. could B. can C. might D. was allowed to

Exercise 21. Which one of the verbs given can complete all three sentences in each set?

1 used to/ will/ would a. Most days my father get up first and make breakfast. b. When I was training for the marathon, Irun over 100 kilometres a week. c. We went back to Dublin to see the house where welive in the 1960s.

2 should/ ought to/ must a. Students be encouraged to type their assignments. b. 'Whose car is that outside Bill's house?' 'It belong to Bill's sister. I heard that she's staying with him this weekend.' c. You have some of this cake. It's brilliant!

3 needn 't/mustn 't/ don't have to a. I'll be quite late getting to London, but you change your plans for me. b. I'm afraid I owe quite a lot of money to the bank - but you worry about it. c. Next time, read the small print in the document before you sign it. You make the same mistake again.

4 must / need to / have to a. People with fair skins be particularly careful when they go out in the sun. b. The Browns have won the lottery – they've bought another new car! c. We give at least six months' notice if we want to leave the house.

5 may / could/ might a. Ray told me that someone had bought the old house next door he be right about that, I wondered. b. The major changes to the timetable cause delay and confusion. c. I asked in the bookshop about Will Dutton/s latest book, but all they tell.....me was that it would be published before the end of the year.

6 can/ could/ is (or was) able to a. Val had always wanted to go scuba diving and do so last summer. b. I hope Jim help you tomorrow. c. She played the piano quite well even before she read music.

Exercise 22. Study these examples:

1. It would be a good idea to quit smoking. → You should quit smoking.
2. Shall I help you with the washing-up? → Would you like me to help you with the washing-up?
3. It's forbidden to feed the animals in the zoo. → You mustn't feed the animals in the zoo. You aren't allowed to feed the animals in the zoo.
4. May/Might I borrow your dictionary? → Would you mind if I borrowed your dictionary?
5. Let's go to the beach. → Shall we go to the beach?
6. Perhaps she has got lost. → She may have got lost.
7. They are likely to buy a new house. → It's likely that they will buy a new house. They'll probably buy a new house.
8. I'm sure she didn't go to the party. → She can't have gone to the party.
9. I'm sure he has got our message. → He must have got your message.
10. It's not necessary to water the plants again. → You don't have to water the plants again/You don't need to water the plants again/You needn't water the plants again.
11. Was it necessary for you to get up so early? → Did you need to get up so early?/Did you have to get up so early?
12. It wasn't necessary for him to buy so many flowers. → He needn't have bought so many flowers.

Exercise 23. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words. 1. Perhaps he didn't steal the money. **may** He the money. 2. Shall I help you carry your luggage? **me** Would you carry your luggage? 3. May I use your pencil sharpener? **if** Would you your pencil sharpener? 4. It wasn't necessary for you to give me so much money. **have** You so much money. 5. I'm sure Jenny has prepared enough food. **have** Jenny enough food. 6. Was it necessary for Tim to spend all that money? **need** Did Tim all that money? 7. Perhaps he's going away next month. **be** He away next month. 8. She will probably accept our offer. **likely** She our offer. 9. I'm sure he didn't attend the meeting. **have** He the meeting. 10. Let's meet outside the Opera. **we** Shall the Opera? 11. It's not necessary to wear such a heavy pullover. **need** You such a heavy pullover. 12. You aren't allowed to walk on the grass. **not** You on the grass. 13. Perhaps he's asleep at the moment. **be** He at the moment. 14. Was it necessary for Julie to leave so early? **have** Did so early? 15. It's likely that she will move house. **probably** She will house.

Exercise 24. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use between two and five words.

Example: The teacher gave me permission to leave the room. **could** The teacher said that I could leave the room.

1. In the end, I couldn't make it to the party because I had too much work to do. **able** In the end, I come to the party because I had too much work to do.
2. At school, she was the fastest runner in her class. **could** At school, she than anyone else in her class.
3. Although I'm good at physics, I don't think I'll manage to pass the exam. **able** In spite of being good at physics I don't think

..... pass the exam. 4. We weren't obliged to attend all the classes because some of them were optional. have We to all the classes because some of them were optional. 5. If I don't find a job soon, I won't be able to pay the bills. have I need to pay the bills so find a job soon. 6. 'All telephone calls made from the office must be paid for,' said the manager. had The manager told for all telephone calls made from the office. 7. I took a lot of suntan lotion with me but I didn't need it. taken I so much suntan lotion with me. 8. The traffic warden said we weren't allowed to park the car outside the bank. could The traffic warden told park the car outside the bank. 9. I think you can manage without a pullover in this weather. need You wear a pullover in this weather. 10. Oxygen masks were essential when they got to the top of the mountain. had They.....oxygen masks when they reached the top of the mountain. 11. I think you should give up smoking immediately. had I think you smoking immediately. 12. I expect we will get there by 5.00, if there isn't too much traffic. should We 5.00, if there isn't too much traffic. 13. Is it necessary for me to bring my passport? have Do my passport? 14. I am sure that the cat is in the house somewhere. be The cat in the house somewhere. 15. An aerial is not required with this radio. have You don't an aerial with this radio. 16. It is very inconvenient if you can't drive. to It's very inconvenient if drive. 17. I am sure that John is not the thief. be John the thief. 18. I am certain that Norman will be late. bound Norman late. 19. All students should report to the main hall at 9.00. are All students to the main hall at 9.00. 20. I thought that you would know better! ought You better! 21. It wasn't necessary for me to go out after all. have I after all. 22. There was a plan for Jack to become manager, but he left. was Jack manager, but he left. 23. It was a mistake for you to buy that car. bought You that car. 24. I don't think that Sally enjoyed her holiday. have Sally enjoyed her holiday. 25. It's possible that Bill saw me. may Bill me. 26. I'm sure that Karen was a beautiful baby. been Karen a beautiful baby. 27. Perhaps Alan didn't mean what he said. meant Alan what he said. 28. It's possible that I left my wallet at home. could I my wallet at home. 29. I think you were wrong to sell your bike. shouldn't You bike. 30. The only thing I could do was run away! had I run away!

Exercise 25. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words. 1. I'm sure she lost the race. have She ... must have lost ... the race. 2. Perhaps she will phone us sometime today. may She sometime today. 3. I don't think the Rogers have been living here long. been The Rogers here long. 4. I'm sure he has spent all his money. have He all his money. 5. I'm sure James won't be seeing the boss tomorrow. be James the boss tomorrow. 6. Perhaps he is feeling ill. be He ill. 7. I'm sure Alan wasn't driving carelessly. been Alan carelessly. 8. Perhaps he had left before you called. have He before you called. 9. I'm sure she is considering your offer. be She your offer. 10.

Perhaps they rented the flat may They the flat. 11. It's forbidden to feed the animals. not You the animals. 12. It isn't necessary to cut the grass; it's still quite short. have You the grass; it's still quite short. 13. It's prohibited to take dogs into the restaurant. not You into the restaurant. 14. It isn't necessary to dust the furniture; I'll do it later. need You the furniture; I'll do it later. 15. Children aren't allowed to run in the corridor. not Children in the corridor. 16. Sixth formers needn't wear school uniforms. have Sixth formers school uniforms. 17. Tim went on a two-day trip. He took more clothes than necessary. have Tim so many clothes on a two-day trip. 18. He decided not to take his passport because it wasn't necessary. need He his passport. 19. We bought more food than was necessary for the party. have We so much food for the party. 20. It wasn't necessary for Gloria to iron the clothes because Sue had already done it. have Gloria the clothes because Sue had already done it. 21. It isn't necessary to have a visa to visit Australia. need You a visa to visit Australia. 22. It wasn't necessary for Jim to accept the offer. have Jim the offer. 23. Perhaps the car needs a new engine. need The carmay/might need..... a new engine. 24. Why don't you go to Canada for a holiday? could You for a holiday. 25. Shall I get you a cup of tea? me Would you a cup of tea? 26. Sue will probably go to see her aunt. is Sue to see her aunt. 27. It wasn't necessary for them to buy such a big car as they did.have They such a big car. 28. It's forbidden to smoke in this building. not You in this building. 29. It would be a good idea to change your hairstyle. better You your hairstyle. 30. Why didn't anybody warn me about the bus strike? have You about the bus strike. 31. It isn't necessary for you to attend the meeting. need Youthe meeting. 32. Let's go to the cinema. going What the cinema? 33. I'm sure he is seeing Ruth. be He Ruth. 34. It isn't necessary for you to come early tonight. have You early tonight. 35. I'm sure he didn't send you this letter. sent Hethis letter. 36. May I read your newspaper? mind Would your newspaper? 37. I'm sure she wasn't lying to you. been She to you. 38. She is likely to fail her exams. that It is her exams. 39. It's forbidden to talk to the driver while he is driving. must You the driver while he is driving. 40. It wasn't necessary for him to give me the money back so soon. given He the money back so soon. 41 Perhaps she went to her uncle's. have She to her uncle's. 42. Shall I help you lengthen your dress? me Would you lengthen your dress? 43. Perhaps he got caught in the traffic. have He in the traffic. 44. You should continue practising daily. keep You should daily. 45. It wasn't necessary for Julie to buy him a present but she did. bought Julie him a present. 46. Is there any chance of his coming to the party? likely Is he to the party? 47. It was wrong of him not to tell us as soon as he found out. should He as soon as he found out. 48. Anna didn't go to hospital; it was only a minor injury. have Anna to hospital; it was only a minor injury. 49. It isn't necessary to make an appointment -

come in any time tomorrow morning. need You an appointment - come in any time tomorrow morning. 50. Patients must be accompanied by a nurse when they leave the ward. allowed Patients the ward unless accompanied by a nurse.

Exercise 26. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. «Як мені їхати до Ліверпуля?» «Ти міг би дістатися літаком або на машині». 2. За кілька років ніхто не здатен викоринити (to weed) корупцію, яка формувалася поколіннями. 3. Можна мені рахунок, будь ласка? 4. Вже два дні йде дощ. Мені не треба було йти у цей похід. 5. Живіть разом довго та щасливо! 6. З минулим директором працівники могли здійснювати приватні телефонні дзвінки тільки у надзвичайних випадках (in an emergency). 7. Замок, напевно, зламався. Двері не відчиняються. 8. Ви повинні були носити форму у старших класах школи? 9. День був такий спекотний, що я ледь міг працювати. 10. Наступного тижня український прем'єрміністр відвідає Індонезію для того, щоб обговорити майбутнє інвестування в країну. 11. Знаєш, тобі не треба було мити увесь той посуд. Я би сам все помив коли прийшов додому. 12. Джанет (Janet) зайнята двадцять сьомого вересня. Ми будемо змушені знайти іншу дату для зібрання. 13. Не смій розповідати про це батькам! 14. «Можна я піду купатися?» «Так, але я повинна тебе бачити (ти повинен бути у полі мого зору) (not to leave one's sight)». 15. Мені взяти решту валіз? 16. Ерік (Eric) зазвичай проводив зиму та літо в Іспанії. 17. Я вважаю, що статтю можна було б написати краще. 18. У Пола статура (physique) грака в регбі. Його зріст, напевно, близько двох метрів! 19. Вистава була така нудна, що я не втрималась і заснула. 20. Як ви вже, напевно, помітили, у нього нова машина. 21. «Я шукала свою сумку, але ще не змогла її знайти». «Ти можеш б7 взяти мою». 22. Кожного ранку я маю прокидатися о сьомій. 23. Якщо людина погано бачить в темряві (to have poor night vision), це може бути нестача вітаміну А. 24. До усіх треба ставитися рівно, незалежно від кольору шкіри. 25. Цього року я не можу собі дозволити витратити багато на різдвяні подарунки. 26. Памятай, що жовтень та листопад можуть бути дощовими місяцями у Центральній Америці. 27. Лист так і не прийшов. Напевно, він загубився (to get lost) на пошті. 28. Лін (Lyn) останнім часом схудла. Напевно, вона на дієті. 29. Судячи по (judging by) його сильному акценту, напевно, він британець. 30. Ти можеш безкоштовно їсти у моєму ресторані коли завгодно.

Exercise 27. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Інфекції вуха можуть спричинити порушення слуху (to result in impaired hearing). 2. «Ви не могли б мені позичити фунт?» «Боюся, що ні». 3. Не треба одягати піджак. На вулиці достатньо тепло. 4. Він ненавидить жорстоке поводження з тваринами. 5. Я мушу йти. Вже стає пізно. 6. Ми не можемо собі дозволити так ризикувати. 7. Хоча він має проблеми з правою рукою (to have limited use of smth), він здатен вести повноцінний спосіб життя. 8. Я почувався збудженим, оскільки скоро мав їхати на навчання до США. 9. Нехай буде з вами сила! 10. Тобі не треба було турбуватися через вечерю. Вона була дуже смачна. 11. Що ще вона від нас може приховувати? 12.

Прийми ці ліки. Вони мають полегшити (to ease) біль. 13. Я розумію, що пліткувати неправильно, але нічого не можу з собою вдіяти. 14. М'ясо жорстке (tough). Напевно, воно недосмажене (to be underdone). 15. З новим обладнанням ми зможемо виконувати завдання, які до цього вважались неможливими (to accomplish hitherto impossible tasks). 16. Раніше ми часто гуляли в парку. 17. Діти можуть піти, якщо пообіцяють добре поводитись. 18. Вони були дуже зацікавлені, коли почули цю історію. 19. Я думаю, що могла потягнути (to pull) м'яз. 20. Нам не треба було ходити до школи по суботах. 21. Тебе буде за це буде покарано. 22. Не могли б ви хвилинку зачекати? 23. Мені нічого не залишається, як стати на їх умови. 24. Багато людей вважає, що бокс слід заборонити (to ban). 25. «До кого мені звернутися по допомогу?» «Ти можеш звернутися до поліції або до свого двоюрідного брата». 26. Кожного разу урок математики 68 починається однаково. Вчитель робить перекличку та перевіряє домашнє завдання. 27. Якщо ти знову так вчиниш, то пожалкуєш! 28. Батьки його балують (to spoil). Йому завжди дозволялось робити все, що він хоче. 29. Тест почнеться о пів на одинадцять. Вам не треба приходити до десятої п'ятнадцять, але, якщо хочете, ви можете прийти раніше. 30. «Що сталося?» «Вона втратила свідомість (to faint). Це, напевно, спека».

Exercise 28. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. «Давай відправимось на пікнік». «Ну, я вважаю, ми могли б поїхати на рибалку замість цього». 2. Моєму чоловікові не вдалося знати роботу на повний день (a full time job), хоча він вже три роки її шукає. 3. Мені не треба було купувати молоко. У нас його було багато в холодильнику. 4. Тобі не треба хвилюватися. Я про це нікому не збираюсь розповідати. 5. Після весілля наречений та наречена мали їхати прямо до аеропорта на рейс до Фіджи, але рейс було скасовано. 6. Якщо бажаєте, ви можете йти. 7. Вхід до музею був безкоштовний. Нам не треба було платити гроші, щоб увійти. 8. Ти обов'язково маєш сказати мені, що вона відповіла. Мені не терпиться дізнатися (to die to know). 9. Не можна палити на території університету (on the university campus). 10. Працівники лабораторії мають носити захисний одяг (protective clothing). 11. З кухні доноситься смачних запах. Напевно, суп вже готовий. 12. Я була дуже засмучена, коли це почула. 13. Ці раптові зміни, що впровадив уряд, можливо, викличуть проблеми на ринку нерухомості (housing market). 14. Тобі не треба було йому допомагати. Він міг би це зробити сам! 15. Якщо він буде продовжувати шуміти, його буде покарано. 16. Паління в громадських місцях слід заборонити. 17. Йому платять багато, але вважаю (осмілюся сказати), що він це заслуговує. 18. Сьогодні вранці машина не заводилась. 19. Я не хочу цілий день сидіти вдома. Погода сонячна, ми могли б прогулятися. 20. «Я чула, що він пішов у відставку». «Його батьки могли вплинути на рішення піти у відставку». 21. Останнім часом я не можу грати у гольф. Я почуваюся погано. 22. В аеропорту багаж не можна залишати без нагляду. 23. «Не міг би я вас попросити про щось?» «Звичайно, можете!» 24. Він завжди махав рукою, коли зустрічав мене на вулиці. 25. Він слухав, як по радіо передавали про торнадо і 69 міг бачити

його вдалині. 26. «Звідкіля може доноситись цей неприємний запах?» «Це може бути тільки моя індичка. Напевно, вона згоріла». 27. Твій постійний песимізм може бути ознакою депресії. 28. Стає пізно. Нам слід вирушати. 29. Ти можеш пограти у футбол, якщо спочатку виконаєш домашнє завдання. 30. Клер (Claire) могла померти від раку грудей, якби його не виявили (to detect) у 47 років.

Exercise 29. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. «Який щасливий збіг зустріти тебе в аеропорту саме тоді, коли я хотіла тебе побачити». «Звичайно, це не може бути співпадінням». 2. Перед використанням, батарейка має бути заряджена (to be charged). 3. «Я зустрічаюся (to go out) з Деном». «Що? Ти точно жартуєш». 4. Ти маєш не спускатися вниз, доки не прибереш у кімнаті. 5. Не треба на мене чекати – йди додому без мене. 6. Ти бачиш гвинтокрил над палацем? 7. «Мені не подобається моя стара машина». «Ну, ти можеш поміняти її на якусь іншу». 8. Тобі не слід так легко здаватися. 9. «Я змерзла». «Мені зачинити вікно?» 10. Зважте мені, будь ласка, той шматок сиру. 11. Можна вас сфотографувати? 12. Коли я була дитиною, нам не можна було вставати з-за столу доти, доки ми не доїмо. 13. Не викидай ті банки – можливо, вони знадобляться. 14. Дітям слід виявляти повагу до людей похилого віку. 15. «Ти принесла звіт?» «Ні, я не змогла дістати диск з комп'ютера». 16. У парку Горького не можна вигулювати тварин. 17. Судячи з віку її сина, я зробив висновок, що її чоловікові має бути щонайменше шістдесят років. 18. Тобі не слід їсти так багато солодощів – це шкідливо для зубів. 19. Професор Блекмен завжди починав лекцію з жарту. 20. Ваше висипання має скоро пройти, якщо ви регулярно будете користуватися цією маззю. 21. Голова собаки застрягла (be stuck), але Фарелу (Farrel) та ще одному поліцейському вдалося звільнити собаку. 22. «Ми можемо зустрітись в четвер вранці?» «Ні, на жаль. Мені потрібно йти до стоматолога об одинадцятій». 23. «Тобі подобається мій годинник? Я його купив за три долари». «Ти не міг купити гарний годинник так дешево». 24. У цій країні медичне обслуговування (health services) безкоштовне. 25. Минулого тижня бібліотекар дозволила мені взяти (to check out) за раз шість книжок. 26. Терпіти не можу жити у цій глухій дирі (godforsaken 70 hole). 27. Я б все одно не змогла скласти зовнішнє незалежнє оцінювання з математики (maths external independent evaluation), тому вирішила складати наступного року. 28. «Ти можеш підвезти мене до аеропорту на 11.30?» «Без проблем». 29. Тобі забракне сміливості спуститися вниз зі скелі. 30. У моєму домі ви ніколи не будете використовувати нецензурну лексику, це зрозуміло?

Exercise 30. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Вам не холодно, чи мені увімкнути кондиціонер? 2. Куди це я могла покласти телефон? Мені терміново треба подзвонити. 3. Вам не слід дозволяти дітям вештатись (to roam) по вулицях. 4. «Чия це сумка?» «Не знаю, може, Біла». 5. Не можна переходити дорогу на червонє світло. 6. Його треба покарати. Це справа принципу. 7. Рада Безпеки ООН може накласти економічні санкції. 8. «Де Джеф?» «Напевно, він вже пішов додому». 9. Будь-які речі понад п'ять

кілограмів потрібно здавати в багаж (to be checked). 10. «Хто може так гучно слухати музику?» «Це можуть бути тільки Сімпсони. Вони святкують новосілля». 11. Я не змогла зрозуміти, з чого вони сміялися. 12. Згідно з шкільними правилами, дитина не може залишати приміщення школи без супроводу дорослого. 13. Напевно, у тебе добрий зір. Я навіть звідси нічого не можу розібрати (to make out). 14. «Отже, зустрічаємося о шостій вечора, добре?» «Домовилися». 15. «Ізабелла прийде?» «Так, насправді скоро вона має бути тут». 16. Ви не могли б мені допомогти з цими валізами? 17. Коли я навчався у школі, то мав вивчати латинську мову. 18. Мені вже двадцять років, і ти не можеш вказувати (to dictate) мені, що робити. 19. Моя бабуся часто забувала, куди поділа свої окуляри. 20. «Тобі потрібно зайняти місце?» «Ні, я впевнена їх буде багато». 21. Ти могла хоча би залишити повідомлення на автовідповідач (to leave a message on the answering machine). 22. Був такий туман, що я не бачила навіть своїх рук! 23. Можливо, його відмовка (excuse) – правда, але я не вірю. 24. Тім ледь зміг приховати своє розчарування. 25. Ми з батьком могли сперечатися годинами. 26. Це все виглядає надто добре, щоб бути правдою. Має бути якась пастка (a catch). 27. Дощ іде, може, вже кілька годин. 28. Коли закінчиш читати книгу, ти можеш мені дати (to lend)? 29. Мені треба йти. Батьки сказали бути вдома до півночі. 30. Як ви вже мали здогадатся, ми з Девідом заручені (to be engaged).

Exercise 31. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. До екзаменаційної зали заборонено заходити з їжею. 2. Нам не треба було купувати нову машину. Ми отримали «Матіс» на весілля як подарунок. 3. Ви не могли б відійти, будь ласка? 4. Не міг би я відправити листа з вашого планшета? 5. Мені спекти пиріг на твій день народження? 6. Освіта має відповідати (to be relevant to) потребам дитини. 7. У районі Гавайських островів (the Hawaiian Islands) можна знайти хороші зразки берегових рифів (fringing reefs). 8. У поліцейських повинні бути вагомі причини, щоб зупинити водіїв. 9. Тобі часто доводиться бути у відрядженні? 10. Тобі не варто приймати ці ліки натщесерце. 11. Погода була така чудова, що я могла відчутти тепле сонце на спині. 12. Важливо вміти розмовляти більш, як однією іноземною мовою. 13. «Я не знаю, як прати цю спідницю». «На ярлику (label) має бути інструкція по пранню». 14. Тобі у цьому светрі точно спекотно (to boil). 15. Він урізався (to run into) в дерево. Напевно, він заснув за кермом (to fall asleep at the wheel). 16. Ти зміг сам полагодити двигун? 17. Ми могли б забити ще декілька голів, але ми задоволені кінцевим результатом. 18. Догляд за дітьми може бути важкою справою. 19. Вчителі повинні відмічати (to keep a record of) відвідування занять учнями. 20. «Я міг би вам допомогти припаркуватись». «Дякую, я ще тільки вчуся керувати автомобілем». 21. Я хочу, щоб мені дозволили пірнати у басейні. 22. «Можна нам увімкнути кондиціонер?» «Звичайно». 23. Я тобі не вірю. Ти точно жартуєш. 24. Він був такий розлючений, що міг її вбити. 25. Вона може пересуватися тільки на милицях (to walk with the assistance of crutches). 26. Амандо, ти могла б прибратися у своїй кімнаті, не кажучи вже про те, щоб заправити ліжко. 27. Якщо хочеш оволодіти іноземною мовою, займайся регулярно. 28. Не треба

платити за обід – я пригощаю. 29. Якщо він відмовляється це виконувати, то я це зроблю! 30. Повинна визнати, що я не відвідую батьків так часто, як слід.

Exercise 32. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Я можу тебе підкинути (to drop at) на вокзал по дорозі на роботу. 2. Я буду складати іспит в Единбурзі, хоча міг обрати Францію. 3. Тобі не треба хвилюватися за дітей, вони вже дорослі і дуже відповідальні. 4. Коли я був дитиною, мені не дозволяли заводити тварин. 5. Я поговорю з ним про це пізніше. 6. «Ти вмієш водити машину?» «Я тільки вчуся». 7. Може, у неї і немає роботи, зате є дах над головою. 8. Ти міг би спробувати звернутися до Рені (Renee). Може, вона знає де вони зараз живуть. 9. У вас є зайва ручка? 10. Це – бібліотека. Можна і тихіше! 11. Усі пасажири мають висадитися (to disembark) у Ванкувері (Vancouver). 12. Не можна просто так прийти до неї. Необхідно спочатку подзвонити. 13. Давай завтра зустрінемося за обідом. Ми можемо обговорити плани на відпочинок. 14. Тобі не слід було їй цього казати. Це її засмутило. 15. Може, я і помиляюсь, але ніколи цього не визнаю. 16. Переповнене людьми робоче місце може стати головним джерелом стресу. 17. Не слід сидіти близько до телевізора. Це шкодить зору. 18. Стюардеси повинні носити уніформу. 19. Це вже друга нова машина, яку вони купили в цьому році. Напевно, вони дуже багаті! 20. «Ти не знаєш, де Карл?» «Він не міг кудись поїхати – його ключі на столі». 21. Піди на кухню і пошукай там свої рукавички. Можливо, вони там. 22. Було помилкою підвищити (to give the promotion to sb) Гарольда (Harold). Він не може багато знати про компанію, пропрацювавши в ній лише рік. 23. Дзвонить телефон. Підними слухавку. Це, напевно, Кейт. Вона завжди дзвонить у цей час. 24. Тест починається о пів на одинадцять. Ні в якому разі не запізнюйся. 25. Ви повинні звільнити (to vacate) кімнати до одинадцятої. 26. Нова система має допомогти покращити точність (to improve the accuracy of) прогнозу погоди. 27. «Чому вчитель з історії був в такому поганому настрої учора?» «Можливо, у нього боліла голова». 28. Мені не подобається те, що доводиться рано прокидатися у неділю. 29. Ваш син такий відповідальний. Він же міг просто піти, але він цього не зробив і залишився, щоб допомогти. 30. Я мушу купити новий комп'ютер. Цей увесь час ламається.

Exercise 33. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Дюваль (Duval) міг легко переходити (to switch) з французької на англійську. 2. Мені байдуже, що думає Барі (Barry). 3. Сему не треба їхати за донькою в школу. Вона приїде на шкільному автобусі. 4. Фірма гарантує налагодження обладнання впродовж шістьох місяців. 5. Мама має вже прийти з роботи, я їй подзвоню. 6. Бабуся каже, що я сьогодні можу піти спати пізніше. 7. «Чому ми не можемо поїхати у відпустку?» «Ну, по-перше, ми не можемо собі цього дозволити...». 8. Минулого тижня нам на екзамені з математики дозволили користуватися калькуляторами. 9. Чому ти мені не сказав? Я міг би тобі допомогти! 10. Я терпіти не можу грубість. 11. Крокодили можуть затримувати дихання (to hold one's breath) під водою надовго, тому що вони мало рухаються і не витрачають (to expand) багато енергії. 12. Це не твої

гроші, і ти мусиш їх повернути. 13. Компанія втрачає гроші. Ми будемо змушені зачинитися (to close down). 14. Можливо, вона не дізнається, що я розбила її окуляри. Я їй нічого не скажу. 15. Мені треба не забути купити молока дорогою додому. 16. Ти можеш їхати трохи повільніше? 17. Не смійся, що Марія набрала вагу. Вона, можливо, вагітна, а не товста! 18. Не дзвони йому зараз. Можливо, він ще не встав. 19. Учні не зможуть ходити до школи через зростання оплати за навчання (tuition increases). 20. Я сподіваюся, що одного дня ти зможеш мені пробачити. 21. Я не знаю, чому Кевін такий розлючений. Його могли звільнити, його могли пограбувати, він міг загубити собаку... 22. Якщо ти не хочеш, не потрібно приходити на вечірку. 23. Можна вже й додому піти. Я не думаю, що він прийде. 24. Я думаю, що, можливо, він намагається нас обманути. 25. З ним має бути все в порядку. 26. Не слід їм було купувати вживану машину. Кожного дня одне й те саме: вона не заводиться та споживає надто багато бензину. 27. Напевно, вона собою дуже задоволена. Вона отримала найвищі оцінки. 28. Спочатку я не знав, як полагодити паркан, але врештірешт я полагодив його без сторонньої допомоги. 29. Учніям слід виконувати домашнє завдання. 30. Можна мені передати цукор?

Exercise 34. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Вам повинно бути більше вісімнадцяти для того, щоб дивитися цей фільм. 2. Не треба хвилюватися – зі мною все буде добре. 3. «Можна мені розплатитися кредиткою?» «Так, звичайно». 4. Де я можу обміняти долари на фунти? 5. Я нічого не можу знайти, щоби пасувало моїй зеленій сорочці. 6. Припини! Невже не бачиш, що я намагаюсь працювати? 7. «Як тест?» «Нормально, могло бути і гірше!» 8. «Англія виграє чемпіонат світу». «Ти, напевно, жартуєш!» 9. Ви не могли б вимкнути світло? 10. Браян (Brian) грав дуже добре, 74 але врешті-решт я зміг його перемогти! 11. За допомогою цієї методики ви зможете розуміти, що пишуть в газетах менш ніж за рік, але розмовляти вільно французькою не зможете. 12. Я можу вам запропонувати м'ясо на грилі? 13. Можливо, він ще виграє, не засмучуйся. 14. Для того щоб залишитися у цьому бізнесі, ти мусиш бути кращим за конкурентів (competitor). 15. Якщо ти будеш регулярно користуватися цією маззю, висипання має скоро пройти (to clear up). 16. «Можна взяти твою ракетку?» «Звичайно». 17. Ти міг би сказати про його день народження. Я б купив йому подарунок. 18. Я не змогла знайти ключа, який би підходив до замка. 19. Надішли мені останній звіт для того, щоб у мене була повна інформація. 20. Я люблю клімат Англії тому, що я терпіти не можу спеку. 21. «Де Джин (Jean)?» «Вона може бути вдома». 22. Те, що ти кажеш, може бути правдою. 23. Нехай мене накаже (to strike smb dead) Бог, якщо я брешу! 24. Астронавтам вдалося зафіксувати з космосу Великий бар'єрний риф (the Great Barrier Reef) в Австралії. Ти можеш у це повірити? 25. В Україні не потрібно бути старше 21 року, щоб ходити до пивниці, а в Америці потрібно. 26. «Як справи?» «Нормально. Могло бути і гірше». 27. Не може бути, щоб ти це серйозно казав. Ти точно мене розігруєш (to kid). 28. Я бачив, як вона вийшла з дому. Вона не може бути вдома. 29. Підвищення заробітної плати

має підняти дух працівників (to improve staff morale). 30. Приїжджай на два дні раніше, щоб ти міг акліматизуватися.

Exercise 35. Translate into English and comment on the modal verbs. 1. Я можу вам запропонувати щось випити? 2. Я маю дізнатися розклад потягів (train times). 3. «Чому Тіма не має?» «Це, може, тому, що його мати знову захворіла». 4. «Мені треба зачиняти вікна, коли я буду йти?» «Ні, не треба. Я ніколи їх не зачиняю». 5. Привіт, Джо. Ти можеш вийти? Решта хлопців вже на тебе чекають на футбольному полі. 6. Шкода, що вона залишила університет. А вона могла стати великою актрисою. 7. Вона почала так тихо розмовляти, що Алекс нічого не чув. 8. Тобі слід було зателефонувати – я почала хвилюватися. 9. Не може бути, щоб ти втомився. Ти ж тільки встав (to get out of bed)! 10. Йому слід бути вдома до сьомої вечора. 11. Кафе було переповнене. Я ніде не міг знайти місце, щоб сісти. 12. Спочатку він не хотів зі мною йти, але мені вдалося його переконати. 13. Наступного року ми можемо поїхати у відпустку, наприклад, на Гаваї. 14. Якщо ти будеш продовжувати тренуватися (to practice), то одного дня зможеш грати на піаніно. 15. Оскільки я мушу чекати, то я можу сісти та відпочити. 16. Може на вулиці і холодно, але все одно день чудовий. 17. Не міг би я вас називати по імені? 18. Ти хоч щось знаєш про хлопця своєї доньки? Він може бути одруженим! У нього можуть бути діти! 19. Не міг він розбити шибку, він навіть не був в школі того дня. 20. Тім із дитинства марив машинами. Йому судилося стати відомим гонщиком. 21. Дворяни могли позбавляти (to deprive of) своїх дітей солодощів як покарання. 22. Бабуся завжди купувала мені книгу на Різдво. 23. «Я розповім Білу про твої плани». «Не смій!» 24. Вони, напевно, працюють у лабораторії. Не слід їм заважати. 25. Ми запитували її кілька разів, але вона нічого нам не говорила. 26. «Чому ти не прийшла вчора?» «Я повинна була зустрічати двоюрідну сестру на вокзалі». «Тоді ти повинна була подзвонити, щоб ми тебе не чекали». 27. Вони ще про це пошкоднують! 28. Мені викликати таксі? 29. Моя донька відмовляється їсти моркву. Вона ненавидить її смак. 30. Таксі має приїхати через кілька хвилин.

2 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

2.1 REAL CONDITION.

PROBLEMATIC CONDITION

Conditional Sentences A conditional sentence is a complex sentence with a subordinate clause of condition that usually begins with the conjunction *If*. The clause of condition (the *if*-clause) indicates the conditions under which the action in the main clause may be realized. Conditional sentences are usually divided into the following types:

Real condition Conditional sentences with real condition express real, true to fact conditions under which the action in the main clause can be realized. The tenses of the indicative mood are used. In most cases, conditions refer to the present or future, but other situations and tenses are also possible. e.g. *If I have enough time tonight, I will help you. They will bring his book if they find it. If you*

want to pass your exams, you must study. You may go home if you have finished your work. If he talked to her yesterday, he told her about our plan.

Type 0. Refers to the present	
<p>Statements about the real world, often general truths, such as scientific facts. In these sentences, the time is now or always and the situation is real and possible.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plants die if they don't get enough water. If you mix red and blue, you get purple. If you heat ice, it melts. The grass gets wet when it rains. If people eat too much, they get fat. If you touch a fire, you get burned. People die if they don't eat.
Type 1. Refers to the future	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Statements about the real, factual conditions under which the action in the main clause can be realized. 	<p>Be: If I'm better tomorrow, I'll get up Have: If I have a headache, I won't go Present Simple: If they come earlier, we'll have a party Present Continuous: If he is standing in the rain, he will catch cold Present Perfect: If she has arrived at the station, she'll be here soon; If I've finished my work by ten, I'll probably watch a film Present Perfect Continuous: If he has been travelling all night, he'll need a rest. Modals: If I can afford it, I'll buy it. *Note: Future tenses in the main clause: If I don't run, The train will have left If I stay till May, I'll have been working here for 20 years. If he gets there on time, they'll be having lunch between 1 and 2 o'clock.</p>
<p>Problematic Condition referring to the future:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Statements about the facts that are unlikely to happen in the future, or the speaker is doubtful about, Formal polite tactful instructions / offers, found in business letters or formal conversations. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you should see her, say hello If he should succeed, no one will be more pleased than me Should you be in Ivano-Frankivsk, I'll be glad to see you Should you be interested in our offer, please contact us Should you not wish our agent to call, please let us know

Exercises: 1. Translate the following sentences and comment on the use of the tenses and the modal verbs: 1. If you finish earlier, you can call me. 2. If they are arriving tomorrow, I might get everything ready today. 3. If he has already arrived, we should inform the others. 4. If she has been working, you ought to let her rest. 5. If he cannot understand it, you must explain. 6. If it's possible tomorrow, we might come and help you. 7. If I hear from him soon, I may be leaving the next week. 8. If she is abroad, she may not have got our parcel yet. 9. If you see her next time, you ought to be more attentive. 10. If you should be in town, you must visit us!

Exercises 2. Insert the verbs

1. If it _____ (be) warm tomorrow, we _____ (go) for a walk
 2. If I _____ (have) time tonight, I _____ (watch) my favourite film
 3. If he _____ (leave) today, he _____ (be) there tomorrow
 4. If it _____ (rain) next weekend, we _____ (be able to) plant the vegetables
 5. If she _____ (work) for the whole month, she _____ (need) to go on vacation.
 6. If they _____ (come) on time, they _____ (have lunch) between 12 and 1 pm.
 7. If you _____ (can't do) it for me, I _____ (ask) someone else
 8. If John _____ (be picked) for the team, he _____ (boast) about it for weeks
 9. If we _____ (stay) in this house till June, we _____ (live) here for 10 years
 10. If you _____ (do) the task yet, _____ (ask) him to help you.

3. Insert the verbs in the if-clause and use modals (can / could / may / might / should / ought to / must) in the main clause

1. If you _____ (feel) unwell, you _____ stay in bed
 2. If he _____ (finish) his translation by 5 pm, he _____ have dinner with us
 3. If she _____ (have) too much to do, she _____ ask me for help
 4. If it _____ (be) possible tomorrow, we _____ meet
 5. If she _____ (be coming) tonight, I _____ reserve a room for her
 6. If he _____ (just arrive), he _____ (hear) the news yet.
 7. If you _____ (disagree) on some points, you _____ be more tolerant
 8. If they _____ (be waiting) for long, they _____ (get) irritated.
 9. If she _____ (ask) you, you _____ not tell her
 10. If I _____ (have) everything settled, I _____ be leaving tomorrow.

Exercises 3. Translate the sentences.

1. Якщо просиш ввічливо, люди охоче допомагають тобі.
 2. Якщо ти не заплатиш, то електрику відключать.
 3. Якщо вона справиться з усією роботою до обіду, ми зможемо пообідати разом.
 4. Якщо ти не знайомий з людиною, не говори про неї нічого.
 5. Якщо завтра до вечора я отримаю відповіді, я зможу розпланувати нашу конференцію.
 6. Якщо ти все ж-таки знатимеш щось про неї, напиши мені.
 7. Якщо він все ж-таки подзвонить, не варто брати трубку.
 8. Якщо знижується температура, ми вмикаємо опалення.
 9. На випадок, якщо вона тебе все ж запитає, не можна нічого розказувати.
 10. У випадку, якщо я запізнюся, можете не чекати на мене.
 11. Ти допоможеш, якщо я попрошу?
 12. Не відповідай на дзвінки, поки мене нема.
 13. Якщо маєш вільний час, читай.
 14. Я зможу відповісти тобі, коли перевірю інформацію.
 15. Якщо продукти зберігати в теплі, вони швидко псуються.
 16. Якщо я працюю, не можна мене турбувати
 17. Якщо я пропрацюю тут ще рік, то працюватиму тут вже 20 років
 18. Якщо вона вже тричі дзвонила, то ситуація напевно серйозна.

2.2 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. UNREAL CONDITION (PRESENT)

Conditional sentences with unreal condition in the subordinate clause of condition (if-clause) express hypothetical, unlikely, improbable, unreal, contrary to fact conditions under which the action in the main clause might be realized or might have been realized. The forms in the subjunctive mood are used. Conditional sentences of the second type talk about imaginary situations in the If-clause and speculate about their imaginary consequences in the main clause. Though past tenses are used, the reference is not to past time (that is why this use of the past tense after if is often called 'the unreal present' or Present Subjunctive II).

Type 2. Refers to the present.	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Statements about the imaginary situations and their imaginary consequences: doubtful statements and purely imaginary statements If + were / did / ... would / should / could / had / V2 could / might do (condition (likely to be satisfied) outcome) Subjunctive II Conditional Present Present / Modal *Note: ‘were/was’ are possible in doubtful statements (here „were’ sounds more formal), though only ‘were’ should be used for imaginary situations. • Advice (on something reasonably possible to sound more tentative) • Advice ‘If I were you’ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If I were taller, I would become a policeman If he had any money, he could leave home If you could see me now, you'd laugh your head off If he were here, he might help us If I had longer legs I would be able to run faster If he failed he should (ought to) try again • If I was/were better qualified, I would apply for the job. If I were taller, I could be a model • If you took a taxi, you'd get there quicker If you didn't spend so much time in front of the computer, your eyes wouldn't hurt. • If I were you, I would not move out (=you shouldn't move out) If I were Ann, I would quit (=I think Ann should quit)

Exercises 1. Write type 2 Conditionals 1. I don't have a spare ticket. I can't take you to the concert _____ 2. She is not here now. She cannot help _____ 3. They don't have free time. They cannot go with us to Lviv _____ 4. He can't type. He can't help us with those files _____ 5. I don't have money. I cannot lend you _____ 6. He doesn't understand the problem. He cannot help us to solve it _____ 7. She isn't in good shape. She doesn't fit. _____ 8. I cannot run fast. I don't take part in running competitions _____ 9. She is not tall. She is not a model _____ 10. You should take a taxi. You are late. _____ 11. She is not in your position. She cannot advise you _____ 12. I am in a hurry. I will not stay longer _____ 13. He does not have money. He cannot move out _____ 14. He doesn't have a job. He still lives with his parents _____ 15. The weather is bad. We won't walk _____

Exercises 2. Insert the verbs. Use could / might / be able to in the main clause. 1. If she _____ (be) here now, she _____ tell us what to do 2. If I _____ (have) the right qualification, I _____ apply for this job 3. If you _____ (be) a teacher, you _____ understand the situation 4. If she _____ (study) Maths, she _____ solve the problem 5. If he _____ (earn) enough, he _____ buy a new flat 6. If you _____ (need) advice, you _____ ask me.

Exercises 3. Translate the sentences 1. Якби ти вчасно приходив на пари, то не мав би проблем щоразу. 2. Якби я знала відповідь, я б сказала тобі. 3. Ти зміг би переплисти річку, якби зараз був шторм? 4. Якщо б вони мали приїхати, ти б зраділа? 5. На твоєму місці я б шукав нове житло. 6. Якби я

знала англійську, я б могла отримати кращу роботу. 7. На її місці я б не розповідала все про себе. 8. Якби він був молодшим, то зайнявся б танцями 9. Якби мені добре вдавалося малювати, я б малював портрети 10. Якщо б вона була у добрій формі, могла б узяти участь у завтрашньому змаганні 11. Ти б хотіла бути кінозіркою, якби мала можливість? 12. На його місці я б більше часу приділяв читанню. 13. На її місці я б змінила колір волосся 14. Вона б хотіла провести більше часу в горах, якби не потрібно завтра бути в офісі.

2.3 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. UNREAL CONDITION (PAST)

Type 3 conditionals assume something purely imaginary in the if clause and consider the imagined consequences in the main clause. Unlike the Type 2 conditionals, Type 3 refers to consequences which did not and could not ever happen because they refer to something that didn't happen in the past. They are hypothetical conditions

Type 3. Refers to the past	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Statements about the imaginary situations and their imaginary consequences in the past: hypothetical conditions, purely imaginary situations, regrets about the past If + had been / ... would have done / had done / should have done/ could have done might have done / could have done (imagined condition) (imagined outcome) <p>Subjunctive II Conditional Past Past / Modal</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reason (past): 'If it hadn't been for' (= but for) *Note 1: Inversion in formal statements *Note 2: Modals in the if-clause and in the main clause 	<p>hypothetical conditions</p> <p>If I had been old enough I would have joined the police force</p> <p>If I had known it was a secret, I would have kept quiet about it</p> <p>purely imaginary situations</p> <p>If I had lived in the Stone Age, I would have been a hunter</p> <p>regrets about the past</p> <p>If we had gone by car, we would have saved time</p> <p>If I had been trying harder I would have succeeded</p> <p>reason</p> <p>If it hadn't been for the rain, we would have had a good walk</p> <p>If it hadn't been for the bad weather, he could have come much sooner.</p> <p>Had the management acted sooner, the strike wouldn't have happened</p> <p>Had it not been for the unusually bad weather, the rescue team would have been able to save the climber</p> <p>If I could have stopped there wouldn't have been an accident</p> <p>If he could have known the facts, he might have told us what to do</p> <p>If she had been there, she could have met my sister</p>

Exercises 1. Write type 3 Conditionals

1. She ate too much sweets and was sick _____
2. We walked home because we ran out of money _____
3. He couldn't move to a better district because he didn't earn enough _____
4. It was very slippery that is why I fell down _____
5. He was very tired and decided to go to bed _____
6. You were not watching the road that is why you got into an accident _____
7. She didn't see us and therefore didn't say "hello" _____
8. My parents were very nervous and left some things at _____

the airport _____ 9. He didn't enjoy his Chemistry classes, so he didn't do well _____

10. The dress was too expensive, so I didn't buy it _____

Exercises 2. Write type 3 Conditionals (If it hadn't been for the rain, we would have had a good walk) 1. The weather was bad, so we cancelled our picnic _____ 2. Due to the warm coat I didn't catch cold _____ 3. Due to his patience the argument was averted _____ 4. The film was very interesting, so we convinced her to come with us _____ 5. Due to her help we managed to edit all the articles _____ 6. I had the job I liked, that's why I didn't move to another city with my family _____ 7. Due to her bad luck she missed the last train _____ 8. Because she was ill, the team lost _____ 9. Due to your umbrella I didn't get wet through _____ 10. The text was too long, so we didn't finish translating it in class _____

Exercises 3. Translate the sentences. Use modals where necessary 1. Якби вона вже отримала повідомлення, нас би попередили 2. Якби він зміг переконати батьків, то не залишився би вдома 3. Якби ви приїхали швидше, то не запізнилися б на початок вистави 4. Ти б, мабуть, зустрів її, якби вона там була 5. Ми могли б допомогти, якби вони попросили 6. Якби я могла повернути час назад, я б сказала їй усе 7. Якби він здав іспити протягом першої сесії, він зміг би поїхати з нами за кордон 8. Вона мала б нас повідомити, якби щось змінилося 9. Якби ти попередила мене, що купила квитки, я б не купляла 10. Якби він не запитав, чи я приєднаюся до них за вечерею, мені б не довелося вигадувати виправдання 11. Якби ти змогла бути більш толерантною з ними, ми б не потрапили в таку халепу 12. Якби не твої коментарі, нас би не вигнали з концертної зали.

2.4 MIXED TYPES. CONJUNCTIONS (unless, providing that, etc.)

It is possible for the two parts of a conditional sentence to refer to different times, and the resulting sentence is a "mixed conditional" sentence. Depending on the context, any tense sequence is possible. Mixed Structures in Conditional Sentences

<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Unreal past condition and its probable result in the present If + had done / ... would be / do had been could be / do Type 3 Type 2• Unreal present situation and its probable (but unreal) past result. In these mixed conditional sentences, the time in the If-clause is now (condition contrary to present reality) or always (condition contrary to the present state that can't be changed) and the time in the main clause is before now. If + did / were / ... would have done / had would	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If I had worked harder at school, I would have a better job now. If we had looked at the map we wouldn't be lost. If you had caught that plane you would be dead now.• If I weren't afraid of spiders, I would have picked it up. If I didn't trust him I would have left him months ago.• If she wasn't afraid of flying she wouldn't have travelled by boat.• I'd have been able to translate the letter if my Italian were better.• If I were a good cook, I'd have invited
---	--

<p>have been Type 2 Type 3</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Past advice of the type „If I were you“ <p>If I were you / her ... would have done / would have been Type 2 Type 3</p>	<p>them to lunch. If I were tall, I could have become a model</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If I were you, I would not have moved out (=you shouldn't have moved out) If I were Ann, I would have quit (=I think Ann should have quit)
<p>Conjunctions in Conditional Sentences</p>	
<p>Unless = ‘except, on the condition that’</p>	<p>If not = unless in „real“ situations Type 1: If you do not change your mind, I won't take part Unless you change your mind, I won't 23 take part (an ultimatum) If not ≠ unless in „unreal“ situations: She would be nice, if she didn't complain I'll be surprised if he doesn't win If not ≠ unless in past references: I couldn't have got there on time – unless I had caught an earlier train (=the speaker didn't get to the meeting, unless introduces an afterthought) I couldn't have got there on time if I had not caught an earlier train (=the speaker did get to the meeting, because he did catch the earlier train) Unless in short answers: Will you help me? – Yes, If I can; - No, not unless you pay me</p>
<p>as long as / so long as</p>	<p>As / So long as you clean the room, you can open the box</p>
<p>assuming that</p>	<p>Assuming (that) she's a nurse, she could know what to do.</p>
<p>even if</p>	<p>He'll definitely help, even if he has no money left</p>
<p>if only</p>	<p>If only he gets his job, it will make me happy (type 1)</p>
<p>on the condition that</p>	<p>They would lend us their flat on (the) condition (that) we looked after it</p>
<p>provided/providing that</p>	<p>Providing / Provided (that) the shop is open, we'll buy the doll</p>
<p>suppose that / supposing that</p>	<p>Suppose / Supposing (that) we miss the train. What shall we do?</p>
<p>what if</p>	<p>What if she gets to know it? What will she do?(type1) What if you ran out of money? What would you do? (type 2)</p>
<p>say</p>	<p>Say you were to move out? Where</p>

	would you go?(type 2) Say he was here on that day? What would have happened?(type 3)
if so / if not / in which case	I may be busy, in which case I'll call you later I may be busy. If so (in that case), I'll call you later He may be busy. If not, can I see him now?
whether or not	Whether he comes back or not (Whether or not he comes back), I'll go on without his help (type 1) You'll have to put up with it, whether you like it or not (type 1)
Implied conditionals	Type 1: With luck, we'll be here tomorrow (=if we are lucky) Given time, they'll probably agree (=if we give them time) Type 2: To hear him talk, you would think he was responsible (=if you could hear him talk) I would write to you, but I don't know your address (=If I knew) But for you, I wouldn't be happy (=If I didn't have you) Type 3: Without your help, I couldn't have done it (=If you hadn't helped) But for the rain, we would have gone out (=If it hadn't rained) In different circumstances, I would have said yes (=If the circumstances had been different)

Exercises 1. Write conditionals to match the situations 1. I am very tired, I have been working all day_____ 2. I think you shouldn't have come so early_____ 3. He didn't eat, that's why he is hungry_____ 4. She is too shy, so she didn't have many friends at school_____ 5. They were absent last time, that's why they don't understand what we are talking about_____ 6. It's too cold outside, because it has been raining_____ 7. It is rather slippery, that's why she has fallen down_____ 8. He didn't manage to find the required files, that is why he is so mad_____ 9. You wasted too much money yesterday, so you can't afford dinner today_____ 10. You don't know her, that's why you said those things_____ 11. I didn't believe you because I know who you are_____ 12. The performance went poorly, that's why he is sad_____ 13. She pretended she didn't see me, so I'm mad at her now_____ 14. He said he would rather go to the woods, so I think he is there now._____

Exercises 3. Translate the sentences using conjunctions 1. Як тільки вона зателефонує, повідом мене 2. Якщо припустити, що він виїхав учора, він,

напевно, прибуде сьогодні після обіду 3. Навіть якби він був і мільйонером, вона б не вийшла за нього заміж 4. Якби ж тільки ти розуміла, наскільки серйозною є ця ситуація 5. За умови, що не видаси секрет, я покажу тобі подарунок, який я готую 6. За умови, якщо квитки ще не розкупили, ми можемо піти увечері на виставу 7. Припустімо, ти загубилася. Кого запитати? 8. А що якби він не сказав тоді тих слів? Вони б були ще досі разом? 9. Якщо ти не припиниш курити, я покину тебе 10. Можливо, я дізнаюся результат, в цьому випадку я дам тобі знати 11. Чи переможе вона, чи ні, ми все одно підтримаємо її.

2.5 CONDITIONAL MOOD. SENTENCE PATTERNS

Conditional Mood Present → would do / would be Past → would have done / would have been Conditional Mood can be used in the following sentence patterns to express unreal situations:

But for	But for the rain, the weather would be nice today But for the rain, the picnic would have been nice yesterday
Otherwise	She must be sleeping, otherwise, he would be online now He must have learned the speech by heart, otherwise he wouldn't be speaking so well now He is a student, I think. Otherwise he wouldn't attend classes
Infinitive	To meet her would be nice To stop now would mean losing everything
	To have helped her wouldn't have cost you much. Why didn't you? To have refused would have hurt the old people, that's why I didn't refuse
I wish	I wish you would be more quiet (polite imperative) If only we could be together (regret) I wish she would come

Exercises 1. Write sentences with the Conditional mood to match the situations

- It was a rainy day, so we didn't go outside _____
- Thank you for your advice. It helped me make the right choice__ _
- He is ill, that's why I'm here _____
- He must have forgotten to meet them. That's why they are calling _____
- I think it's a silly idea to go to the woods at night _____
- She doesn't want to leave. So, she didn't pack the things _____
- He didn't mean us to join them for lunch. That's why he didn't suggest that _____
- You shouldn't stop. You'll get lost _____
- I couldn't tell her. It would have broken her heart _____
- He made many mistakes. That's why his speech wasn't perfect__ _
- They must have got the message. That's why they have come__ _
- He is bad-tempered. That's why he his lonely _____

Exercises 2. Translate the sentences

- Якби не її акцент, ми б і не здогадалися, що вона іноземка
- Мабуть він не встиг на потяг, інакше приїхав би ще зранку
- Якби не її талант до малювання, вона б не думала про вступ до художньої школи
- Вони напевно переїхали. Інакше ворота були б відчиненими
- Мабуть, тут лише один магазин. Інакше там би не

було такої великої черги щоразу 6. Якби не голосна музика в автобусі, я б проспала дорогою додому 7. Погодитися на участь у проєкті означало відкласти усі інші справи на довгий термін. Тому я відмовився 8. Переїхати в інше місто було б занадто важко для неї 9. Якби не переклад, який я маю здати завтра, я б поїхала сьогодні з вами в гори 10. Якби ж люди припинили постійно смітити! 11. Вони точно вдома, інакше світло не було б увімкнене 12. Якби ж ти могла зрозуміти те, про що я кажу. 13. Якби не парасоля, яку ми позичили, ми б змокли до нитки 14. Якби ж він не залишав свої речі всюди 15. Мабуть, він планує стати лікарем. Інакше не читав би постійно медичні книги 16. Якби ж нарешті припинився дощ 17. Якби не допомога перехожого, ми б не знайшли той готель 18. Мабуть, вона заблукала, інакше уже б була тут 19. Він, напевно, не сподівався нас там зустріти, інакше не був би таким здивованим. 20. Якби ж наші сусіди нарешті припинили сваритися!

2.6 SUBJUNCTIVE II. SENTENCE PATTERNS

Subjunctive II Mood can be used in the following sentence patterns to express unreal situations

I wish / If only	I wish you were here If only I could help him He will wish he knew her better
	I wish I hadn't eaten so much They wished they hadn't come so late You will wish you had not followed her advice
It's (high) time	It's high time you were more attentive It's time he changed his watch *We've enjoyed the evening, but it's time for us to go (=it's time for us to go right now) We've enjoyed the evening, but it's time we went (=we should probably have left before now)
Look / behave / act... as if	She acts as if she had the permission They look as if they were poor She looks as if she were holding back tears
	They will behave as if nothing had happened She acted as if she had not heard it before She looks as if she had been hurt
Would rather	I would rather you were quiet now He'd rather we were together She'd rather the kids walked more every day
	I'd rather you hadn't been so rude yesterday He'd rather the letters had been sent to him

Exercises 1. Write sentences with I wish / If only

- My watch is bad_____
- I don't know the answer_____
- He is not here_____
- They aren't attentive_____
- I didn't follow your advice, I will regret that_____
- He didn't come to the meeting_____
- We wasted our time_____
- He didn't phone her yesterday, he will regret that_____
- I'm not on holiday now_____
- She didn't translate the text_____

Exercises 2. Write sentences with It's (high) time 1. Ann and Pete have been engaged for many years._____ 2. We haven't been out for an evening together_____ 3. It's too late. You should go home_____ 4. Your room is very dirty_____ 5. She hasn't had a rest for too long_____

Exercises 3. Write sentences with would rather to express personal preference 1. Я б хотів стати пілотом. 2. Він би набагато більше хотів би вивчати мистецтво, аніж математику 3. Якби я жила в минулому, я б краще була принцесою. 4. Йому довелося принести їй погані новини, хоча він би краще цього не робив 5. Ти б пішла з ними в кіно? – Ні, я б краще залишилася вдома

Exercises 4. Write sentences with would rather to express preferences about other people's actions 1. Я б хотів, щоб ти приїхав раннім поїздом. Інакше ти запізнишся 2. Я не повернуся раніше шостої. Я б не хотів, щоб ви мене чекали так довго 3. Я б хотів, щоб вчора все склалося по-іншому 4. Він би хотів, щоб вони були присутні, коли йому вручатимуть приз 5. Я б краще хотів, щоб ніхто про це не знав.

Write sentences with act / behave as if 1. Вона поводитися так, ніби ми незнайомі 2. Він виглядав так, ніби виграв у лотерею 3. Вони поводитимуться так, ніби ти не казала про це 4. Вона почуваеться так, ніби її образили 5. Він почуватиметься так, ніби йому зробили найкращий подарунок

Exercises 5. Write negative short responses to the sentences (I'd rather smb didn't / hadn't) 1. She wants to become self-employed, but_____ 2. They've told everyone about it, but___ 3. Susan has moved her account to another bank, but_____ 4. Bill takes sleeping pills, but_____ 5. He often drives fast, but_____ 6. They went to live in Australia last year, but_____ 7. Our neighbours keep a large dog, but_____ 8. I know you have already booked our holiday, but_____ 9. He retired early last year, but_____ 10. They often quarrel, but_____

2.7 SUBJUNCTIVE I (MANDATIVE). SENTENCE PATTERNS

It is necessary advisable important that smb do smth / be ordered (subjunctive I) desirable nice doubtful possible natural strange	It's advisable that kids walk a lot It's desirable that we walk a lot It's necessary that you obey the law It's vital that we be present It's doubtful that he know it It's natural that she apply
suggest(s) demand(s) order(s) that smb to do smth / be insist(s)	Mom suggested that we go for a walk She will insist that the window be open
Smb I think(s) it necessary believe(s) advisable consider(s) important find(s) desirable (Subjunctive I) (verbs of possible mental natural activity) strange doubtful	Father thinks it necessary that we eat three times a day We find it desirable that you be present all the time He believes it strange that she be present

that Smb 2 do / be

Exercises 1. Write sentences with Subjunctive I 1. urgent / the information / to be sent now_____ 2. necessary / the homework / to be done every day____ 3. vital / you / to drink enough_____ 4. important / they / to be informed_____ 5. essential / everyone / to be allowed to study_____

Exercises 2. Write sentences with Subjunctive I 1. He / suggest / we / to buy / new equipment_____ 2. They / demand / he / to be told to leave_____ 3. The boss / order / the documents / to be typed immediately_____ 4. She / insist / the children / to be educated at home_____ 5. Doctors / recommend / we / to take vitamins in winter_____

Exercises 3. Write sentences with Subjunctive I 1. They / consider / necessary / the rules / to be obeyed_____ 2. I / believe / important / you / to study French_____ 3. He / find / advisable / everyone / to wear warm clothes_____ 4. She / think / strange / you / to behave like that_____ 5. I / find / natural / they / to ask for help_____

Exercises 4. Translate the sentences 1. Її адвокат наполягав, щоб вона підписала контракт. 2. Я пропоную, щоб ми взяли таксі, щоб не запізнитися 3. Він вважає необхідним, щоб діти спали на свіжому повітрі. 4. Бажано, щоб студенти не запізнювалися на пари 5. Важливо, щоб усі учасники конференції зареєструвалися.

2.8 SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD. SENTENCE PATTERNS

Present → should do / should be Past → should have done / should have been	Tell her to dress warmer lest she should be cold I'll call you lest you should forget *I'll call her lest she forget Dress warmer lest you get cold
	It's advisable that kids should walk a lot It's necessary that you should obey the law It's vital that we should be present It's doubtful that he should know it It's natural that she should apply
	Mom suggested that we should go for a walk She will insist that the window should be open
	Father thinks it necessary that we should eat three times a day We find it desirable that you should be present all the time He believes it strange that she should be present

Exercises 1. Write sentences with Suppositional Mood 1. urgent / the information / to be sent now_____ 2. necessary / the homework / to be done every day_____ 3. vital / you / to drink enough_____ 4. important / they / to be informed_____ 5. essential / everyone / to be allowed to study_____

Exercises 2. Write sentences with Suppositional Mood 1. He / suggest / we / to buy / new equipment _____ 2. They / demand / he / to be told to leave _____ 3. The boss / order / the documents / to be typed immediately _____ 4. She / insist / the children / to be educated at home _____ 5. Doctors / recommend / we / to take vitamins in winter _____

Exercises 3. Write sentences with Suppositional Mood 1. They / consider / necessary / the rules / to be obeyed _____ 2. I / believe / important / you / to study French _____ 3. He / find / advisable / everyone / to wear warm clothes _____ 4. She / think / strange / you / to behave like that _____ 5. I / find / natural / they / to ask for help _____

Exercises 4. Translate the sentences 1. Уряд наполягав, щоб усі рятувальні команди прибули на місце події 2. Важливо, щоб він пробув у лікарні ще тиждень 3. Він запропонував, щоб усі покинули приміщення 4. Необхідно, щоб ліки видавала кваліфікована медсестра 5. Я вважаю, що це життєво важливо, щоб вона отримала необхідне лікування

Exercises 5. Translate the sentences 1. Якби ти мене зараз бачила, то дуже б здивувалася 2. Якби він був вищий, то міг би грати в баскетбол в шкільні роки 3. На твоєму місці я б не просив вибачення за те, чого не робив 4. Якби ти більше читала, ти б більше знала 5. Якби вона більше заробляла, то змогла б переїхати на нову квартиру ще торік 6. Відмовитися спричинило б ще більше проблем, тому я погодився 7. Ти б краще не вмикала телевізор так гучно, щоб не розбудити дитину 8. Він поводитиметься так, ніби ніколи цього не говорив 9. Якби не її сила волі, вона б не перемогла у змаганні 10. Напевно вони вже бачили цей фільм, інакше їм не було б так нудно зараз 11. Шкода, що ти не бачила вчорашню виставу. Вона б тобі точно сподобалася 12. Якби ж тільки люди перестали пліткувати про інших 13. Він дійсно любить читати, інакше в нього б не було такої великої колекції книг 14. Якщо станеться так, що я запізнюся, зачекай мене біля входу 15. Він наполягатиме, щоб усі команди пройшли медогляд 16. Необхідно, щоб кожен отримав подарунок 17. Вона вважає важливим, щоб її підлеглі мали комфортні умови праці 18. Шкода, що ти не зможеш до нас приєднатися завтра 19. Якби ти уважніше прочитав правила, ти б не втрапив у халепу 20. Якби ти попередила, що зустрічі не буде, я б спланувала свій день по-іншому.

Exercises 6. Translate the sentences using wish

1. Ах, якби ви сказали їй про це минулої неділі! 2. Добре б у нас зараз були канікули. 3. Якби він прийшов сьогодні ввечері! 4. Ми пошкодували, що не попросили його поради. 5. Шкода, що ви відмовилися взяти участь в пікніку. 6. Шкода, що вас не цікавить цей предмет. 7. Ми б хотіли, щоб ви згадали ці факти. 8. Шкода, що ми запізнилися на потяг. 9. Шкода, що ви включили телевізор так пізно. 10. Якби я був вільний зараз! 11. Шкода, що і вчора у мене було мало часу. 12. Добре б ви написали їй про це самі. 13. Шкода, що ви не звернули уваги на його попередження. 14. Він пошкодував, що кинув університет. 15. Шкода, що вже пізно йти туди. 16. Ах, якби я прийшов на вокзал вчасно! 17. Шкода, що ви не читали таку прекрасну книгу. 18. Шкода, що вона робить так багато помилок у мовленні. 19. Шкода,

що ви не побували на виставці. 20. Шкода, що я дізнався про це так пізно. 21. Як шкода, що ми не застали Колю вдома. 22. Вона шкодувала, що не розповіла нам цю історію раніше.

Exercises 7. Translate the sentences using wish

1. Він так змінився! Якби ви його зустріли, ви б його не впізнали. 2. Якби я був на вашому місці, я б порадився з батьками. 3. Якби зараз підійшов трамвай, ми б не запізнилися. 4. Якби він знав, що це вас засмутить, він був би обережніше. 5. Якби ви мені допомогли вирішити цю задачу, я був би вам дуже вдячний. 6. Шкода, що нам раніше не спало на думку пошукати книгу в бібліотеці. Ми б зробили роботу вчасно і зараз були б уже вільні. 7. Шкода, що у нас було так мало уроків. Якби ми більше попрацювали, ми б краще знали мову. 8. Якби він регулярно не відвідувала спортивні тренування, він не домігся б такого успіху на змаганнях. 9. Якби ти попередив мене заздалегідь, я б уже був в Лондоні. 10. Шкода, що вона вже пішла. Якби ти подзвонив раніше, вона була б зараз тут. 11. Якби він був розумнішим, він би не пішов вчора в ліс. 12. Якби вона не надіслала вчора цей лист, мій брат був би зараз вдома. 13. Що б ми зараз робили, якби мама не спекла вчора пиріг? 14. Шкода, що ви не чули музику Рахманінова. Якби ви її чули, ви б знали, який це чудовий композитор. 15. Я впевнений, що всі були б раді, якби вечір відбувся.

Exercises 8. Translate the sentences using wish

1. На жаль, він розчарований. 2. Вона бажала б, аби він був схожий на неї. 3. Шкода, що він нічого не вигадав. 4. Вони б хотіли мати власний будинок. 5. На жаль, вона не вміє плавати. 6. Як би їй хотілося побувати в Італії! 7. Шкода, що вчора увесь день йшов дощ. 8. На жаль, вони не приїдуть. 9. Шкода, що він не розмовляє англійською. 10. Як би йому хотілося стати лікарем! 11. Вона бажала б, аби вечір ніколи не закінчувався. 12. На жаль, він не зміг її побачити. 13. Шкода, що вона не розуміється на живопису. 14. На жаль, телевізор зламався. 15. Вона хотіла б, аби він знову писав вірші. 16. Шкода, що вони не мають автомобіль. 17. На жаль, вони не їздили на море минулого року. 18. Шкода, що він втратив рукавиці. 19. На жаль, вже запізно. 20. Хотілося б, аби вони ніколи не сварилися. 21. Шкода, що вправа така довга. 22. На жаль, він зараз зайнятий. 23. Хотів би він бути схожий на них. 24. Вона б хотіла вмитися з дороги. 25. Шкода, що він не прийшов на збори вчора.

Exercises 9. Translate the sentences using wish

1. Шкода, що вони не змогли погодитися. 2. Я б хотів, аби він погодився. 3. На жаль, вона так мало заробляє. 4. Хотілося б знати, про що вони зараз розмовляють. 5. Шкода, що у нього немає друзів. 6. На жаль, зараз зима. 7. Шкода, що вода була такою холодною. 8. Хотілося б, аби він більше читав. 9. Вона б хотіла, аби вони не помітили її. 10. На жаль, він не зміг порозумітися. 11. Шкода, що крамниці уже зачинені. 12. На жаль, йому не можна ходити на прогулянки. 13. Шкода, що його не було з ними. 14. Хотілося б, аби про неї хтось піклувався. 15. На жаль, вони запізнилися. 16. Вона б хотіла бути молодшою. 17. Шкода, що він пропустив багато занять. 18. На жаль, вони

взагалі не прийшли. 19. Шкода, що він не художник. 20. На жаль, у неї не кучерявиться волосся. 21. Шкода, що вона не встигла сходити до перукарні. 22. Хотілося б, аби вона народила сина. 23. Хотілося б перечитати цю книжку. 24. Шкода, що ви розчаровані. 25. Хотілося б, щоб він поведився пристойно.

Exercises 10. Translate the sentences using wish

1. Шкода, що від нього немає повідомлень. 2. На жаль, сьогодні надто холодно. 3. Шкода, що вони не зустрілися. 4. Шкода, що вони не вступили до університету. 5. Шкода, що вона нікого не знає. 6. На жаль, темніє надто рано. 7. Хотілося б, аби вони мали більше досвіду. 8. На жаль, вони ще нічого не знають. 9. Шкода, що ми не зможемо зустріти Новий рік разом. 10. На жаль, він не має автомобіля. 11. Шкода, що він такий легковажний. 12. Вона шкодує, що послухалася його поради. 13. Він жалкує, що не пішов туди. 14. Хотілося б, аби він зміг сьогодні заснути. 15. Шкода, що у неї висока температура. 16. На жаль, він не був на зустрічі. 17. Шкода, що робота виявилася йому не під силу. 18. На жаль, він ніколи не слухає, що йому кажуть. 19. Шкода, що він не скористався цією можливістю. 20. На жаль, серед її знайомих немає журналістів. 21. Він пожалкував, що привів її з собою. 22. Шкода, що ліфт не працює. 23. На жаль, вона не вміє керувати автомобілем. 24. Шкода, що зустріч закінчилася так швидко. 25. На жаль, сьогодні усі музеї зачинені.

Revision.

Exercise 1. Insert the appropriate form of the Subjunctive Mood. Comment on the form and the use of the Subjunctive Mood. Translate into Ukrainian (conditional sentences).

1. I honestly think it ____ better if we ____ each other for a while. (to be, to see – negative) 2. If you ____ already married, Mr. Clay, I ____ for you. (to be – negative, to wait) 3. Now if only Betty ____ able to come this evening she ____ it. But, of course, she had to choose this evening to go and see her mother.(to be, to do) 4. If he ____ ordinary, I ____ him (to be, to love – negative) 5. And if anything ____ to him, there ____ something in the Press. (to happen, to be) 6. I ____ it a few months ago, Mr. Chapin. (to believe) 7. If I ____ you, I think I ____ very much as you do. (to be, to feel) 8. You first brought your friend into my sister's company, and but for you we ____ never ____ him. (to see) 9. I certainly won't leave you so long as you are in mourning. It ____ most unfriendly. If I ____ in mourning you ____ with me, I suppose. (to be, to be, to stay) 10. He was a power in the College, and ____ in any society; (to be) 11. If you ____ news before morning, ring me up at once. (to have) 12. I like the place. The air suits me. I ____ surprised if I ____ here, (to be – negative, to settle down) 13. There is nothing the Barkers ____ for a few pounds. (to do –negative) 14. Well that wasn't true what she said and, if It ____ that ____, no business of hers. (to be, to be) 15. ";She told me the other day that her heart stopped for five minutes when that horrid nurse was rude to her."; ";Nonsense! She ____ alive now if her heart ____ for five seconds."; (to be – negative, to stop) 16. I think it ____ her so much good to have a short

stroll with you in the Park, Dr. Chasuble. (to do) 17. The story I have to tell _____ never _____ if one day I _____ across the street. (to happen, to walk – negative) 18. ";She is so wretched,"; I told him, ";that she _____ gladly _____ tomorrow morning if it _____ for the baby."; (to die, to be – negative) 19. If I _____ you I _____ abroad again. (to be, to go) 20. ";I think, Edward,"; said Mrs. Dashwood, ";you _____ a happier man if you _____ any profession to engage your time and give an interest to your plans and actions. Some inconvenience to your friends, indeed, might result from it: you _____ able to give them so much of your time."; (to be, to have, to be – negative) 21. Jago was longing for me to say that he ought to be the next Master. A few years before I _____ yes on the spot. (to say) 22. And if I _____ I was going to meet you, I _____ differently. (to know, to dress) 23. If he _____ here, send him to us at once. (to return) 24. I _____ what I am but for him. (to be – negative) 25. ";Why are you talking this rubbish,"; he said, ";and making me talk it too?"; ";If what you say _____ true, women _____ either poisonous or boring!"; (to be, to be) 26. Just think, if I _____ the pictures I _____ a rich woman now. (to buy, to be) 27. Mr. Gresham, this marriage will, at any rate, put an end to your pecuniary embarrassment, unless, indeed, Frank _____ a hard creditor. (to prove) 28. Anyhow, a fire started, and if a young fellow who's working here _____ instantly _____ with an axe, their big storage tank of gasoline _____ in the air and God knows what _____ then. (to set about – negative, to go up, to happen) We all _____ with it. (to go) Honestly, we're all lucky to be alive. If it _____ for this chap, we _____ (to be – negative, to be – negative).

Exercise 2. Translate into English, using the Subjunctive Mood where required (conditional sentences).

1. Ви б відчувала себе краще, якби не лягали спати так пізно (to keep late hours). 2. Ми б не запізнилися на потяг, якби взяли таксі. 3. Ми могли б дійти на каток, якби не було так холодно. 4. Якби вчора не було так холодно, ми, можливо, пішли б на каток. 5. Якби ви не сиділи на протязі (to sit in the draught), ви б не застудилися. 6. Ви б себе добре сьогодні відчували, якби ухвалили вчора ліки. 7. Якби я був на вашому місці, я б більше проводив часу на відкритому повітрі. 8. Ви б краще знали мову, якби прочитали влітку кілька англійських книг. 9. Якщо б не моя хвороба, я б уже закінчив університет. 10. Ви б не розбили вазу, якби були обережні. 11. Ми, можливо, не заблукали б, якби ніч не була такою темною. 12. Я повернуся не пізніше шести, якщо мене не затримають в університеті. 13. Якби не дощ, ми могли б поїхати за місто. 14. Ви були б вже здорові, якби вчасно звернулися до лікаря. 15. Якби не ваша допомога, я б не зміг закінчити вчора роботу. Припустимо, ми були б вільні сьогодні ввечері, куди б ми пішли? 17. У разі, якщо піде дощ, я залишуся вдома. 18. Я б не впав, якби не було так слизько. 19. Якби не таксі, я, можливо, запізнився б на поїзд. 20. Вона ахнула (to moan), похитнулася і напевно б упала, якби Давид не підтримав її. 21. Якби Ендрю міг передбачити цю зустріч, то звичайно б він повернув в сторону (to turn in another direction). 22. Якби він міг чути, що говорили її батьки в цей вечір, якби він міг перенестися на точку зору сім'ї (to put oneself at the point of

view of somebody) і дізнатися, що Кіті буде нещасна, якщо він не одружиться на ній, він би дуже здивувався і не повірив би цьому.

Exercise 5. Translate into English, using the Subjunctive Mood where required.

1. У цьому залі дуже хороша акустика (acoustics); де б ви не сиділи, ви все почуєте. 2. У нас були дуже погані місця; якби акустика в цьому залі не була такою гарною, ми б нічого не почули. 3. Як би він не був зайнятий, він знаходив час ходити в театр. 4. Як він ні зайнятий, він знаходить час ходити в театр. 5. Що б ви не говорили, мені ця п'еса не подобається. 6. Лікар сказав: «Як не слабшав би хворий, його треба оперувати». 7. Якби не операція, хворий, можливо, помер би. 8. Сестра закрила вікно, щоб шум не розбудив хворого. 9. Лікар сказав: «Хворому тепер нічого не загрожує. Але якби сталося так, що у нього знову піднялася температура, зателефонуйте мені негайно». 10. Коли б ви не прийшли до мене, я завжди буду радий вас бачити. 11. Приходьте раніше, щоб я міг показати вам свої книги. 12. Машина зупинилася, щоб туристи подивилися руїни старого монастиря. 13. Якою б темною не була ніч, нам доведеться продовжувати шлях. 14. Якою б темною не була ніч, туристи вирішили продовжувати шлях. 15. Якби не зірки, які так яскраво світили, не було б нічого видно (to be pitch dark). 16. Я приніс вам журнал, щоб ви прочитали цю статтю. 17. Зателефонуйте мені ввечері, як би пізно ви не повернулися додому. 18. Одягніть пальто, щоб не застудитися. 19. Як би він не був схвильований годину тому, зараз він здається абсолютно спокійним. 20. Мені довелося взяти таксі, щоб не запізнитися на потяг.

Exercise 6. Insert the appropriate form of the Subjunctive Mood. Comment on the form and the use of the Subjunctive Mood. Translate into Ukrainian (simple sentences, conditional sentences, adverbial clauses of purpose, concession and comparison, predicative clauses, and subject clauses).

1. She took up her work and began to sew, as if it ____ always ____ her custom to work in this room. (to be) 2. It's important that he ____ what he wants. (to have) 3. Have you realised that though you ____ towns and win battles, you cannot conquer a nation. (to occupy) 4. It was not Sir Edgar's intention that such a remarkable performance ____ (to curtail – passive) 5. You ____ to carry so much weight if you ____ the proper exercise. (to have – negative, to take) 6. Mrs. Strickland was taking her family to the coast of Norfolk, so that the children ____ the sea and her husband golf. (to have) 7. You look as if you ____ toothache. (to have) 8. Then he looked at his hands he looked at them as if he ____ just ____ he had them and ____ yet ____ what they were for. (to discover, to puzzle out – negative) 9. The poor little woman will stand up for her brother, whatever he ____ . (to be) 10. I thought it was necessary that we ____ a short conversation before I left this house. (to have) 11. You are as right as can be and far ____ it from me to tell you otherwise. (to be) 12. He sounded as though he ____ , us to see, ____ himself to see, that he was happy. (to want - negative, to want – negative) 13. I dared not express my anxiety, lest it ____ her offence. (to give) 14. Without his help she ____ never ____ abler to achieve an independent establishment and a

cliente. (to be) 15. After a while she saw Tommy. She went straight towards him, as if she ____ for him all the while. (to look) 16. She had brought the nurse back to attend to Laura, so that all her time ____ for her husband and his mother. (to be) 17. If only he ____ free! (to be) 18. Letters came to her from the family worded with a sort of anxious astonishment that James ____ such a thing happen to him. (to have).

Exercise 7. Translate into English, using the Subjunctive Mood where required.

Based on an episode from *Vanity Fair* by W. Thackeray.

1. Мати Беккі була французенка, і дівчина говорила французькою так, немов вона все життя прожила в Парижі. 2. Коли Беккі було шістнадцять років, друзі її батька зверталися до неї, як до дорослої жінки (як якщо б вона була дорослою жінкою), і часто відмовлялися (to give up) від найвеселіших балів і гулянок (parties), щоб провести з нею вечір. 3. Після смерті батька Беккі переїхала в Чизік (Chiswick), в пансіон міс Пінкертон, яка взяла дівчину для того, щоб вона говорила французькою з її ученицями. 4. Коли міс Пінкертон почула, як Беккі грає на роялі, вона подумала, що було б гарно, щоб дівчина вчила її вихованок також і музиці. 5. Міс Пінкертон ніколи не була добра до Беккі і всіляко (in every way possible) намагалася образити і принизити її. Вона б інакше ставилася до дівчини, якби та була дочкою багатих батьків. 6. «Що б Емілія не говорила, - думала Беккі, - я знаю, що міс Пінкертон ненавидить мене. Вона ніколи не взяла б мене, якби моя робота не була для неї вигідна». 7. Беккі теж ненавиділа міс Пінкертон і ставилася до неї, як до свого ворога (worst enemy). 8. Беккі поїхала б з Чизік, але вона прекрасно розуміла, що для неї дуже важливо отримати гарну освіту. «Якою б нещасною я б не почувалася б у міс Пінкертон, мені доведеться деякий час тут залишатися», - думала Беккі. 9. Як не вигідна була для міс Пінкертон робота Беккі, вона вирішила, нарешті, що буде краще, якщо дівчина поїде з Чизік. Вона розуміла, що для того, щоб Беккі не зробила поганого впливу на її учениць, їм краще розлучитися. 10. Коли Беккі висловила бажання, щоб міс Пінкертон знайшла їй місце гувернантки, та негайно знайшла таке місце і таким чином позбулася дівчини.

Exercise 8. Insert the appropriate form of the Subjunctive Mood. Comment on the form and the use of the Subjunctive Mood. Translate into Ukrainian (object clauses, attributive clauses, sentences with the emotional should).

1. Strange that so simple a thing ____ birth to beautiful delight. (to give) 2. I wish I ____ what has frightened you so. (to know) 3. I hate telephones. I wish I ____ never ____ one put in. (to have) 4. When we had sat for an hour or so, she insisted that we ____ all ____ to the restaurant below and have supper. (to go) 5. That they ____ before nine o'clock to see him off was astounding. (to arise) 6. It's time I ____ a new leaf. (to turn over) 7. Oh! I am so ill! so miserable! Oh, I wish I ____ dead. (to be) 8. Apart from his awe, and his concern that the tent ____ up, Goldstein was watching the storm with a fascinated interest. (to remain) 9. I proposed that we ____ all ____ and eat ices in the park. (to go) 10. I wish Fleur

_____ seriously to water-colour work. (to take) 11. Why _____ people _____ with others like that? (to interfere) 12. I appreciate your coming, yet in a way I wish you _____. (to come – negative) 13. I suggest that he _____ home for a while. (to go) 14. I wish I _____ your talent. (to have) 15. It seemed unbearable to him that she _____. (to suffer) 16. I thought also of Field him-self, of his easy charm, of his genuine desire that all _____ happy so long as it involved no inconvenience to himself. (to be) 17. Soon I said that it was time I _____ home. (to go) 18. She wished he _____ pestering her with this sort of reminder. (to stop) 19. ";I demand,"; says the small man, ";that you _____ with me."; (to come) 20. ";I want to be treated with respect,"; Miss Zelinka wailed. ";I was brought up in a good family, why _____ I _____ with respect?"; (to treat – negative, passive)

Exercise 9. Translate into English, using the Subjunctive Mood (object clauses and attributive clauses, emotional “should”).

1. Як шкода, що йде дощ. Я б хотів, щоб була хороша погода, тоді ми могли б поїхати за місто. 2. Я чув, що ви дуже добре граєте на роялі. Я б хотів, щоб ви пограли мені. 3. Мені шкода, що він не приїхав до мене на канікули! Йому давно пора подивитися це прекрасне місто. 4. Погода була така погана, що я пошкодував, що вийшов з дому. 5. Хотілося б мені, щоб ви не були таким розсіяним і не ставили одне і те ж питання кілька разів. 6. У дитини дуже хороший слух (to have a good ear for music). Шкода, що його не вчать музиці. Його давно пора віддати в музичну школу. 7. Хотілося би мені, щоб ви не перебивали мене кожну хвилину. 8. Мені дуже шкода, що я це сказав; мені здається, що він образився на моє зауваження. 9. Я пошкодував, що у мене не було часу, і я не міг піти з ними в Ермітаж. 10. Я б хотів, щоб ви побули зі мною. 11. Як шкода, що я не взяв участі в цій екскурсії; кажуть, вона була дуже цікава. 12. Я б хотів, щоб ви тримали свої речі в порядку. 13. Я відчуваю себе дуже погано. Боюся, як би мені не захворіти. 14. Було дуже пізно, і ми боялися, як би нам не запізнитися на потяг. 15. Погода була дуже гарна, і я запропонував поїхати за місто і провести день на свіжому повітрі. 16. Простежте за тим, щоб студентів сповістили про зміну розкладу. 17. Нам дуже хочеться (to be anxious), щоб ви взяли участь у концерті. 18. Він хотів одразу ж піти, але я наполягав, щоб він зняв пальто і випив чашку чаю. 19. Уже пізно, нам пора йти (to be off). 20. Вам давно пора повернути книгу в бібліотеку. 21. «А ви його любите?» - "Він хороша людина; чому ж мені його не любити?» 22. Не розумію, навіщо тобі потрібно мучити мене? 23. Ні, чому ж тобі не приїхати? Дружина чекає тебе. Будь ласка, приїжджай. 24. Чому ж таки не спробувати свого щастя? (to try one's luck).

Exercise 11. Translate into English, using the Subjunctive Mood and modal verbs where required.

(A) Based on an episode from Jane Eyre by Ch. Bronte.

1. «У неї такий вигляд, ніби вона маленька фея, як ніби вона прийшла сюди з казкової країни (the fairy land)», - подумав містер Рочестер, коли побачив Джейн в перший раз. 2. «Дивно, що вони прийшли сюди, - подумала Джейн, побачивши в церкві незнайомців. - Вони, може, чули, що містер Рочестер збирається одружитися. Так, мабуть, чули». 3. Коли один з

незнайомців зажадав, щоб шлюб було перервано (to break off the ceremony), містер Рочестер здригнувся, немов перед ним розверзлася (to open) прірву. 4. Священик сказав, що неможливо, щоб місіс Рочестер всі ці роки жила в Торнфільд. «Не може бути, щоб вона жила тут стільки років. Ми б давно почули про це », - зауважив він. 5. Джейн пошкодувала, що приїхала в Торнфільд. «Було б краще, якби я ніколи не бачила містера Рочестера», - думала вона. 6. Містер Рочестер розумів, що скільки б він не вмовляв Джейн, вона не залишиться з ним. Він шкодував, що обманював дівчину. «Я повинен був сказати їй, що я одружений», - думав він. 7. Джейн пішла з Торнфільд вночі, так як хотіла (to be anxious), щоб ніхто не дізнався, куди вона йде. 8. «Як ми були б зараз щасливі, якби Джейн не покинула мене», - думав містер Рочестер. 9. Джейн не могла забути дня, який повинен був бути днем її весілля (wedding day) і який закінчився так трагічно.

(B) Based on a fairy-tale.

Сестри Попелюшки (Cinderella) зверталися до неї так, наче вона була їх служницею. «Як шкода, що я не можу догодити (to please) сестрам, - не раз думала Попелюшка. - Як би я не старалася догодити їм, вони завжди незадоволені (to find fault with somebody) ». Одного разу було оголошено (to announce), що в королівському палаці має відбутися великий бал. Всім дуже хотілося піти туди. Сестри Попелюшки були запрошені, але Попелюшка так і не отримала запрошення. «Як шкода, що мене не запросили! - думала бідна дівчина. - Як шкода, що я не зможу побачити юного принца! Який він, мабуть, гарний! А що, якщо я попрошу сестер взяти мене на бал? Ні, марно навіть і намагатися. Вони мене не візьмуть, хоча б я благала їх про це цілий день ».

Нарешті настав день, коли сестри Попелюшки повинні були поїхати на бал. Попелюшку довелося багато працювати, причісуючи сестер і намагаючись зробити їх якомога красивіше. Увечері сестри поїхали, і Попелюшка залишилася одна. «Які вони щасливі, - думала Попелюшка, сидячи біля каміна. - Якби у мене була гарна сукня, я б теж могла поїхати на бал». В цю хвилину з'явилася її хрещена мати і сказала: «У тебе буде гарна сукня. Ти підеш на бал. Але пам'ятай: як би ти не веселилася (to enjoy oneself), ти не повинна залишатися в палаці після півночі».

Попелюшка в своїй чарівній сукні, яка точно (виглядала так, немов) була виткана з місячних променів (moonbeams), увійшла (to step) в карету. Вона ніколи не бачила такої гарної карети. Що стосується кучера, то він був просто чудовий; він точно (виглядав так, немов) ніколи і не був щуром. Коли Попелюшка приїхала до палацу, король подумав, що це, мабуть, якась іноземна принцеса. Вона тримала себе так, наче все життя прожила в королівському палаці. Попелюшка забула наказ хрещеної і залишилася на балу після півночі. Ледве вона встигла вибігти з палацу, як знову перетворилася в бідну Попелюшку. «Як шкода, що я не послухалася моєї доброї хрещеної матері. Якби я не залишилася в палаці після півночі, я б зараз їхала (to drive) в кареті в своєму чарівному плаття ».

Юний Принц всюди шукав Попелюшку, але її ніде не можна було знайти. «Де може бути ця прекрасна принцеса? - думав він. - Невже вона втрачена для мене назавжди (to be lost to somebody)? Я боюся, що, скільки б я не шукав, я не зможу її знайти».

Принц наказав, щоб всі дівчата в місті приміряли (to try on) кришталевий черевичок (glass slipper), який втратила Попелюшка. Він думав, що таким чином він, може бути, знайде прекрасну принцесу. Багато дівчат намагалися надіти черевичок, щоб вийти заміж за юного принца. Коли прийшла черга Попелюшки приміряти черевичок, сестри стали сміятися над нею. Але черевичок вліз на ногу Попелюшки з найбільшою легкістю (to slip on with the greatest ease), і з жахом (dismay) сестри дізналися в дівчині прекрасну принцесу, яку вони бачили на балу. Вони пошкодували, що погано поводитися з Попелюшкою.

3. THE INFINITIVE

The verb has finite and non-finite forms. The non-finite forms of the verb are called verbals. The verbals do not express person, number or mood. They cannot be used as the predicate of the sentence. The verbals have tense and voice distinctions. There are three verbals in English: the participle, the gerund and the infinitive. The form of a verbal does not show whether the action it denotes refers to the present, past or future. It shows only whether the action expressed by the verbal is simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb or prior to it.

The infinitive developed from the verbal noun; that is why it has nominal and verbal character.

The nominal features of the infinitive refer to its syntactic functions. The infinitive can be used:

1. As the subject of a sentence - e.g. To sleep well is important.
2. as a predicative – e.g. My wish is to visit London.
3. as an object – e.g. I want to see you once more. We make a negative with not + Infinitive: e.g. I tried not to look at her.

The verbal features of the infinitive are as follows:

1. the infinitive of transitive verbs can take a direct object. e.g. I want to watch this film. We did our best to win the game
2. the infinitive can be modified by an adverb e.g. You have to learn carefully. He was heard to shout loudly.
3. the infinitive has tense and aspect distinctions. The infinitive of transitive verbs has also voice distinctions.

The Split Infinitive. In informal English we sometimes put an adverb between to and the infinitive. This is known as —split infinitive: e.g. The doctor started to carefully remove the bandages.

Exercise 1. Point out the Infinitives in the sentences:

1. John cannot afford to buy another house in Vancouver.
2. It's terrible to go camping today.
3. He wanted his wife to do all the housework.
4. We were too tired to play another game.
5. She appears to be sick today.
6. The librarian asked

us to leave because we were too loud. 7. The stores ship was the next to be lost. 8. There were serious recriminations about that, I can tell you. 9. How do you turn catastrophe into art? Nowadays the process is automatic. 10. Amanda knew him well enough to suspect that he might be bluffing. 11. It would be just like him. 12. On this prediction the doctor and the death-watch beetle had managed to agree. 13. For a while, I thought they would just forget about me, and that I'd be able to live out my days like most fugitives here. 14. Nikos thought himself to be a very rational man. 15. Nikos was waiting for something bad to happen to him. 16. I could swim when I was six. 17. The buyers want to know our terms of payment. 18. This is for you to decide. 19. The plan of our work will be discussed at the meeting to be held on May 25. 20. To walk in the garden was a pleasure. 21. Jane remembered to have been told a lot about Mr. Smith. 22. I felt him put his hand on my shoulder. 23. This writer is said to have written a new novel. 24. She seems to be having a good time at the seaside. 25. They watched the boy cross the street. 26. To advertise in magazines is very expensive. 27. He proved to be one of the cleverest students at our Institute. 28. He knew himself to be strong enough to take part in the expedition. 29. To see is to believe. 30. He is sure to enjoy himself at the disco. 31. To tell you the truth, this company has a very stable position in the market. 32. I called every morning to see if there was any news. 33. We stopped to have a smoke. 34. He came here to speak to me, not to you. 35. The car was waiting at the door to take them to the station. 36. To explain the problem he drew diagrams all over the blackboard. 37. To meet the increased demand for industrial goods, a great number of new shops have been opened in the towns.

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks using the correct form: watch, stay, turn, do, speak, go, play, take, look, apologize, go, lie, speak, talk, work, have, smile, come

1. Where did you learn _____ English? 2. I plan _____ to England next year. 3. What do you want _____ this weekend? 4. I want _____ a movie this weekend. 5. She forgot _____ off the stove. 6. Because it was raining, he decided _____ at home. 7. We were asked _____ with the baby. 8. The doctor told me _____ vitamins. 9. He hopes _____ home soon. 10. He agreed _____ together. 11. They like _____ English. 12. He decided _____ there. 13. He crossed the room _____ at the picture. 14. She hates _____. 15. He made her _____. 16. Where are you going _____ dinner? 17. He stopped _____ to her. 18. I want _____ to him.

Exercise 3. Change the sentences as in the example:

Example: It is simple to solve this problem. — This problem is simple to solve. It is difficult to speak to such people. — Such people are difficult to speak to.

1. It is expensive to buy a mink coat. 2. It is impossible to get a good dinner in our canteen. 3. It was difficult to start an engine in such cold weather. 4. It is dangerous to stand on this ladder. 5. It is rather difficult to deal with stubborn people. 6. It is dangerous to drive a car in big cities. 7. It is interesting to meet new

people. 8. It is simple to communicate with people due to Internet. 9. It was unpleasant to watch their quarrel. 10. It is always funny to listen to him.

Exercise 4. Translate into English using different forms of infinitives as the subject of the sentence.

1. Зробити таку пропозицію цій відомій людині було б для мене просто неможливо. 2. Те, що його запросили на прийом до мера, було абсолютно несподіваним. 3. Із твоєї сторони було б нерозумно сперечатися з батьками через такі дріб'язки. 4. Чітко визначити мету, що ти хочеш досягти, означає зробити перший крок до успіху. 5. Провести цілий день у порожньому будинку виявилось не такою вже нудною справою. 6. Було б доцільно ще раз перевірити усе обладнання. 7. Купити найсучасніший комп'ютер і не вміти його використовувати було насправді прикро. 8. Продати будинок за таку низьку ціну було б смішно. 9. Провести вихідні з вудкою на березі річки було для нього звичайною справою. 10. Програти вибори всупереч всім зусиллям, що ми зробили, було б просто жахливо. 11. Послати йому термінову телеграму був єдиний вихід попередити його про небезпеку. 12. Те, що ти згадала ім'я містера Стайла в присутності господарки дома, бути дуже нетактовно із твоєї сторони. 13. Заробляти гроші на старому містері Фоксе було те ж саме, що грабувати дитину. 14. Довести старших сестер до сліз було улюбленою розвагою Денні. 15. Критикувати кого-небудь за його спиною – легко; спробуйте зробити це, дивлячись йому в очі. 16. Покладатися на містера Свіфта - марна трата сил і часу. 17. Вивчити всі теми напам'ять і все-таки провалитися на іспиті - це було вже занадто. 18. Те, що з нею поводитися як з справжньою леді, було повною несподіванкою для Елізи. 19. Не йдіть. Залишатися зараз одному - для мене справжня мука. 20. Забути минуле для неї зовсім неможливо, вона живе лише ним. 21. Побачити Лондон і померти - це все, про що мріяв герой одного з романів цього письменника. 22. Сприймати його серйозно, а потім зрозуміти, що він увесь час жартував над вами, було боляче й прикро. 23. Усе зрозуміти, значить - усе простити. Але як може мати пробачити вбивцю своїх дітей? 24. Те, що його назвали талановитим студентом, було надзвичайно приємно. 25. Зробити таку блискучу кар'єру, і зруйнувати її в один день таким невдалим шлюбом, це чи не вершина дурості? 26. Справа здавалася цілком безнадійною. Знайти дитину в Чикаго було однаково, що шукати голку в стозі сіна. 27. Палити шкідливо для здоров'я. Цей факт був давно доведений наукою. Дивно, що так багато людей усе ще продовжують палити. 28. Дотримувати дієти цілком необхідно, це не модний каприз, а здоровий спосіб життя. 29. Забувати про своїх предків - значить бути деревом без коріння. 30. Не знати мови країни, у якій ти перебуваєш, може бути небезпечним для життя.

Exercise 5. Translate into English using different forms of infinitives as the subject of the sentence.

1. Навіщо читати таку нудну книгу? Візьміть оцю, ви від неї не відірветесь. 2. Чому б не порахувати скільки грошей у нас залишилося? Тоді в нас буде ясна картина того, що ми можемо собі дозволити. 3. У нас ще

залишилося багато часу, чому б не випити чаю? 4. Навіщо вдягати дитину так тепло в таку жарку погоду? Він спітніє й застудиться. 5. Навіщо засмучуватися через такі дрібниці? Заспокойтеся, все буде добре. 6. Чому б нам не подарувати хлопчикові на день народження справжнього поні? Мені здається, він буде щасливий. 7. Навіщо відмовлятися від такої пропозиції зараз? Ми завжди можемо це зробити. Давай спочатку все гарненько обміркуємо. 8. Чому б зараз не відпочити? Я впевнений, ми встигнемо все зробити до вечора. 9. Навіщо сваритися з такою впливовою людиною? Якщо ти зіпсуєш з ним стосунки зараз, ти ніколи не зможеш звернутися до нього по допомогу. 10. Чому б не з'їздити на вихідні за місто? Ми давно як треба не відпочивали. 11. Щоб я сама перша запросила його на побачення? Ніколи! 12. Щоб я повірила в ці нісенітниці!? Напевно, ти забув, з ким маєш справу. 13. Чому б не приготувати щось смачненьке? Мене вже нудить від яєчні. 14. Щоб ти, з усіх моїх друзів, зрадив мене!? Як я міг так в тобі помилятися! Напевно, я був сліпий. 15. Навіщо повертатися до питання, що вже обговорювалося десятки разів? Час вже переходити до практичних дій. 16. Напевно, гаманець випав з сумки, коли ти збиралася до крамниці. Чому б нам разом не пошукати його? 17. Щоб я не зміг зробити цю роботу вчасно!? Навіть якби мені довелося провести декілька безсонних ночей, я б тебе не розчарував. 18. Ти виглядаєш такою засмученою, начебто в світі не залишилося нічого гарного. Чому б не розважитися? Відвідати цирк було б непоганою ідеєю. 19. Люба, навіщо готувати вечерю, якщо ми можемо відвідати моїх батьків? Матуся була б щаслива зустріти нас смачним ірландським рагу – її фірмовою стравою. 20. Невже ти вагаєшся щодо цієї пропозиції? Щоб ти відмовився від такої блискучої кар'єри!? Неймовірно. Ніколи не подумала б, що ти такий боягуз.

THE FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Indefinite	to discuss	to be discussed
Continuous	to be discussing	-
Perfect	to have discussed	to have been discussed
Perfect Continuous	to have been discussing	-

The Indefinite Infinitive expresses an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb. It may refer to the present, past or future.

e.g. I was glad to see you. I am glad to see you. I'll be glad to see you tomorrow.

The Continuous Infinitive denotes an action simultaneous with that expressed by the finite verb, but it is an action in progress. e.g. He happened to be standing round the corner.

The Perfect Infinitive denotes an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb. e.g. I'm glad to have met you. We were satisfied to have done the preparations beforehand The church is said to have been built two centuries ago.

N.B! After to mean, to expect, to intend, to hope used in the Past Indefinite, the Perfect Infinitive shows that the hope or intention was not carried out. e.g. I hoped to have met you (but we didn't meet) = I had hoped to meet you.

The Perfect Continuous Infinitive denotes an action which lasted a certain time before the action of the finite verb. e.g. He seems to have been sleeping all day long.

The infinitive of transitive verbs has the Active and the Passive voice. e.g. There is nothing to lose. There is nothing to be lost.

Exercise 6. Define the form of the Infinitive:

a. A man must have something to believe in. b. The house is going to be repaired in July. c. The boy is said to be reading in the library now. d. The poem is considered to have been written in the 18th century. e. I'm very glad to have done the work yesterday. Today I can have a rest. f. He turned out to have been living in Ivano-Frankivsk for 10 years. g. We made the list of the things to be taken. h. To come back home was their only wish. i. He seems to have been sleeping all day long. j. We were given the task to be done by tomorrow. k. She is considered to be engaged to him. l. He is said to have been asked to participate.

Exercise 7. Translate the sentences:

1. Їй не подобається запізнюватися. 2. Він не втратить нагоду погуляти. 3. Книжку скоро видрукують. 4. Приємно подорожувати у гарній компанії. 5. Вона прикидалася, що читає. 6. Він радий, що може допомогти. 7. Вони хочуть, аби їм зателефонували. 8. Вони мають намір поїхати. 9. Я не планував витратити стільки грошей. 10. Неможливо працювати у спеку. 11. Він не зможе перекласти статтю. 12. Хто змусив його заговорити? 13. Не дозволяйте командувати собою. 14. Вона просила прислухатися. 15. Він порадив не починати. 16. Він був здивований зустріти її тут. 17. Він навчив її співати. 18. Вона не знала, як реагувати. 19. Вони не боялися запізнитися. 20. Він намагатиметься не забути нічого. 21. Було б гарно поїхати за місто. 22. Їм подобається плавати. 23. Вони спостерігали, як злетів літак. 24. Вона не знає, як сказати йому про це. 25. Він розуміє, що до цього важко пристосуватися. 26. Скільки потрібно часу, щоб зробити це? 27. Він прикинувся, що бачив цей фільм раніше. 28. До того, як мені виповниться сорок, я хочу вже написати книгу. 29. Якби я знала, що ти прийдеш, я б спекла пиріг. 30. Хтось мусив розбити вікно і проліз всередину. 31. Я планувала (to mean) відправити листа поштою, але я забула. 32. Я радий, що знайшов цю роботу. 33. Трапилося так, що вона була свідком пограбування.

Exercise 8. Insert the correct form of the infinitive:

1. (do) it was silly of you. 2. We are happy (meet) our old friends yesterday. 3. Take an umbrella (not get) wet through. 4. The coach is said (be) a very strict person. 5. By the next week they'll (finish) painting those rooms. 6. She is said (leave) the day before. 7. This letter must (type). 8. He happened (sit) next to us. 9. Ask her (not make) so much noise. 10. The room seems (clean) already.

Exercise 9. Translate into English paying special attention to infinitives in the function of the predicative.

1. Мрією Марії завжди було отримати гарну освіту. 2. Наш план полягав у тому, щоб непомітно проникнути в будинок і знайти потрібні документи. 3. Моя порада - не втручатися в цю справу, наслідки можуть бути найнесподіванішими. 4. Єдине, що дівчина могла зробити в цій ситуації, це сказати правду. 5. Найкраще, що ми можемо зараз зробити, нікому нічого не говорити про цю справу. 6. Обов'язок учителя - дати знання; обов'язок учня - ці знання взяти. 7. Усе, що Джон хотів зробити в той момент - бути якнайдалі від кабінету директора школи. 8. Його наміром було якомога швидше позбутися коня й сховатися у великому місті так, щоб його ніхто не знайшов. 9. Найменше, що ми могли для нього зробити - це дати йому ще один шанс. 10. Правилком у тій школі, де Пітеру довелося вчитися, було ніколи не задавати вчителям питань, навіть якщо учень зовсім не розумів пояснення вчителя. 11. Я б не радив вам розповідати Джейсону, як усе сталося. Сказати йому правду - значить зробити його своїм ворогом. 12. Що дійсно було важко зробити - це змусити обвинувачуваного визнати свою провину. Він усе заперечував, незважаючи на велику кількість доказів. 13. Найбільша проблема мешканців пустелі в найжаркіші місяці - знайти воду. 14. Чиї вірші тобі легше вчити напам'ять: Тараса Шевченка або Івана Франка? 15. На цю жінку завжди приємно дивитися; вона елегантно одягається, і в неї завжди гарна зачіска. 16. Мій принцип – ставиться до оточуючих так, як ти хочеш, щоб ставилися до тебе. Бути порядною людиною набагато складніше, ніж можна собі уявити. 17. Його метод полягає в тому, щоб активізувати скриті здібності дитини. Вчасно роздивитися схильності дитини – забезпечити її всебічний розвиток. 18. Мета даного дослідження полягає у встановленні закономірностей коливання курсу національної валюти в умовах кризи. – Чому б не порівняти фінансову ситуацію у декількох країнах? 19. Цю домовленість легко досягти, але набагато складніше виконати. На твоєму місці я б пошукав інші шляхи вирішення проблеми. 20. Ризик подібної експедиції – потрапити у несприятливі погодні умови, наприклад, у хуртовину. Що ми можемо зробити у зв'язку з цим – це забезпечити відповідне спорядження. 21. Якби не аварія, ми б дісталися аеропорту вчасно. Тепер нам залишається лише сподіватися, що ми зможемо обміняти квитки. – Шкода, що ви запізнилися на літак, але це просто щастя, що ніхто не постраждав. 22. Бути начальником означає не тільки отримувати більшу зарплату, але й нести більшу відповідальність. Якби тільки усі це розуміли! 23. В мої обов'язки входить вести кореспонденцію та приймати телефонні дзвінки. Ніколи б не подумала, що буду займатися цим після закінчення університету. 24. Не дати їй можливість брати участь у конкурсі краси означає розбити всі її мрії; а дозволити це означає розбити мрії її батьків, які хочуть бачити свою доньку хірургом, а не моделлю. 25. Слухати цього професора – справжнє задоволення. Його лекції легко зрозуміти навіть першокурсникам, хоча він розповідає про дуже складні явища.

Exercise 10. Translate into English paying special attention to the form of infinitives in compound verbal modal predicates.

1. Вам варто було б взяти до уваги всі деталі цієї справи, коли питання обговорювалося вперше. 2. Все життя хлопчика може бути зіпсоване, якщо ви його зараз же звідси не відвезете. 3. Якби містер Грей не втрутився, молоді люди, можливо, посварилися б назавжди. 4. Ви, певно, багато чого побачили в житті, хоча ви порівняно молоді. 5. Ти могла б подзвонити й сказати, що затримуєшся. Ми так хвилювалися! 6. Це мало трапитися. Цьому нещастю ніхто не міг запобігти. 7. Піди і приведи Марту. Вона, мабуть, працює в саду з ранку й дуже втомилася. 8. Ти бачив Пилипа? - Ні. Він, мабуть, мисє свою машину на задньому дворі. 9. Де ти був? Всі гості вже зібралися. Ми тебе чекаємо вже, мабуть, чверть години. Що-небудь трапилось? 10. Мабуть, Стівенсони говорили про мене щось неприємне. Коли я підійшла, вони обоє зніяковіло посміхнулися й відразу ж заговорили про погоду. 11. Джордж Вашингтон не любив людей, які спізнювалися. Одного разу його секретар прийшов, коли президент уже працював у своєму кабінеті. Секретар дуже зніяковів і сказав, що його підвів годинник. Президент суворо подивився на свого помічника й відповів: «Ви повинні або купити іншого годинника, або шукати іншу роботу». 12. Квіти не зв'яли б, як би ти їх вчасно полив. Треба було зробити це ще два дні тому. Ти міг би бути більш уважним! Невже ти не бачив, що земля зовсім суха? 12. У місті була епідемія грипу, тож він мав просидіти у поліклініці декілька годин. Дивно, що він не підчепив там ще якусь хворобу. 13. У кімнаті було душно, але як Джим не намагався, вікно не відчинялося. Напевно, ніхто не торкався його декілька років. 14. Хоча вона ледь зводить кінці з кінцями, Ганна не насмілюється попросити підвищення зарплати. 15. Якби ти дотримувався інструкції, фен, можливо, на зламався б так швидко. – Та я його навіть не торкався! Навіщо обвинувачувати мене без усякої причини? 16. Вони мають вирушити в круїз через тиждень. Можливо, я теж приєднаюся до них, якщо зможу отримати двотижневу відпустку. 17. Очевидно, вона так гарно виглядає, тому що змогла обрати правильний режим харчування та фізичних навантажень. – Тобі теж потрібно краще дбати про своє здоров'я. 18. Яка ти неуважна! Цю вправу не треба було робити письмово, її треба було просто продивитись. Невже ти не чула, що казав вчитель? 19. Якби не зливи у липні, врожай зернових міг би бути набагато кращим. Сподіваюсь, нам не доведеться покупати пшеницю за кордоном. 20. Мейбел мала зробити доповідь ще вчора, але захворіла і не прийшла на семінар. – Напевно, знову з'їла п'ять порцій морозива. Це так на неї схоже! 21. Ти будеш звільнений, якщо насмілишся ще раз не вийти на роботу. Скільки можна терпіти твою безвідповідальність? 22. Як ти могла купити такий кумедний капелюшок? Треба було з кимось порадитись. Тепер ти станеш посміховиськом всієї школи! 23. Він знову і знову приходив до театру, щоб насолодитися виступом своїх улюблених акторів. Скільки ж грошей він, напевно, витратив на квитки! 24. Ти ж знав, що він хворий. Ти міг би хоча б зателефонувати йому, якщо не зміг знайти часу, щоб відвідати його. 25. Не може бути, що вона не принесла підручник! Вона мала прийти ще о дев'ятій. Як я могла повірити їй!? Напевно, стала занадто довірливою!

3.1. THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF THE INFINITIVE

- The Infinitive as the Subject. When the Infinitive is used as the Subject, it is usually placed after the predicate and the sentence is introduced by the introductory it. However the Infinitive in this function can occur at the beginning of the sentence too. e.g. It is very hard to work under such conditions. To collect all this information for such a short period of time would be completely impossible!

- As a part of the Compound Predicate.

- 1) Part of the Compound Nominal Predicate. e.g. Her ambition was to become an actress The plan was to go to the dean.

Note: There is an interesting model where both the subject and the predicate are expressed by the Infinitive. e.g. To love is to believe. To know is to understand.

- 2) Part of the Compound Verbal Modal Predicate (after modal verbs, modal expressions, verbs expressing modality: to hope, to expect, to want...) e.g. You should have told me about it yesterday. May I join you?

- 3) Part of the Compound Verbal Aspect Predicate (after verbs expressing the beginning, the duration, or the end of an action) e.g. She began to cry. He continued to live with his parents after he finished school.

- As an object. e.g. I hate to ask people such questions. We decided to change the subject of the discussion. Note: Sometimes the introductory object it is used. e.g. He found it difficult to spot her in the crowd.

- As an attribute after: a) abstract and class nouns: e.g. There is no place to sit down; It's a nice book to read before sleeping; b) indefinite pronouns: e.g. I've no one to talk to; c) ordinal numerals: e.g. He was the first to come; d) last: e.g. The captain was the last to leave the ship

THE INFINITIVE AS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

1. an adverbial modifier of purpose / manner
2. an adverbial modifier of result or consequence
3. an adverbial modifier of comparison / manner
4. an adverbial modifier of subsequent events
5. an adverbial modifier of exception
6. an adverbial modifier of condition
7. an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances
8. an adverbial modifier of time

Study the tables below to find information about the use of the infinitive in this function.

1. Adverbial Modifier of Purpose (Manner)

Characteristic Features	Questions	Conjunctions
Sometimes has an additional meaning of an adverbial modifier of manner.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What for? • For what purpose? • How? • In what way? • By what means? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • so as • in order to • as if • as though

Note 1: Sometimes the infinitive in this function has an additional meaning of manner.

• My friend thinks he will go to Britain (*for what purpose?*) to improve his English. = Мій друг думає, що він поїде у Великобританію для того, щоб поліпшити свою англійську.

• To occupy her mind (*what for?*), she took the job offered to her. = Для того, щоб зайняти свої думки, вона узялася за роботу, що їй запропонували.

• A lot of girls like to keep diaries (*what for?*) in order to share their secrets with some anonymous reader. = Багато дівчат люблять вести щоденники для того, щоб довірити свої секрети анонімному читачеві.

• Mary turned away (*what for?*) so as to hide her tears. = Мери відвернулася, щоб сховати свої сльози.

• Then she turned down (*what for?/ in what manner?*) as if to look at the flowers. = Потім вона відвернулася нібито для того, щоб подивитися на квіти.

• The mother's lips moved as if to warn her son about something. – Губи матері ворухнулися, начебто вона хотіла попередити свого сина про щось.

• The professor shook his head as though to show that he was dissatisfied. – Професор похитав головою, начебто він хотів показати, що він був незадоволений.

Note 2: Don't confuse the infinitive in the function of purpose with the infinitive in the function of the subject.

Compare

Subject	Adverbial Modifier of Purpose
(What?) <u>To occupy your mind</u> while you are ill is very important.	She did some mental calculations (what for?) <u>to occupy her mind</u> . (What for?) <u>To occupy her mind</u> she did some mental calculations.

Adverbial Modifier of Result or Consequence

Characteristic Features	Questions	Used with:
It is used to denote an action which becomes possible or impossible due to some action or state expressed by the words it refers to.	No identifying questions.	<u>Adverbs of degree:</u> • too • enough • such as <u>Conjunctions:</u> “not so ... as”

• The apples are not ripe enough to eat. (The apples are not ripe yet; as a result you can't eat them.) = Яблука недостатньо спілі, щоб їх їсти.

• We are too clever to believe him. (We are clever; as a result we do not believe him. = Ми занадто розумні, щоб повірити йому.

• Mary was too busy to see anyone. (= Mary was busy; as a result she did not see anyone.) Мери була занадто зайнята, щоб бачити кого-небудь.

• The book was too primitive for me to read it even on holiday. = Книга була занадто примітивна для мене, щоб я міг читати її навіть у відпустці.

•His manner was such as to offend nearly everyone he met. = Його поведінка була такою, що він кривдив усіх, з ким він зустрічався.

•My new boss was so kind as to help me. –Мій новий начальник був настільки добрий, що допоміг мені закінчити цей звіт.

•This judge is not such a fool as to believe that you are innocent. –Цей суддя не настільки дурний, щоб повірити, що ви невинні.

•I am not so stupid as to believe that. (very formal) = Я не настільки дурний, щоб повірити цьому.

Note the absence of a *pronoun* in the second part of the sentence in the first example; it differs from Ukrainian sentences. So it will be **wrong** to say ‘The apples are not ripe enough to eat them.’ - Яблука недостатньо спілі, щоб їх їсти.

Adverbial Modifier of Comparison

Characteristic Features	Conjunction
No identifying questions	than

•George knew his uncle better than to ask him questions. = Джордж знав свого дядька занадто добре, щоб задавати йому питання.

•Georgina knew better than to trust Val. = Джорджина була не настільки дурна, щоб довіряти Велу.

•To give is more blessed than to receive. (Gerund is also possible in this case, e.g. Giving is more blessed than receiving.) = Блаженний той, хто дає, а не той, хто одержує.

Adverbial Modifier of Subsequent Events

Characteristic Features	Combinability	Particle s
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The infinitive denotes an action that actually takes place after the action denoted by the predicate) • No identifying questions. 	<p>1. The infinitive in this function is often found after the following notional verbs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •to come (back); to return •to run; to rush •to leave; to drive away •to get to (some place) •to arrive in/at <p>2. The infinitive itself is usually expressed by the following verbs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •to find; to discover •to see; to hear; to feel •to appear/to disappear •to emerge/to sink •to understand/to realize •to die 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • only • just • simply • merely

•Jane was driven away, never to come back. (She was driven away and never came back.) = Джейн відвезли, і їй не призначено було повернутися.

• I am sorry to have raised your expectations only to disappoint you. (= I raised your expectations and by doing that only disappointed you.) = Мені шкода, що я дала вам надію, тільки для того, щоб знову розчарувати вас.

• Soames arrived at three o'clock to hear that Fleur had gone out with the car at ten. (He arrived and heard.) = Сомс приїхав тільки для того, щоб довідатися, що Флер виїхала на машині о десятій.

• Ted came down one morning to find his wife very excited. (He came down and found.) = Одного ранку Том спустився вниз і знайшов свою дружину в дуже збудженому стані.

• He came home only to find it empty. (He came and found.) = Він прийшов додому тільки для того, щоб побачити, що там нікого немає.

Adverbial Modifier of Exception

Characteristic Features	Questions	Prepositions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is generally used in negative and interrogative sentences to show that the action is the only possible one in the given situation. • Only bare infinitive! • Rather old-fashion and bookish. 	Except what?	but except

• I had nothing to do (except what?) but wait. = Мені нічого не залишалось робити крім того, як чекати.

• What could he do (except what?) but submit? = Що він ще міг зробити крім того, як підкоритися.

• There was nothing to do (except what?) except turn back home. = Нічого не залишалось робити крім того, як повернути додому.

• What could he do (except what?) but forgive her? = Що він ще міг зробити крім того, як простити її?

• The girl couldn't help (except what?) but smile in return. = Дівчина не могла не посміхнутися у відповідь. (= Їй нічого не залишалось робити крім того, як посміхнутися у відповідь.)

Adverbial Modifier of Condition

Characteristic Features	Questions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not follow any conjunctions or prepositions. • Is used very seldom. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In what case? • On what condition?

• To look at Montmorency, you would imagine that he was an angel sent upon earth. (= If you looked at Montmorency, you would imagine that he was an angel sent upon earth. - On what condition would you imagine? If you looked at him.) = Подивитися на Монморанси, так можна уявити, що він ангел, посланий на землю.

• She would be unhappy to marry for money. (= She would be unhappy if she had married for money) = Вона була б нещаслива, якби вийшла заміж через гроші.

•He would have done better to jump off the tower. (= He would have done if he had jumped off the tower.) = Було б краще, якби він зстрибнув з вежі.

Adverbial Modifier of Time

Characteristic Features	Questions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Does not follow any conjunctions or prepositions. •Is used very seldom. 	When? How often? How long?

•Her father lived (How long?) to be ninety. = Її батько дожив до 90.

•Go away! I shudder (When?) to see you here? = Іди! Я здригаюсь, коли бачу тебе тут.

•She was upset to hear her father was ill. (= She was upset when she heard that her father was ill.) = Вона розхвилювалася, коли почула, що її батько хворий.

Adverbial Modifier of Attendant Circumstances

Characteristic Features
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Shows that other actions take place at the same time. •Has no identifying questions. •Does not follow any conjunctions or prepositions. •Is used very seldom.

•The next morning Sofia woke up to see that the day was beautiful, the sun was shining and her last night fears had disappeared. (She woke up and saw...) – Наступного ранку Софія прокинулася й побачила, що день був чудовим, світило сонце, і її вчорашні страхи зникли.

THE INFINITIVE AS PARENTHESIS

In this function, the infinitive is used in a number of set expressions which we recommend learning by heart.

Exercise 11. Match the English infinitive parentheses with their Ukrainian/Ukrainian equivalents.

Part 1

English	Ukrainian
to tell the truth	по-перше; насамперед; почнемо з того, що
to put it another way	так сказати; якщо можна так виразитися
to crown it all	точніше сказати
needless to say	чесно кажучи; відверто кажучи
to cut a long story short	напевно; звичайно
to begin with	по правді кажучи
so to speak / so to say	на довершення всього; на довершення всіх неприємностей
to be sure	більше того; що ще гірше
to make matters worse	коротше кажучи

0	to be (quite; perfectly) frank / to be honest		не кажучи вже про; зайве казати; само собою розуміється / зрозуміло
1	to be (more) precise / to be exact		кажучи іншими словами; інакше кажучи

Part 2

2	strange to say		м'яко кажучи
3	to sum up		попросту кажучи; простіше кажучи
4	to be on the safe side		найменше, що можна сказати; щонайменше
5	needless to add		не кажучи вже про
6	to put it simply / bluntly / plainly		щоб розставити всі крапки над 'і'
7	to put it mildly		як не дивно
8	to make sure double sure		у загальному; щоб підбити підсумок
9	to dot the i's		щоб перестрахуватися
10	to say the least		про всякий випадок; для більшої впевненості
11	to say nothing of		не доводиться додавати; немає потреби додавати; саме собою розуміється

•Exercise 12. Complete the sentences, using infinitives

1. Define the syntactic functions of the infinitives:

1. To reach the top is their aim. 2. Their aim is to reach the top. 3. Their aim is for the team to win. 4. To find her so distressed took him by surprise. 5. They struggled to keep up their standard of living. 6. To keep up friendship is difficult. 7. It is difficult to keep up friendship. 8. I heard them ask for help. 9. To be honest, I don't want to take part in this project. 10. He came back home to find that nobody was waiting for him. 11. The girl gave a wry smile as if to show that she wasn't upset. 12. He accepted the invitation not to make her disappointed. 13. It's a good opportunity to take. 14. He was the last to come, but the first to be noticed.

2. **Insert the correct infinitive from the list:** to be looked through, to have given, to read, to tell you the truth, to have been living in London, to be accepted, to master the specialty, to become, to be published, to attract, to be listening to, to see, to have heard, to solve, to cut a long story short, to start

1. The students seemed _____ the lecturer attentively. 2. I hope _____ you on Monday. 3. We were sorry _____ about your failure at exams. 4. Don't you think I'm old enough _____ the problem myself. 5. Well, _____, he wrote to me at the beginning of last month and said he was ready _____ work again. 6. The

Browns are happy _____ in London for 5 years. 7. He wants _____ to the University. 8. _____ one must work hard. 9. Her dream was _____ a teacher of the Ukrainian language. 10. This is an article _____ in our magazine. 11. There was nothing interesting at the exhibition _____ our attention. 12. _____, I shan't be able to finish the translation today. 13. They are lucky _____ the novel in the original. 14. You were very kind _____ me that advice. 15. They made a list of articles _____ for the seminar.

3. Open the brackets:

1. I like (give) presents to friends, but even more I like (give) gifts. 2. She is so lucky (have) such a good family. 3. The dictionary seems (belong) to my great-grandfather. It appears (publish) ages ago. 4. The young man seemed (study) Marion, and she gave him a cold stare. 5. The key to the grandfather clock was believed (lose) some twenty years before. 6. One more window remained (wash). 7. The child is so pale! She ought (have) a change of food and air. 8. Well, sir, I want (take) my words back. I m sorry (call) you names. 9. The case was urgent. The man had (operate on). 10. He was sorry (not notice) the fax on the secretary's table. 11. But what kind of rules might (require)? 12. The rules were left to the Government (decide). 13. Everybody is going (give) a rise. 14. The country is considered (make) enormous progress this year. 15. English people don't like (tell) what to do.

Exercise 13. Choose the correct variant:

1. Modern art is when you buy a picture _____ a hole in the wall – and decide that the hole looks better. a) to cover b) to be covering c) to have covered d) to have been covering 2. It is not enough to have a good mind; the main thing is _____ it. a) to be using b) to use c) to have used d) to have been using 3. There was nothing _____, but wait for the next train which was due at six. a) to do b) to have done c) to be doing d) to have been doing 4. That woman is still sitting. She seems _____ over an hour. a) to wait b) to be waiting c) to have been waiting d) to have waited 5. The only way to get the best of an argument is _____ it. a) to be avoiding b) to have avoided c) to have been avoiding d) to avoid 6. Look at the children! They are laughing. They seem _____ the film. a) to enjoy b) to be enjoying c) to have enjoyed d) to have been enjoyin

Exercise 14. Translate into English using infinitive in the function of an attribute.

1. Пітер зрозумів, що Джессика була тією самою жінкою, з якою він повинен одружитися. 2. Лаура була першою, хто прийшов на вечірку, хоча її ніхто не запрошував. 3. У мене немає ні найменшого бажання підтримувати містера Дженкинса; по-моєму, він не та людина, якій можна довіряти. 4. Перестаньте мучити свого собаку. Якщо ви не маєте часу її вигуляти, знайдіть кого-небудь, хто може це робити регулярно. 5. Брайан не та людина, що зможе виконати це доручення швидко, але він зробить його якісно. 6. Почекай мене після занять. Мені тобі потрібно так багато розповісти! 7. Давай поговоримо про це пізніше, добре? Це не те питання, яке треба зараз обговорювати. 8. Ти мені можеш допомогти? Сьогодні нема кому забрати дітей зі школи. Ти б міг зробити це для мене, будь ласка? 9. Ніхто із

присутніх не хотів заговорити першим і здатися нечемним. 10. Не квап мене. Перш, ніж ми підемо, треба ще дещо зробити. 11. На жаль, вони мало-що можуть дати цій дитині. Постарайтеся знайти іншу прийомну родину для нього. 12. Давай звернемося по допомогу до Боба. Він той, на кого можна покластися. 13. Наступне, що треба зробити – це розподілити обов'язки між усіма членами команди. 14. Всю ніч Генрі думав про те, що сказати у своє виправдання. 15. Ти не міг би дати мені книгу, яку можна почитати в поїзді. 16. Я сподіваюся, я не сказав нічого такого, що могло б скривдити вас. 17. У мене не було наміру відволікати вас від роботи. Вибачте, що задав вам це питання.

Exercise 15. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of the infinitives as attributes.

1. Чи є у вашому домі що-небудь, що можна було б використати замість письмового стола? 2. Стелла - дуже життєрадісна людина, вона завжди знайде що-небудь, над чим посміятися. 3. Дівчинка знала, що ні в чому не винувата, їй нічого було боятися. 4. Містер Браун саме та людина, що допоможе нам вирішити цю проблему. 5. Хлопчики пропустили урок без поважної причини, і їм нічого було сказати у своє виправдання. 6. Хто був першим? Скажи мені скоріше, хто прийшов до фінішу першим? - Не знаю, я прийшов останнім. 7. Вам ні про що турбуватися, всі приготування до завтрашньої конференції вже закінчені. 8. Ходімо зі мною в лабораторію, мені є, що тобі показати. 9. Ми всі бачили, що містер Грін шукає привід, щоб відмовитися від своєї обіцянки, але ніхто не хотів йому в цьому допомогти. 10. Я розумію, що це неприємно, але повинен бути хтось, хто скаже їй про цей дивний збіг обставин. 11. Містер Вест повинен бути дуже обережним на цих переговорах. Людині в його положенні є що втрачати. 12. Чому ви посміхаєтеся? Це не той вчинок, яким можна пишатися. 13. У мене немає жодного бажання, щоб мене бачили в цій бідній частині міста. 14. Стів - не та людина, що може вас підвести. Швидше за все, з ним щось трапилося. 15. Візьміть себе в руки. Ви не зробили нічого такого, чого варто було б соромитися. 16. Учора начальник мого батька сказав своїм підлеглим: «У вас є тільки два виходи: підтримати мою пропозицію або накоїти дурниць». 17. Місіс Дженкінс, дружина льотчика, розмовляє зі своєю подругою: «Мій чоловік дуже марновірний. Учора він вирішив позбутися нашого чорного кота, що, за його словами, приносить йому останнім часом багато неприємностей. Він сказав, що підніметься на своєму літаку на рекордну висоту 9 тисяч футів і скине його вниз». Подруга: «Можливо, у нього, дійсно, стане менше неприємностей. Але чому ти зараз так сильно хвилюєшся?» «У мене є причина хвилюватися. Мого чоловіка вдома ще нема, а кіт вже прийшов!» 18. Чому б не купити сьогоднішню газету? Найкращий спосіб оволодіти суспільно-політичною лексикою – читати газети та слухати новини по телебаченню та радіо. 19. Поїхати на ковзанку з друзями розважитися і замість цього зламати руку – тільки я здатний на таке! Добре, що там виявився лікар, який надав мені першу допомогу. 20. Це найкращий кухонний комбайн, що можна купити за таку ціну. На вашому місці, я б не

вагалася ні хвилини. 21. Ніколи не могла зрозуміти його бажання емігрувати. Усі мої спроби поспілкуватися на цю тему були марними. Він і слухати нікого не бажає, тільки повторює, що тут йому нічого втрачати. Який недалеко людина! Що ще можна сказати? 22. Ваша пропозиція передивитися умови договору цілком доречна. Якби не останні трагічні події в країні, ми б розпочали цей процес набагато раніше. 23. Мені давно треба було сказати тобі, як сильно я кохаю тебе. Ти саме та людина, з якою я хотів би провести решту свого життя. Мені дуже шкода, що я був такий нерішучий. 24. Дозволити дітям дивитися телевизор було твоєю помилкою. «Файна Україна» - не та передача, яку можуть дивитися діти. Іноді ти поводишся так, начебто ще не подорослішав. 25. Я не люблю спізнюватися або приходити на семінар останньою. У цьому випадку мені доводиться сидіти за першою партою, і саме я виявляюся тією людиною, що відповідає на більшість питань викладача.

Exercise 16. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of the infinitive in the function of different adverbial modifiers.

1. Стелла була не настільки наївна, щоб не розуміти, що її намагаються обдурити. 2. На мій погляд, ці діти недостатньо розумні й уважні, щоб контролювати свою поведінку. 3. Містер Скотт був такий добрий, що дав старій місіс Бонд грошей у борг, щоб вона змогла заплатити за оренду дома. 4. Не зваблюйся. Тім занадто впертий, щоб діяти за твоєю порадою. 5. Мені досить твого слова честі, щоб повірити, що Пітер не винуватий у тому, що відбулося. 6. У залі було занадто галасливо, щоб розчути слова мого співрозмовника. 7. Повітряна кулька була досить близько, щоб піймати її, але хлопчик був занадто незграбний, щоб зробити це. 8. Умови контракту були занадто твердими, щоб ми могли їх прийняти. 9. Тед був занадто осліплений коханням, щоб усвідомлювати, що Белла просто маніпулювала ним. 10. Поводження старої дами із двома парасольками було занадто дивним, щоб не залучити загальної уваги. 11. Онук відвідав дідуся кілька років назад і більше після цього ніколи до нього не приїжджав. 12. Уранці Джек прокинувся тільки для того, щоб побачити, що кімната була порожня й весь його одяг і гроші пропали разом з його сусідом. 13. Пилип тільки один раз признався їй у коханні й більше ніколи не вимовляв цих слів. 14. Батько пояснив синові, чому так не можна робити, але лише переконався, що син не має наміру прислухатися до його поради. 15. Пітер здивовано подивився на БERTУ й зрозумів, що все, що він сказав, не викликало в неї ніяких емоцій. 16. Піаніст закінчив грати й обернувся тільки для того, щоб побачити, що в залі залишилося сидіти тільки декілька людей.

Exercise 17. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of the infinitive in the function of different adverbial modifiers.

1. Наш сусід прийшов подивитися, чи зможе він нам чим-небудь допомогти. Але йому нічого не залишилося робити, як тільки погорювати разом з нами про зруйнований будинок. 2. Лікар сказав, що хлопчик досить здоровий, щоб кататися на ковзанах. Єдине, що він повинен робити - це замотати шию вовняним шарфом, щоб знову не застудитися. 3. Ми занадто

добре знали нашого начальника, щоб просити його відпустити нас з роботи на годину раніше. Він був занадто педантичний, щоб зробити це. 4. Художник відступив на крок назад, щоб побачити всю картину. Він засмутився, коли побачив, що це не те, що він бачив у своїй уяві. 5. Ви виглядаєте зовсім хворим. Тут є хто-небудь, хто може приглянути за вами, доки ви не одужаєте? 6. Я прийшов довідатися, чи не можу я вам чим-небудь допомогти. - Так, спасибі. Ви перший, хто запропонував мені свою допомогу. 7. Продавець прикинувся, що не помітив зниковілості дівчини, і продовжував розхвалювати дорогий костюм. 8. Думаю, ця книга не досить складна, щоб рекомендувати її студентам 3 курсу. Чому б вам не пошукати іншу книгу? 9. Батьки Моніки були першими, хто поздоровив її з перемогою на конкурсі молодих піаністів. 10. Секретарка директора була занадто зайнята розмовою по телефону, щоб звернути увагу на молодого співробітника, і йому вдалося вийти з офісу непомітно. 11. Яку роль грає у вашому фільмі той маленький актор, що стоїть біля гармати? - Роль Наполеона. - Чи не занадто він маленький для того, щоб грати таку велику роль? 12. Він надто підозрілий, щоб погодитися на пропозицію зберігати усі свої гроші в цьому банку. Я добре пам'ятаю, як він пояснював друзям, що бажано вкладати гроші в різні підприємства. 13. Попередити захворювання набагато краще ніж лікуватися від нього. Треба змалечку загартовуватися аби не витратити купу грошей на ліки. 14. Вона першою зателефонувала мені після сварки, начебто для того, щоб з'ясувати зміни в розкладі. Що я мала робити, як не удавати, що нічого не трапилось? 15. Послухати її, так вона безвинна жертва чийхось інтриг. Придивитися краще – вона має унікальні здібності спочатку заварити кашу, а потім вийти сухою з води. 16. Джесіка відкрила зошит і побачила довгоочікувану п'ятірку. Тепер в неї теж було щось, чим можна було пишатися. 17. Напевно, ви мене з кимось переплутали. Я не настільки довірлива, аби розкривати душу абсолютно незнайомій людині. 18. Алекс був страшенно розчарований, коли дізнався, що не отримав роботу, яку так жадав. Йому нічого не залишалось, як знову попрямувати до біржі труда. 19. Адела покликкала собаку і зрозуміла, що його ніде не було. Їй було страшно навіть уявити, що могло трапитися з маленьким щеням, якщо він опиниться на вулиці. 20. Я надаю перевагу купівлі овочів та фруктів на ринку, а не в супермаркетах. На мій погляд, витратити трохи більше грошей є більш розумним, ніж придбати несвіжі продукти. 21. Я був приємно здивований, коли побачив, як Дженні реагує на подарунки, якими її просто завалили. Вона однаково раділа, коли бачила скляні дрібнички та коштовні прикраси. 22. Мені здається, з вашої сторони було б набагато розумніше змиритись із ситуацією, що ви ні яким образом не можете змінити, чим приймати усе так близько до серця й нервувати. 23. Філіп відкрив дверцята холодильнику тільки для того, щоб переконатися, що він майже порожній. Він зовсім не засмутився – лягати спати голодним було для нього звичайною справою. 24. Містер Лок не злякався, коли помітив, що за ним слідкують. Він нахилився, начебто щоб зав'язати шнурок, і уважно придивився до чоловіка, який різко зупинився біля тютюнового кіоску. 25.

Вона була б розчарована, якби її тоді не запросили на прем'єру. Навіть якщо вона вже і була на пенсії, вона віддала театрові тридцять років свого життя! Відвідати виставу принаймні раз у півроку було її єдиною розвагою.

Exercise 18. Translate into English using the appropriate parenthesis.

1. Ви вже чули, що трапилося з містером Трентом? - Ні, а що? - Місяць назад згорів його будинок, минулого тижня в нього украли машину, а вчора, на довершення всіх неприємностей, він втратив роботу. - Бідний містер Трент! 2. Мені так не щастить останнім часом! Учора я не закрив вікна в машині. Певна річ, пішов дощ. 3. Не розумію, як ви можете так часто спілкуватися з місіс Херріот. Усі ж знають, що при всій своїй привабливій зовнішності, у неї немає жодної думки в голові. - По правді кажучи, я спілкуюся з нею тільки тому, що мені приємно на неї дивитися. 4. Думаю, мені доведеться звернутися до іншого лікаря. - Чому? - Лікар, що обіцяв мене повністю вилікувати, виявився, м'яко кажучи, досить некомпетентним. 5. Гарний учитель може, так сказати, вдихнути життя в будь-який, навіть найсухіший предмет. 6. По правді кажучи, іменник «штани» дуже дивний: він зверху в однині, а знизу в множині. 7. Не розумію, що трапилося з містером Дрейком. Учора він говорив одне, сьогодні інше - прямо протилежне тому, що він говорив учора. Коротше кажучи, мені здається, він повністю втратив контроль над ситуацією. 8. Коротше кажучи, якщо ви все-таки не знайдете цей будинок згідно моєму опису, або, що ще гірше, заблукаєте в незнайомому місті, дзвоніть мені прямо в офіс, я приїду, і проведу вас до старого містера Свіфта. 9. Я вважаю, що ви, щонайменше, діяли нерозумно. Вам не можна було вести переговори з викрадачами дитини, не повідомивши про це поліцію. 10. Через банкрутство банку всі вкладники втратили гроші. Це величезний фінансовий збиток, не кажучи вже про моральний. 11. Як не дивно, книги Стівена Кінга знаходять своїх читачів, хоча мені вони здаються жахливими. 12. Це чудове відкриття було зроблене у 18 столітті, точніше сказати, в 1756 році. 13. М'яко кажучи, наші сусіди полюбляють сувати свій ніс у чужі справи, тому ми ніколи не запрошуємо їх на наші вечірки. 14. Найменше, що можна сказати про Тімоті, це те, що він брехун. Простіше кажучи, я б не радив тобі покладатися на його обіцянки. 15. Чому ви вирішили не купувати будинок, який ви дивилися в суботу? - Почнемо з того, що хазяїн будинку назвав таку ціну, яку ми не зможемо собі дозволити.

3.2 THE BARE INFINITIVE

The bare infinitive is the infinitive used without the particle 'to'. We use the bare infinitive:

1) after auxiliary verbs: e.g. I shall come tomorrow.

2) after modal verbs: e.g. They can't have meant that. I can/could/may/might/should/shall/must leave soon. -The modal verb ought is always followed by to: e.g. We ought to help the old. -After to dare / to need used as modal verbs we use the bare infinitive: e.g. How dare you say such things?; You needn't worry.

Dare is used only with the Indefinite Infinitive. Need is used both with the Indefinite and with the Perfect Infinitive: e.g. You needn't have read the course. At the same time both verbs can be used as normal verbs and are followed by the to-infinitive: e.g. You need to be careful. I didn't dare to enter the room.

3) after verbs denoting sense perception (to hear, to see, to feel): e.g. I felt my heart jump; I saw him pour the medicine down the loo and I heard him laugh to himself.

After the verbs to hear, to see in the passive voice the 'to'-infinitive is used: e.g. He was heard to mention your name several times.

NB: the verb to be after the verb to feel is used with the particle to: e.g. I felt this to be very true.

4) after to let: e.g. Let's make it Friday. We use the imperative form let's as an auxiliary verb followed by a bare infinitive when making suggestions for actions that include the speaker: e.g. Let's take a taxi, shall we? The negative form in suggestions of this type is: e.g. Let's not argue about this / Don't let us argue.

To let in the meaning of to allow is always followed by a noun or a pronoun object before a bare infinitive. If the object is us, it cannot be reduced to let's: e.g. Please, let us have more time, will you?; I won't let you ride my bicycle. In passive sentences we use to allow + 'to'-infinitive instead of to let: e.g. They didn't let us speak / We were not allowed to speak.

5) after to make in the meaning 'змушувати': e.g. What makes you think so? In the passive make in this sense is followed by 'to'-infinitive: e.g. I was made to follow. NB: To make in the meaning 'to compel' can never be followed by a passive infinitive. But in the meaning of 'to create' it can: e.g. Rules were made to be broken.

6) in fixed phrases with let and make: let fall, let go, let me see, make believe, make do, etc: e.g. You'll have to make your pocket money do. I can't give you more.

7) after to have: Have + personal object + bare infinitive: we use this construction to show that one person is causing another to do something: e.g. He wanted a job so I had him paint the kitchen. I can't imagine what he'll have you believe next. The verb to have in the meaning 'допускати' is used after the modal verbs will and would in negative sentences: e.g. I would not have you think that I'm a fool.

8) after to know in the meaning 'to observe, to see' (never in the Present Indefinite): e.g. I've never known her (to) cry before. I've never known her not (to) be late. But in the passive 'to' is obligatory: e.g. He was known to have had a quick temper as a boy.

9) after to help we can omit particle 'to': e.g. Mother helped me (to) do my homework. But in the negative sentences we cannot omit 'to': e.g. It helps me not to worry. In the passive 'to' is obligatory after help: e.g. He was helped to overcome the difficulties.

10) after why/why not? e.g. I don't like the wallpaper. – Why don't you change it? / Why not change it? 11) after would rather, had better, would sooner, cannot but, nothing but: e.g. I'd rather be told the truth. You'd better not go near

the edge. I cannot but think so. There was nothing left for us to do but sit and wait. She does nothing but cry.

<p>*Note would rather / had better: Would rather → preference Had better → advice, warning, threat If the subject and the object of the sentence are the same: Smb1 had better do / be Smb1 would rather do sth / be</p>	<p>I would rather spend the day outside (preference) He would rather stay at home now (preference) You had better try again (advice) She had better not be so rude (warning) I'd better not catch you in my room again (threat)</p>
---	---

12) If infinitives are joined by and, but, except, or, than, 'to' is usually dropped before the second infinitive: e.g. I'd like to be flying over the Alps and (to be) looking down / be looking down at the mountains.

Exercise 1. Choose the correct answer.

1. Are you ready (go/to go) now? 2. I saw her (to cross/cross) the road. 3. They didn't let us (go/to go) to a disco. 4. She asked (sit down/to sit down) because she was very tired. 5. I've heard her (to sing/sing). 6. It's difficult (to cook/cook) as well as your mother. 7. You'd rather (not try/not to try) because it's dangerous. 8. You mustn't (turn/to turn) left. It's forbidden. 9. They didn't let us (to work/work) in groups. 10. They planned (make/to make) a picnic with all the family.

Exercise 2. Insert to where necessary:

1. We did everything we could ___ make him ___ join us. 2. You can't ___ make me ___ do what I don't want ___. 3. Are you sure you can ___ afford ___ waste another year? 4. You need ___ take more care of yourself. 5. It would be very foolish ___ let the child ___ have his way. 6. Let the next student ___ come in now. 7. We'd rather ___ take a train than ___ fly. 8. Why not ___ go with us? Let's ___ have fun! 9. You'd better ___ stay in bed not ___ make your cold ___ get worse. 10. I need a car ___ get to my country-house. 11. We heard the postman ___ come up to the front door and then we saw him ___ slip a thick envelope into the box. 12. He can't but ___ admire her beauty and talent. 13. You ought ___ have told me all this before. 14. We got them ___ rebuild the house. 15. He was seen ___ enter the house through the back door. 16. – What made you ___ terrorize me? –I was made ___ do it. 17. Will you be able ___ let your son ___ decide his future? 18. Do you like ___ listen to good music? 19. Would you like ___ listen to good music? 20. That funny scene made me ___ laugh. 21. I like ___ play the guitar. 22. My brother can ___ speak French. 23. 14 We had ___ put on our overcoats because it was cold. 24. They wanted ___ cross the river. 25. It is high time for you ___ go to bed. 26. May I ___ use your telephone? 27. They heard the girl ___ cry out with joy. 28. I would rather ___ stay at home today. 29. He did not want ___ play in the yard any more. 30. Would you like ___ go to England? 31. You look tired. You had better ___ go home. 32. I wanted ___ speak to Nick, but could not ___ find his telephone number. 33. It is time ___ get up. 34. Let me ___ help you with your homework. 35. I was planning ___ do a lot of things yesterday. 36. I'd like ___ speak to you. 37. I think I shall be able ___ solve this problem. 38.

What makes you ___ think you are right? 39. I shall do all I can ___ help you. 40. I like ___ dance. 41. I'd like ___ dance. 42. She made me ___ repeat my words several times. 43. I saw him ___ enter the room. 44. She did not let her ___ go.

Exercise 3. Put to where possible:

1. I think you ought ___ apologize. 2. Make him ___ speak louder. 3. Help me ___ carry this bag. 4. My son asked me ___ let him ___ go to the theatre. 5. I must ___ go to the country. 6. It cannot ___ be done to-day. 7. She asked me ___ read the letter carefully and ___ write an answer. 8. The man told me not ___ walk on the grass. 9. Let me ___ help you with your work. 10. She ought ___ take care of her health. 11. We had better ___ stop to rest a little. 12. I don't know what ___ do. 13. He was seen ___ leave the house. 14. We have come ___ ask whether there is anything we can ___ do. 15. We heard the siren ___ sound and saw the ship ___ move. 16. I cannot ___ go there now; I have some work ___ do. 17. During the crossing the passengers felt the ship ___ toss. 18. You must make him ___ practise an hour a day. 19. He is not sure that it can ___ be done, but he is willing ___ try. 20. I looked for the book everywhere but could not ___ find it. 21. He said that she might ___ come in the evening. 22. Have you heard him ___ play the piano? 23. I would rather not ___ tell them about it.

Exercise 4. Study the theoretical part and make up illustrations of every rule (14 sent.). 2. Rewrite the following sentences, using to-infinitive or infinitive without to:

1. John is easily encouraged. It's easy _____. 2. The baby is going to fall! Don't let _____. 3. Shall I stay? Do you want me _____? 4. Why do you think so? What makes you _____? 5. What shall I do? What do you want _____? 6. You can't do that. I won't let you _____. 7. Accept my offer please. I begged him _____. 8. Please call me a taxi. Will you _____? 9. You shouldn't complain. You'd better _____. 10. Hearing that surprised us. It surprised us _____. 11. I'd prefer not to go. I'd rather _____. 12. He has many friends. He appears _____. 13. He was surprised at the news. He seemed _____.

Exercise 5. Fill in the gaps with either infinitive or gerund using the verbs in brackets

1. I'll never forget _____ (to sail) down the Danube on that warm spring night last year.
2. Please don't forget _____ (to pay) the bill.
3. John says he remembers _____ (to buy) the newspaper, but now he can't find it.
4. Did you remember _____ (to post) my letters today?
5. Gloria regrets _____ (to laugh) at her sister.
6. I regret _____ (to inform) you that we cannot give you your money back.
7. The students went on _____ (to write) for another hour.
8. After cleaning the windows, he went on _____ (to wash) the car.
9. We are sorry _____ (to announce) that the 7:15 train to Liverpool has been cancelled.

10. I'm sorry for _____ (to miss) your birthday party; I'll make it up to you.
11. She stopped _____ (to go) to the gym after she had got back into shape.
12. They stopped _____ (to have) a rest before they continued their journey.
13. They tried _____ (to open) the door, but it was stuck.
14. You should try _____ (to make) your own clothes. It's much cheaper.
15. I'm sorry. I didn't mean _____ (to break) your vase.
16. Being a teacher means _____ (to mark) a lot of homework.
17. I like _____ (to tidy) my room at weekends because I don't have time during the week.
18. They like _____ (to play) in the sea on hot days.
19. Steve could remember _____ (to drive) along the road just before the accident happened, but he couldn't remember the accident itself.
20. I now regret _____ (to say) what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
21. We regret _____ (to inform) you that we are unable to offer you the job.
22. Do you remember _____ (to go) to the post office last Wednesday?
23. Some people find images easier _____ (to remember) than words.
24. I must remember _____ (to try) and phone Phil this evening. I've got a message for him.
25. The mother couldn't help _____ (to notice) how unhappy her daughter looked.

Exercise 6. Translate the sentences below into English using the for-to-infinitive construction.

1.Тобі дійсно необхідно їхати до Києва сьогодні? Хіба ти не можеш виїхати експресом завтра зранку? 2. Марія очікувала, що телеграма прийде зранку, але її все не було, і до обіду вона стала серйозно хвилюватися. 3. Краще, що ви можете зробити в цій ситуації це проконсультуватися ще з двома лікарями в різних лікарнях, і якщо їхні діагнози співпадуть, вам нічого не залишиться, як робити операцію.4. Бетті ні з ким було порадитися в цій важкій ситуації, і вона не знала, яке рішення їй прийняти. 5. Альпіністи чекали, доки погода проясниться, щоб почати сходження на найвищу вершину земної кулі - Еверест. Але їхній провідник мав вирішувати, коли можна буде відправлятися в дорогу. 6. Перше, що ти повинна зробити, якщо не хочеш бути покараною, це віднести забруднену скатертину в хімчистку так, щоб про це ніхто не довідався. Тобі вирішувати, як ти це зробиш. 7. Весь вечір Кеті очікувала, що телефон задзвонить. Але дзвінка від Бена все не було. Кеті нічого не залишалось робити, як тільки скласти речі у валізу й викликати таксі. 8. Чому ви наполягаєте на аналізі цих незначних деталей? - Я роблю це для того, щоб ви зрозуміли, що в розслідуванні злочину немає

ніяких дрібниць. Кожна деталь може стати ключем до розгадки. 9. У великому й холодному Лондоні не було жодної людини, до якої Девід міг би звернутися по допомогу. Йому самому треба було вирішувати, як заробити на життя, і де провести ніч. 10. Мейбл чекала, коли закипить чайник. Кімната була неприбраною, але вона занадто втомилася, щоб прибирати її. Найкраще, що вона могла зробити, це випити міцного гарячого чаю й спробувати заснути. 11. Сад був занадто великим і запущеним, щоб ми могли відразу ж відшукати дитину, яка заблукала в ньому. Нам знадобилося не менше трьох годин, щоб знайти його між коріннями старого дуба. 12. Саллі була занадто засмучена, щоб прикидатися, що її цікавить тема розмови. Теду нічого не залишалося робити, як чемно попрощатися й піти. 13. Ви сказали достатньо, щоб я зрозумів, що я небажаний гість у вашому домі. Але вашому чоловіку вирішувати, піти мені чи ні, оскільки це він запросив мене до вас у дім.

3.3. VERBS + INFINITIVE

After these verbs we usually use the infinitive:

afford	I can't afford to buy this dress
agree	Tom agreed to help me
appear	His health appeared to be better
arrange	Naomi arranged to stay with her cousin in Miami
ask	She asked to leave
attempt	We attempted to persuade him
begin	He began to talk
care	He doesn't care to participate in the activity
choose	I chose to help
claim	She claimed to be a princess
dare	I didn't dare to interrupt
decide	We decided to go to Hawaii
demand	He demanded to speak to Mr. Harris
deserve	He deserves to go to jail
expect	They expect to arrive early
fail	He failed to get enough money to pay for the new project
happen	She happened to be at the bank when it was robbed
hesitate	She hesitated to tell me the problem
hope	I hope to begin college this year
intend	We intend to visit you this year
learn (how)	I learned to speak Japanese when I was a kid
manage	He managed to open the door without the key
offer	Frank offered to drive us to the supermarket

plan	We plan to go to Europe this summer
prepare	They prepared to take the test
pretend	The child pretended to be a monster
promise	She promised to stop smoking
refuse	The guard refused to let them enter the building
seem	Nancy seemed to be disappointed
swear	She swore to tell the truth
tend	He tends to be a little shy
threaten	He threatened to leave forever
vow	He vowed to get revenge
want	I want to study Spanish
wish	I wish to stay
would like (=want)	I'd like to go with you
yearn	Melanie yearns to travel somewhere exotic

After the following verbs we have to use noun + infinitive:

advise	I advised them to see a doctor
allow	Ireland doesn't allow people to smoke in bars
cause	He caused her to make a mistake
convince	Ned convinced me to quit my job
enable	Financial aid enabled the students to pay such expensive tuition fees
encourage	He encourages his patients to eat healthy foods
force	The commander forced the soldiers to march in the rain
get (cause to)	Isabelle got Mike to wash her car
hire	Mr. Donnelly hired Sarah to work as a receptionist
invite	We invited them to join us
order	The police ordered him to put his hands in the air
permit	California doesn't permit people to fish without a fishing license
remind	They reminded me to pay the bills before the end of the month
require	The certificate requires students to complete two courses
tell	He told me to shut up
urge	They urge citizens to recycle bottles and paper
warn	She warned him not to be late

.With the following verbs the noun is optional. When a noun is added, it usually changes the doer of the action. The optional noun/pronoun changes the meaning of the sentence.

ask	She asked to leave	She asked him to leave
choose	I chose to help out	I chose him to help out
expect	They expect to arrive early	The expect him to arrive early
need	I need to clean the house	I need her to clean the house
prepare	They prepared to take the test	They prepared her to take the test
want	I want to study Spanish	I want my son to study Spanish
wish	I wish to stay	I wish him to stay (rare form)
would like	We would like to start now	We would like him to start now

E.g. They agreed to lend me some money when I explained the reason to them. He pretended not to see me as he passed me in the street. You seem to have lost weight. We decided not to go out because of the weather. I pretended to be reading.

Exercise 1. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Він був охочий допомогти їй. 2. Призначте її розробити програму. 3. Вона вирішила злякати його. 4. Вони порадили їм використовувати кімнату для танців. 5. Він вирішив відпочити, щоб потім приєднатися до них. 6. Він пообіцяв відгукнутися на її прохання. 7. Нагадай мені заплатити рахунок. 8. Ми вагалися, чи йти на концерт. 9. Діти заслуговують походу в зоопарк. 10. Вона не дозволила собі бути причиною сварки. 11. Вони вирішили спакувати речі. 12. Йому дозволили зайнятися справою. 13. Їй було соромно, що вона запізнилася. 14. Йому порадили купити сучасну пральну машину. 15. Вона могла дозволити собі купити машину. 16. Вона очікувала, що вони розвеселять його. 17. Йому звеліли купити стілець. 18. Її заохочували зустрічатися з ним. 19. Вона наполягає, аби діти сходили до музею. 20. Це вже буде зовсім по-дурному, підозрювати його. 21. Як він посмів заявитися сюди? 22. Цей хід може дозволити їй виграти. 23. Він не має жодного бажання відкладати купівлю будинку. 24. Він попередив усіх не запізнюватися. 25. Я очікую, що лист доставлять вчасно. 26. Я б хотіла, що ви зараз пішли. 27. Їй наказали замовкнути. 28. Ми змусили їх помити машину. 29. Ті гроші дали змогу оплатити їй за навчання. 30. Ми готувалися писати твір.

Exercise 2. Choose the correct form of the infinitive:

1. I was very upset and I didn't know whom _____ to for advice. a) to turn b) to be turning c) to have turned d) to have been turned
 2. No words can describe the fascination of the place. It must _____. a) see b) be seen c) have seen d) have been seen
 3. Jenny seemed _____ no attention to what was going on around her. a)

to pay b) to be paying c) to have paid d) to have been paying 4. Judging from the books and papers on his desk he must _____ since they left him in the morning. a) be working b) work c) have worked d) have been working 5. Jack is in his garage. He must _____ his car. a) be repairing b) have been repairing c) repair d) have repaired 6. It was nice of you _____ me your Grammar book. Without it I would have been lost. a) to lend b) to be lending c) to have lent d) to be lent 7. The meeting is put off till next Friday. I meant _____ you about it, but I forgot. I am sorry. a) to warn b) to be warning c) to have warned d) to have been warning 8. A great mistake that you can make in life is _____ you are always right. q) to have thought r) to think s) to be thinking t) to have been thinking 9. To be the gainer you are _____ yourself; to be happy you are to forget yourself. a) to be losing b) to lose c) to have lost d) to have been losing

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences:

1. Він не зміг дивитися їй в очі. 2. Навіщо починати цю розмову? 3. Вони пригрозили залишити мене самого. 4. Він відмовився допомагати їм. 5. Я сподіваюся, що ви повернетесь вчасно. 6. Їй не подобається сперечатися. 7. Варто скористатися порадою. 8. Вони не могли собі дозволити поїхати туди. 9. Здавалося, він погодився. 10. Вона не хотіла мати смішний вигляд. 11. Вони забули запитати. 12. Він навчився плавати. 13. Вона не має часу обговорювати особисті справи. 14. Вона чекала, аби побачити актора. 15. Він не готовий визнати, що дещо знає. 16. Йому подобається дивитися на море. 17. Вона не любить, коли примушують щось робити. 18. Після обговорення вони почали голосувати. 19. Вони обрали покинути країну. 20. Потрібно більше читати. 21. Вони погодилися прийти, щоб уникнути неприємностей. 22. Він завжди мріяв стати актором.

Exercise 5. Revise the use of bare infinitive and choose the correct variant:

1. Mother didn't let us _____ late.
a) walk b) to walk
2. The children were not allowed _____ in the yard.
a) play b) to play
3. Make him _____ the toy he broke.
a) repair b) to repair
4. They were seen _____ the street two minutes ago.
a) cross b) to cross
5. The students were made _____ the desks.
a) clean b) to clean
6. Why not _____ for help if you cannot cope with it?
a) ask b) to ask
7. We heard the birds _____.
a) twitter b) to twitter
8. You'd better _____ on my nerves.
a) not to get b) not get
9. He'd rather _____ there alone.
a) go b) to go

10. She couldn't but _____ listening to the song.

a) cry b) to cry

11. There was nothing left for him _____ but _____ the police.

a) do b) to do a) call b) to call

Exercise 6. Translate into English using the structures 'cannot help + gerund', 'cannot help but + bare infinitive' and 'cannot but + bare infinitive'.

1. Лінда не могла не погодитися зі своєю матір'ю. 2. Ненсі не могла не думати про те, що Сем думає про неї. 3. Як би воно не намагалася, бридке каченя не могло не бути гидким. 4. Ми повинні перевірити обчислення знову. Ну, що я можу поробити, якщо я почуваю, що ми допустили десь помилку. 5. Як їм не хотілося, але їм довелося сповістити мене про те, коли вони їдуть. 6. Що б ви не говорили, я не можу не робити того, що я вважаю потрібним. 7. Вибачите, я не міг не почути вашу розмову з містером Драмондом. І я думаю, що ви праві. 8. Я вислухав ваші пояснення дуже уважно, але я не можу удержатися від того, щоб не погодитися з вами. 9. Джеррі не міг не простити Ліз; він її дуже любив. 10. Ви не зможете не полюбити щеняти, воно таке славне! 11. Я не можу не згадувати знову й знову ті щасливі дні, які ми провели в Італії. 12. Я не міг не думати про минуле, оскільки його вплив на теперішній час був дійсно дуже істотним. 13. Маленька Мері не могла не бути допитливою; це було в її натурі.

3.4. ADJECTIVES + INFINITIVE

Many adjectives, especially those describing feelings, can be followed by to + Infinitive:

e.g. We are thrilled to welcome this year's prizewinner onto the podium. The Bensons are lucky to be having such good weather.

Adjective + to + Infinitive:

able/unable	We were unable to answer
amazed	He was amazed to discover the truth
anxious	She was anxious to start her new job
ashamed	He was ashamed to admit he had lied
bound	She is bound to be elected class president
careful	They were careful not to reveal the winner of the prize until the end
certain	She is certain to get the job
content	The student was content to receive the second place in the competition
crazy	He is crazy to marry her
curious	We were curious to see what was in the box
delighted	We were delighted to be invited to the wedding
determined	He was determined to finish the marathon
due	He is due to come
eager	He was eager to begin
eligible	They were not eligible to participate in the

	program
fit	They are fit to take part
fortunate	She was fortunate to receive the research grant glad I would be glad to help out
happy	She was happy to see them at the party
hesitant	Mary was hesitant to say anything
liable	The mountain climber is liable to hurt himself if he doesn't use wellmade equipment
likely	They are likely to show up at any time
lucky	You were lucky to have such an opportunity
pleased	I am pleased to meet you
proud	He was proud to have been chosen to lead the project
ready	I'm ready to go now
reluctant	The witness was reluctant to reveal what he had seen
sad	She was really sad to leave
shocked	He was shocked to discover the truth
sorry	I am sorry to have to tell you that the tickets are sold out
stupid	Will you be stupid to take this offer?
sure	They are sure to come
surprised	She was surprised to discover that he had never learned how to swim
thrilled	I'm thrilled to have him back

Exercise 1. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Вона змогла здобути приз.
2. Ми були дуже здивовані почути новини.
3. Він не був схвилюваний грати на сцені.
4. Тобі не соромно таке казати?
5. Ймовірно, ми переїдемо в інше місто незабаром.
6. Будь уважна, щоб не розлити на себе сік.
7. Письменник точно прибуде на презентацію своєї книги.
8. Ми були задоволені, що подивилися таку гарну виставу.
9. Чи ти божевільна їхати на червоне світло?
10. Їй було цікаво дізнатися, що в коробці.
11. Мама була задоволена, що отримала подарунок.
12. Наша команда буде рішуче налаштована на перемогу.
13. Його нова збірка віршів має бути (очікується) опублікована наступного місяця.
14. Він завжди охочий пограти в комп'ютерні ігри.
15. У віці 18 років ми матимемо дозвіл голосувати на виборах.
16. Вона саме підходить для участі у спортивних змаганнях.
17. Нам не пощастило взяти інтерв'ю у цього відомого актора.
18. Батьки дуже раді, що отримали путівку на море.
19. Я щаслива, що колись познайомилася з тобою.
20. Хлопчик вагався, чи казати правду директору.
21. Він схильний вихвалитися.
22. Ймовірно, вам вдасться встигнути на поїзд.
23. Нам пощастило застрибнути в останній вагон.
24. Я задоволений, що виставив свої картини на показ.
25. Ми пишалися, що перемогли на олімпіаді з перекладу.
26. Я буду готова піти з тобою через годину.
27. Мама дуже не

хотіла говорити про це. 28. Нам було сумно покидати рідне місто, і водночас ми хвилювалися через переїзд у нову місцевість. 29. Сусідка була шокована, коли знайшла той пакунок з немовлям біля дверей. 30. Мені шкода чути, що ти не здав іспит. 31. Не будь нерозумний, не погоджуйся на таку роботу. 32. Сьогодні точно піде дощ. 33. Бабуся не була здивована побачити онука в брудному одязі після гри у футбол.

Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences:

1. Вона не має особливого бажання розмовляти з ним. 2. Він готовий залишитися вдома. 3. Вона мала велике бажання вивчати англійську. 4. Машина їхала швидко, щоб доставити вантаж вчасно. 5. Він порадив нам зателефонувати. 6. Не завжди легко казати правду. 7. Він примусив їх купити книги. 8. Вона побажала йому гарно відпочити. 9. Вони дозволили їй навчатися у тій школі. 10. Нелегко накопичувати досвід. 11. Вони наказали йому звільнитися усіх без пояснень. 12. Не шукай приводу піти раніше. 13. Він провів безсонну ніч, щоб закінчити роботу. 14. Він пожалкував, що спізнився. 15. Ніщо не могло змусити його рано встати. 16. Їм сподобалася ідея запросити музикантів. 17. Щоб перевозити прилади, їх слід спакувати. 18. Щоб перекласти статтю, потрібно користуватися словником. 19. Вона щаслива бути тут. 20. Він був радий попрацювати за кордоном.

3.5. NOUNS + INFINITIVE

We can use a noun + to + infinitive after there is / there are and have (got) to express an obligation: e.g. Don't disturb me. I've got a report to write this evening. Many nouns can be followed by to + Infinitive: e.g. She's finally made a decision to leave. Clare would be a fool to marry him.

Noun + to + Infinitive:

advice	His advice to continue was good
appeal	The appeal to reduce pollution was ineffective
attempt	Her attempt to locate them was unsuccessful
chance	In Britain, you will have a chance to improve your English
decision	The decision to increase taxes was not popular
desire	His desire to get a good job motivated him
dream	Her dream to become an actress was never realized
goal	His goal to run a marathon seemed unrealistic
motivation	Her motivation to enter university impressed them
need	Bob's need to be the center of attention was irritating
opportunity	The opportunity to live in New York interested Sandra
order	They followed the general's order to retreat
permission	Permission to enter the area was difficult to

	get
plan	Sandy's plan to move to Madrid bothered her parents
place	We've no place to live
pleasure	It's a pleasure to see you again
preparation	NASA's preparations to launch on Monday moved forward
proposal	Her proposal to host the party impressed the committee
reason	There's no reason to come
recommendation	His recommendation to close the school upset the community
refusal	Debra's refusal to help did not go unnoticed
reminder	Her reminder to review the vocabulary helped me pass the test
request	Their request to participate was granted
requirement	Their requirement to speak four languages was unreasonable
suggestion	His suggestion to leave seemed like a good idea
tendency	His tendency to tap his desk during a test annoyed me
time	It's time to leave
wish	Her wish to be treated normally was respected
way	One way to improve your English is to read novels

Exercise 1. Continue the following sentences:

1. After I spent so much time with the child, I see his tendency _____.
2. It's high time _____
3. My advice is _____.
4. You need a permission _____.
5. Our suggestion _____.
6. It was a real pleasure _____.
7. My motivation _____.
8. We liked her plan _____.
9. He has a strong desire _____.
10. Our teacher's only request _____.

Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Вони не послухали нашої поради не йти в похід у дощ.
2. Наше звернення до керівника підвищити зарплати поки-що розглядається.
3. Зроби спробу вивчати слова у реченнях.
4. Ти матимеш шанс вплинути на її рішення, коли зустрінешся з нею за обідом.
5. Його рішення відкрити готель остаточне?
6. Наша мрія побувати у Римі нарешті здійсниться.
7. Ваше бажання допомогти дуже вчасне.
8. Її мета – вступити до Оксфордського університету.
9. Яка мотивація в дітей брати участь у благодійному концерті?
10. Наша сім'я має потребу змінити місце проживання і переїхати ближче до центру, але поки-що, на жаль немає можливості це зробити.
11. Ми отримали наказ покинути приміщення.
12. Щоб будувати будинок, потрібно мати

дозвіл це робити. 13. Мені сподобався твій план спочатку піти в кіно, а тоді – на піцу. 14. Я отримую естетичне задоволення, коли слухаю музику сучасних композиторів «нюу ейдж». 15. Ось гарне місце, щоб влаштувати пікнік. 16. Не бачу жодної причини хвилюватися. 17. Вони не довіряють рекомендаціям лікаря приймати антибіотики. 18. Через відміну рейсу ми надіслали прохання відкласти зустріч. 19. Його відмова брати участь у змаганні з плавання мені зрозуміла. 20. Температура тіла дівчинки має тенденцію підніматися ближче до вечора. 21. У них нема часу відповідати на телефонні дзвінки. 22. Профілактика – це найкращий спосіб вберегтися від застуди.

Exercise 3. Revise the syntactic functions of the infinitive. Define the form and function of the infinitive:

1. To let him go was the only thing she could do. 2. His only intention was to help his friend. 3. I'm very glad to have met you. 4. He has forgotten to buy some milk. He must go to the shop again. 5. The girl was to move very quickly not to be noticed. 6. We decided to get the general idea of the project. 7. He behaves so strangely as if to attract attention.

INFINITIVES OF PURPOSE AND RESULT

Infinitives of Purpose

We use:

To

In order to

So as to

to express purpose: e.g. She was sent to England to / in order to / so as to be educated. I went to France not to study French, but to study architecture. I shut the door quietly so as not to wake the baby.

Infinitives of Result

The Infinitive can also describe a result or something surprising, especially with only and verbs such as find, discover, realize, etc.: e.g. They queued for hours at the box office only to discover that the show was sold out.

We also use the Infinitive after too and enough to talk about results. Too goes before adjectives or adverbs. It shows that something is more than necessary or wanted. It has a negative implication. Enough goes before nouns but after adjectives or adverbs. It shows that there is as much of something as is wanted, the right amount. It has a positive implication: e.g. That blue outfit was too informal to wear to the reception. She is strong enough to cope with the problem.

Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences:

1. Вона зайшла до офісу, щоб зателефонувати. 2. Її вибрали старостою не для того, аби вона пропускала лекції. 3. Щоб вийти заміж, дівчині потрібна згода батьків. 4. Ми взяли відпустку, щоб помандрувати Європою. 5. Щоб розширити свій кругозір слід багато читати. 6. Я зателефонував, щоб мені надали консультацію. 7. Він підійшов до вікна, щоб відчинити його. 8. Діти одягли шуби, щоб не змерзнути на вулиці. 9. Щоб пройти тест, потрібно набрати 200 балів. 10. Щоб привернути увагу аудиторії, він прокашлявся. 11. Я взяла з собою книгу, щоб мати що почитати в дорозі. 12. Ми пройшли навшипиньки через коридор, щоб нас не почули. 13. Партії розпочали

переговори, щоб прийняти рішення якомога швидше. 14. Потрібно діяти негайно, щоб не втрачати час. 15. Він заробляв багато, щоб допомагати своїй сім'ї. 16. Ми прийшли, щоб допомогти вам перенести речі. 17. Нас викликали, щоб поговорити з юристом. 18. Залиш двері незамкненими, щоб я могла увійти.

Exercise 5. Decide whether the sentence has positive or negative shade of meaning. Explain why:

1. It was too difficult (for me) to answer the question. 2. He is strong enough to carry that box. 3. We got to the station too late to catch the train. 4. I didn't have enough money to buy that beautiful sweater. 5. The cage you've bought is too small for the hamster to live in it. 6. I have too little time to go for a walk with you. 7. We've got enough energy to play football with kids. 8. It was too late for him to apologize. 9. We knew the place well enough to find our way even at night. 10. She is attentive enough not to make silly mistakes.

Exercise 6. Paraphrase using only to:

1. She went out at last. She discovered that it was raining. 2. We got the invitation. We realized that we cannot spare the time exactly on that day. 3. We caught the bus. We saw that it was full. 4. He returned home. He realized that there was nobody there. 5. They opened the fridge. They found out that it was empty. 6. I called my friend several times. I discovered that she was busy planting the flowers.

Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences:

1. Діти достатньо виховані, щоб не перебивати старших. 2. Ми занадто далеко зайшли в ліс, щоб знайти дорогу назад. 3. Вона достатньо добре знає англійську мову, щоб читати літературні твори в оригіналі. 4. Ми занадто довго не спілкувалися, щоб знайти спільні теми для розмови. 5. Він занадто добрий, щоб сказати ні, коли його просять про послугу. 6. Коробка достатньо велика, щоб помістити в неї телевізор. 7. Кімната занадто велика, щоб бути зручною. 8. Вона достатньо довго кричала, щоб її почули. 9. Столик достатньо низький, щоб за ним сиділи діти. 10. Твоя музика занадто тиха, щоб чути.

Exercise 8. Choose the correct variant:

1. She is _____ her mistake. a) too honest to admit; b) enough honest to admit; c) honest enough to admit; 2. The children are _____ alone. a) too young to walk; b) young enough to walk; c) enough young to walk; 3. The movie is _____ it with kids; a) enough violent to watch; b) too violent to watch; c) violent enough to watch; 4. The article is _____ without a dictionary. a) easy enough to be read; b) too easy to be read; c) enough easy to be read; 5. The room is _____ party in it. a) too large to have; b) enough large to have; c) large enough to have. 25

3.6. COMPLEX OBJECT WITH THE INFINITIVE

It is the construction in which the Infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the Common Case or a pronoun in the Objective Case. In the sentence this construction has the function of a Complex Object. It is used: b. After verbs denoting sense perception: to see, to feel, to observe, to watch, to notice: e.g. I felt the blood rush into my cheeks. I saw him approach the house. We noticed her put this on the shelf.

NB! If the verb to see has the meaning ‘to understand’ and is not really a verb of sense perception it is followed by a clause: I saw that he didn’t realize the danger. After the verbs to see and to notice the Complex Object is not used with the verb to be, but a subordinate clause is used: I saw that she was excited.

- After verbs denoting mental activity: to know, to think, to consider, to believe, to suppose, to expect, to imagine, to find: e.g. I know (знаю) him to be honest. Everybody expected them to marry N.B. After the verbs to think, to find, to consider the Infinitive can be omitted e.g. They found the flat (to be) comfortable.

- After verbs denoting wish and intention: to want, to wish, to mean, to intend e.g. I wish those books to be returned tonight. He intended me to go with him to India. I didn't intend her to see the painting until it was finished. I did not mean you to learn the poem by heart. I didn't mean this to happen at all.

- After verbs and expressions denoting feelings and emotions: to like, to dislike, to love, would hate (for), cannot bear e.g. I dislike you to speak with me like that. I cannot bear you to do that. I'd hate (for) him to think I wasn't interested (дуже не хотіла б, щоб).

- After verbs denoting compulsion: to make (змусити), to cause (змусити), to get (переконати, добитися, змусити), to have (змусити) e.g. Something made him turn his head. The noise caused him to wake up. We couldn't get him to sign the agreement. I couldn't get the engine to start.

COMPLETED ACTION

Active	Passive
<i>bare non-perfect active infinitive</i>	<i>Participle II</i>
Ida felt Simon <u>kiss</u> her on the cheek. = Іда відчула, як Саймон поцілував її у щоку.	Ida saw Simon <u>kissed</u> on the cheek. = Іда бачила, як Саймона поцілували в щоку.

ACTION IN PROGRESS

Active	Passive
<i>Participle I - non-perfect active</i>	<i>Participle I - non-perfect passive</i>
Ida felt Simon <u>kissing</u> her on the cheek. = Іда відчула, як Саймон цілував її в щоку.	Ida saw Simon <u>being kissed</u> on the cheek. = Іда бачила, як Саймона цілували в щоку.

Complex Object is NOT used:

1. If the verbs *to see, to feel, to sense* are used in the meaning *to realize*. A subordinate clause is used instead, e.g.

Stanley saw that Tom did not understand anything. = Стенлі бачив, що Том нічого не розуміє. (= Stanley realized that Tom did not understand anything.)

2. If the verb *to hear* has the meaning *to learn*. A subordinate clause is used instead, e.g.

I heard Professor Freeman had already published his new book. = Я чув, що професор Фрімер уже опублікував свою нову книгу. (= Someone told me that Professor Freeman had already published his new book.)

3. If the verbs *to see* and *to notice* in the meaning of *sense perception* are followed by the verb *'to be'*. A subordinate clause is used instead, e.g.

• I noticed that Alice was not well. = Я помітив, що Еліс погано себе почуває.

• Don saw that the owner of the house was in the garden. = Дон бачив, що хазяїн будинку був у саду.

Verbs of mental activity

2. There are quite a lot of verbs that can be used in this construction. The most frequently used verbs are as follows:

to think*	to believe*	to expect	to suppose	to know	to find*
to consider*	to prefer	to imagine*	to suspect	to understand	to trust
to picture					

Verbs of wishes, intentions and emotions

There are quite a lot of verbs that can be used in this construction. Some of them are:

to like	to love	to dislike	to hate	to want
to intend	would like	to mean	cannot bear*	

Verbs of inducement

There are not many verbs that can be used in this construction. Some of them are:

to make	to have	to get	to induce	to cause	to force	to urge
----------------	----------------	---------------	------------------	-----------------	-----------------	----------------

Verb of reporting and declaring

There are several verbs that can be used in this construction. Some of them are:

to declare	to claim	to report	to announce	to proclaim
-------------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------------	--------------------

Verbs denoting order, permission, prohibition and persuasion

There are several verbs that can be used in this construction. Some of them are:

to order	to command	to permit	to forbid	to prohibit	to allow
to invite	to warn	to let	to press	to ask	to help
to tell	to encourage	to persuade			

Certain phrasal verbs

There are several phrasal verbs after which Complex Object with infinitive can be used. Some of them are:

to appeal to	to count on	to listen to	to look for
to long for	to rely on	to wait for	to watch for

Exercise 1. Open the brackets:

1. Do you want (they, stay) at the hotel or with us? 2. I'd like (the professor, look through) my report. 3. Do you want (I, show) you the sights of the city? 4. We expect (he, arrange) everything by the time we come. 5. I want (she, tell) me the news in brief. 6. He expected (the meeting, hold) in the Red Room. 7. I would like (they, fix) an appointment for me for Tuesday. 8. We want (she, introduce) us to the president. 9. I don't want (they, be late) for dinner. 10. He expected (she, invite) to the party by the Smiths. 11. I'd like (the dress, buy) by Saturday. 12. I don't want (she, treat) like Alice. 13. We considered (he, be) an honest person. 14. I don't like (she, prevent) me from doing it. 15. I suspect (he, help) by her.

Exercise 2. Combine the sentences:

1. They did not notice us. We passed by. 2. He saw her. She burst into tears. 3. He hasn't heard us. We called his name. 4. They haven't seen the accident. It occurred at the corner. 5. She heard the footsteps. They stopped. 6. We many times heard him. He told this story. 7. She noticed the expression of his face. It changed suddenly. 8. I heard somebody. He mentioned my name. 9. I felt something hard. It hurt my leg. 10. I saw him. He crossed the road.

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences forming complex object:

1. I did not expect that she would forget about my birthday. 2. Do you know that he went abroad two days ago? 3. I like to watch how she dances. 4. She could hardly believe that he had been rescued. 5. He expects that everybody will be ready to do this work. 6. I don't like when the children are late for dinner. 7. Don't consider that he is a hero. He is an ordinary man. 8. I suspect that he has taken my money. 9. She likes to watch how the sun sets. 10. I hate when people shout at each other. 11. They suppose that he will cope with this work. 12. We expect that he will solve this problem soon. 13. He believes it is a mistake. 14. I consider that this business is very profitable. 15. I don't expect you will understand me. 16. They know that he is a responsible person. 17. We consider that he is a good professional. 18. She regards that he is a superman. 19. We all think that he is a gentleman. 20. They consider that it is the right decision.

Exercise 4. Open the brackets:

1. Where is Nick? — I saw (he, talk) to Kate a few minutes ago. 2. Parents always want (their children, be) the best. 3. I wouldn't like (such valuable presents, give) to me. 4. I noticed (he, write) something and (pass) it to Alice. 5. We suppose (they, apologize) to us. 6. She watched (the stars, sparkle) in the dark sky. 7. I did not expect (he, behave) in such a way. 8. We don't want (our planet, pollute). 9. I heard (he, work) in his study at night. 10. They expected (he, buy) a more expensive car.

Exercise 5. Answer the questions using complex object:

1. Have you ever seen Pat's smile? 2. Did your brother really pat the dean on the shoulder? 3. Have you ever seen how she cries? 4. Did you notice how this boy parked his car near our house? 5. Have you heard that George broke the Safety Code? 6. Did you see how Tom was deliberately knocked down by another football-player? 7. Did you notice a beautiful girl who drove Nick to the station? 8. Did you see him when he stopped for dinner at the pub?

Exercise 6. Open the brackets using wish/ want/expect etc. to complete the situations:

1. Someone told Sue I was going to visit her. (it / to be a surprise) 2. My parents were upset when I left home. (me / to stay with them) 3. Everybody tried to persuade Tom to play tennis. (Tom / to play tennis) 4. There will be a football match between Scotland and England soon. (England / to win) 5. In your place I would tell the police about it. (you / to inform) 6. She received a letter, but nobody knew who it was from. (anybody / know) 7. Tom was sure Jane would be late. (Jane / not to come in time) 8. Jack asked me to post the letter. (me / to post it) 9. He advised me to take an aspirin. (me / to take an aspirin) 10. Nobody is allowed to smoke in our office. (everyone / not to smoke).

Exercise 7. Translate into English:

1. Я не очікував, що ви повернетесь так рано. 2. Ми б хотіли, щоб ви доставили замовлені товари через два дні. 3. Я очікую, що завдання буде виконано до вечора. 4. Я не очікував, що він виявиться таким неввічливим. 5. Вона хотіла, щоб її туди запросили. 6. Він не сподівався, що його запитують про це. 7. Він не помітив, як ми наблизилися. 8. Ви чули, що діти обговорювали популярний серіал? 9. Ми не очікували, що цю новину скажуть по радіо. 10. Ми б хотіли, щоб ви визначилися з порядком денним. 11. Сподіваюся, сьогодні ви почуєте, як вона співає. 12. Коли ми почули, що дитина плаче, ми ввімкнули світло. 13. Ви не сподівайтесь застати її вдома. 14. Ми б хотіли, щоб ти встиг здати проект. 15. Вони мріють відсвяткувати річницю шлюбу. 16. Ти бачив, як він плаває? 17. Я б хотів, щоб мої речі не чіпали. 18. Я сподіваюся, що ти почекаєш на мене. 19. мені не подобається, коли ти так відповідаєш. 20. Шум змусив мене вийти в коридор. 21. Ми віримо, що ти влучиш у ціль. 22. Я не мав наміру образити тебе. 23. Не змушуй її повторювати двічі. 24. Вчитель не сподівається, що ти здаси екзамен. 25. Землетрус спричинив те, що будинок було зруйновано. 26. Ненавиджу, коли мене хтось перебиває. 27. Не слід сподіватися, що хтось тебе підтримає. 28. Ти змушуєш людей працювати занадто важко. 29. Мені не подобається, що ти говориш у мене за спиною. 30. Вона чекає, що ти знайдеш її дім. 31. Сподіваюся, ти не спізнишся на вечірку.

Exercise 8. Translate the sentences given below into English using either infinitive or participle in complex object wherever possible.

1. Діти спостерігали, як Пітер пірнав у річку, щоб дістати раків. 2. Боюся, що Пітер потонув. Я бачила, як він пірнув, але не бачила, як він винирнув. - Не турбуйтеся, він такий досвідчений плавець, що, швидше за все, він пірнув дуже далеко від того місця, де ви стоїте. 3. Ліз спостерігала, як її мама пече пиріжки, щоб навчитися робити це самій. 4. Ліз бачила, що мама спекла пиріг, але не знала, куди вона його поклала. 5. Вам подобається дивитися, як Сюзан грає в теніс? - Звичайно, у неї чудова техніка. 6. У зоопарку малютам сподобалося спостерігати, як маленькі мавпочки бігали одна за одною і гойдалися на гілках дерев. 7. У магазині бабуся завжди спостерігала, як зважують її товар, щоб її не обдурили. 8. Хлопчик з великою цікавістю спостерігав, як старий робить дерев'яні іграшки. 9. Чому ви так

злякалися, коли я до вас звернувся? - Я задумалася й не чула, як ви підійшли до мене. 10. Ви не бачили Доріс? - Вона повинна бути десь тут. Я не помітила, щоб вона виходила. 11. У нашої медсестри така легка рука, що я не відчула, як вона зробила мені укол. 12. Ви відчули, що стало холодніше? Я не бачив, щоб хто-небудь відкрив вікна. І я не чую, щоб працював кондиціонер. 13. Я дуже рада за вас. Усі чули, як ваше прізвище назвали в числі переможців. 14. Методист спостерігав, як студент-практикант давав урок, і залишився ним дуже задоволений. 15. Ви коли-небудь бачили, як падають зірки? - На жаль, ні. Я в серпні завжди багато працюю, а кажуть, саме в цьому місяці можна спостерігати, як падають зірки. 16. Вам коли-небудь доводилось спостерігати, як працюють бджоли? – Ні, я бджіл боюся, у мене алергія на бджолині укуси. 17. Я бачив, що начальник нашого відділу не зрозумів моєї пропозиції, і тому не був з нею згодний. Мені треба було якось змусити його подивитися на проблему моїми очима. 18. Не можна змушувати містера Блумфілда чекати. Я його добре знаю, він дуже нетерпляча людина, його легко розсердити й змусити втратити контроль над собою. Якщо ви зацікавлені в його допомозі, негайно запросіть його в кабінет. 19. Чому ви не змусили дівчинку випити гарячого молока з медом і маслом? Це поліпшило б її стан. - Я навіть не намагалася це зробити. Вона ненавидить гаряче молоко з дитинства. Ніхто й ніщо не змусить її його випити. 20. Не дозволяйте вашому синові приймати провал на цьому конкурсі молодих піаністів близько до серця. Якщо він вирішить, що він невдаха, він не зможе надалі змусити себе брати участь в інших конкурсах. 21. Директор нашої школи змушувала нас носити шкільну форму, що ми відверто ненавиділи. Вона не дозволяла дівчинкам надягати штани навіть під час щотижневих суботніх екскурсій. Я не розумію, що змушувало її бути з нами такою суворою.

3.7. COMPLEX SUBJECT WITH THE INFINITIVE

The Subjective Infinitive is a construction in which the Infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the Common Case or a pronoun in the Nominative Case. It doesn't serve as one part of the sentence. One of its component parts has the function of the subject, the other forms part of a compound verbal predicate. The construction is used with the following groups of verbs in the Passive Voice:

- with the verbs denoting sense perception e.g. He was heard to laugh. The rider was seen to disappear in the distance.

NB! If a process is expressed Participle I is used e.g. Her father was heard approaching the door at that moment.

- with the verbs denoting mental activity: to think, to consider, to expect, to believe etc e.g. He was considered to be kind. The manuscript is supposed to have been written in the 15th century.

- with to make : e.g. He was made to apologize.

- with to say, to report e.g. He is said to be writing a new novel. The delegation is reported to arrive on Monday.

- with the word groups to be likely, to be sure, to be certain e.g. He is certain to be sleeping. We are not likely (are unlikely) to see each other again.

- with to seem, to appear; to happen; to prove, to turn out e.g. They seemed to have forgotten him already. He turned out to be a good fighter. The experiment proved to be a failure. She happened to meet her old friend on her way home.

COMPLETED ACTION

Active	Passive
<i>'to' non-perfect active infinitive</i>	<i>'to' non-perfect passive infinitive</i>
Don <u>was seen to water</u> the flowers. = Бачили, що Дон полив квіти.	The flowers <u>were seen to be watered</u> . = Бачили, що квіти полили.

ACTION IN PROGRESS

Active	Passive
<i>Participle I - non-perfect active</i>	<i>Participle I - non-perfect passive</i>
Don <u>was seen watering</u> the flowers. = Бачили, як Дон поливав квіти.	The flowers <u>were seen being watered</u> . = Бачили, як квіти поливали.

Exercise 1. Point out the Subjective Infinitive construction:

1. The problems never really seemed to affect his mode of life. 2. The criminal is unlikely to rob the bank. 3. He happened to do a dishonorable act against his conscience. 4. He was seen to be developing the film. 5. If you throw mud you are sure to slip in it. 6. They were discussing where they should go on Sunday and she happened to overhear them. 7. She was heard to phone her friend. 8. In democracies the people seem to act as they please. 9. They proved to have very little sense of freedom and independence. 10. The headmaster is supposed to take care of the staff. 11. She was seen to be trying on a new dress. 12. Until now we were of the impression that he was sure to get his scholarship. 13. His activities seem to serve noble purposes. 14. They are expected to solve all the family problems. 15. We sent them our comments on their work but they appear to take no interest. 16. The man was seen to get into the house. 17. Her ex-husband is believed to be living in Rome. 18. The children are never allowed to stay at home alone. 19. The team is likely to win the game. 20. The novel is known to have been published abroad.

Exercise 2. Match the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrases with the parts of sentences:

1) The students are likely	a. to be emotionally fragile
2) My co-workers are supposed	b. to be very monotonous and tedious
3) My job appeared	c. to be a messy child
4) Julia's little son seems	d. to be a close-knit family
5) All my classmates are said	e. to consult our foreign partners
6) The Browns proved	f. to be sent to Boston University
7) Robert applied for a job but happened	g. to have arrived
8) The American delegation is reported	h. to make a negative impression at the interview

9) Little children are supposed	i. to visit us this year
10) Our friends are unlikely	j. to be doing well

Exercise 3. Rewrite the sentences using the Complex Subject:

1. They say that a lot of buildings are damaged. 2. It is said that a lot of people rushed into the streets out of their beds. 3. They say that the earthquake killed many people. 4. They say that a lot of people have lost their dwellings. 5. It is said that people are expecting help from the government. 6. They say that the rescue team is still working in the ruins. 7. People say that a lot of volunteers are helping the rescue team. 8. It is said that the rescue team have found some people alive. 9. It is said that the Prime Minister arrived at the scene. 10. People say that some buildings remained intact. 11. They say that people from the ruined houses need clothes. 12. It is said that a lot of people are looking for their relatives. 13. They say that many people need psychological help. 14. They say that the emergency team arrived within minutes after the alarm was given.

Exercise 4. Translate into English:

1. Виявилось, що він – хороший спеціаліст. 2. Відомо, що вона знає декілька мов програмування. 3. Вінера вважають батьком кібернетики. 4. Колись вважалося, що комп'ютери займають цілу кімнату. 5. Здається він вже купив новий комп'ютер. 6. Виявилось, що це питання має велике значення. 7. Повідомили, що делегація прибуде через тиждень. 8. Думають, що він пише програми. 9. Здається, ці двоє вчених працюють над однією й тією ж проблемою. 10. Кажуть, що математика – одна з найдавніших наук. 11. Виявляється, вони навчалися в одній школі. 12. Кого вважають найбагатшою людиною в світі? 13. Здається, на Вас чекають. 14. Не може бути, щоб він самостійно написав таку складну програму! 15. Схоже на те, що ми закінчимо переклад до кінця заняття. 16. Сподівалися, що цей експеримент буде вдалим. 17. Він виявився хорошим другом. 18. Ви навряд чи застанете її вдома. 19. Вони точно відсвяткують річницю шлюбу. 20. Ти точно влучиш у ціль. 21. Навряд чи ти здаси екзамен. 22. Ти ймовірно не знайдеш її дім. 23. Вона точно спізниться.

Exercise 5. Translate into English using complex subject after the verbs of evaluation.

1. Очі цього незвичайного старого, здавалося, бачили мене наскрізь. Він знав, що я брешу. 2. Виявилось, що Тіна зовсім забула про свою обіцянку поговорити з нашим начальником про моє підвищення. 3. Незважаючи на свою молодість, нові члени футбольної команди виявилися гарними гравцями, і гра була закінчена з рахунком 3:0. 4. Здавалося, що в цей момент чоловік, що сидів напроти мене, прочитав мої думки, тому що він піднявся і закрив двері купе. 5. Молода жінка, здавалося, читала, але я помітив, що за останні півгодини вона не перевернула ні однієї сторінки книги. 6. Село, у якому жила Міс Марпл, було маленьке й тихе. У ньому, здавалося, ніколи нічого не відбувалося. 7. Пітер виглядав таким втомленим, що здавалося, що він цілий день розвантажував вугілля, а не сидів за комп'ютером. 8. День виявився холоднішим, ніж ми припускали, і ми пошкодували, що не взяли з собою теплого одягу. 9. Ви випадково не знаєте, хто співає цю пісню? - Голос

здається дуже знайомим, але я не можу згадати прізвище виконавця. 10. Я, здається, зробив жакливу помилку. Людина, якій я нагрубив у ліфті, виявився нашим новим викладачем. 11. Ми прекрасно відпочили в Криму. У нашому житті, здавалося, було тільки дві проблеми: як не згоріти на сонці, і де провести вечір. 12. Тут так мило! Здається, усі насолоджуються цією прекрасною музикою. 13. Чому ти тут? Ти випадково не забув, що в 3.45 ти повинен бути в зубного лікаря? 14. Під час польоту двомісного пасажирського літака його почало зненацька бовтати з боку в бік. Переляканий пасажир закричав пілотові: «Ви, здається, забули, що я попереджав вас, що я лечу на літаку в перший раз у житті!» «Я теж», спокійно сказав пілот у відповідь. 15. На одному званому обіді зубний лікар, що тільки що приїхав з подорожі по Африці, розповідав іншим гостям: «Один раз трапилося так, що я впав у озеро, що, як говорили, кишить крокодилами. Не встиг я отямитися, як побачив, що до мене наближається величезний крокодил з величезною пащею с величезними гострими зубами. Здавалося, я навряд чи зможу уникнути смерті.

Але я не та людина, яку легко з'їсти. Зі мною, на щастя, були мої інструменти, і вже через кілька хвилин крокодил відпливав від мене з беззубою пащею. Він виявився не таким вже поганим пацієнтом. Мені не довелося просити його відкрити рот ширше.»

3.8. THE FOR...TO INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

In the For-To Infinitive Construction the Infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun or a pronoun preceded by the preposition for. We use for before the Infinitive when the subject of the Infinitive is different from the subject of the sentence: e.g. c.f. She went to WalMart to get some groceries. We bought a cage for Tom to keep his hamster in.

This construction can perform different functions:

1) Subject : e.g. For me to see you is the happiest minute in my life. 2) Predicative : e.g. That was for him to find out. 3) Complex object: e.g. He waited for her to speak. 4) Attribute : e.g. There is nobody for him to play with. 5) Adverbial modifiers of purpose or result: e.g. He stepped aside for me to pass. He spoke loud enough for you to hear.

Exercise 1. Point out the for...to infinitive constructions:

1. The main problem is for her to believe that he won't come back. 2. This house is just for you to see. 3. The first thing was for the child to be taken to the doctor. 4. The best thing was for the Robinsons not to get their son to sell his car. 5. The worst offer was for Andrew to leave his family and go abroad to work for that company. 6. The hardest problem was for the poor family to pay the rent. 7. The easiest way out is for John not to stay at a hotel but to rent a furnished room. 8. This paper is for you to type and send to our partner. 9. The linen is for Sandy to wash or to take to the laundry. 10. The book is for Henry to give back to Mike. 11. The video is for you to watch if you like. 12. There's nothing for us to talk

about.13. We have very little for them to give. 14. That was the last thing for her to say. 15. There was no time for them to pack the things. 16. There was nothing for the child to fear. 17. Unfortunately, I have nothing for you to drink. We've run out of wine. 18. There's nothing for you to admire here. 19. There's something for you to make fun of. 20. Here's a very interesting item for you to read. 21. This is not the right girl for you to marry. 22. That's a nice place for us to have a good time at. 23. I've found a good job for you to earn enough money.

Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Мені соромно просити тебе про це. 2. Ось інструкція, щоб ти нею скористався. 3. Він чекав, поки вона заговорить. 4. Я відійду, щоб ти пройшла. 5. Найкраще, що ти можеш зараз зробити – лягти і виспатись. 6. Розповідай достатньо голосно, щоб усі тебе почули. 7. Важливо, щоб вони пояснили ситуацію. 8. Батьки купили білети, щоб ми всі разом пішли в театр. 9. Він просив, щоб документи були роздруковані до другої години. 10. Не було про що їм говорити.

Exercise 3.. Translate into English using complex object and complex subject.

1. Неллі, здається, дуже сильно схудла. Вона дотримувалася якої-небудь дієти? 2. Тім, здається, дуже нервує з якогось приводу. Ти знаєш, що трапилось? 3. Ти, здається, знаєш тут всіх! Познайом мене ось із тим симпатичним хлопцем. 4. Моя граматика, здається, стає кращою. Я, здається, роблю менше помилок при перекладі речень з російської на англійську. 5. Здається, наша машина зламалася. Можливо, ми будемо добиратися до міста пішки. 6. Тесса, здається, вирішила цю проблему. Подзвони їй і довідайся, як їй це вдалося. 7. Я, здається, забула взяти свій твір. Швидше за все, мені доведеться вертатися додому. 8. Ми не очікували, що піде дощ, і не взяли із собою парасольки. 9. Я не впізнала Стіва в окулярах. Вони роблять його старшим. 10. Дозвольте хлопчикові прийняти рішення самому. Не змушуйте його робити все, як ви цього хочете. Це навряд чи допоможе йому в житті. 11. Як ти думаєш, ми зможемо почати презентацію вчасно? – Не впевнений. Начальники відділів, напевно, прийдуть рівно о 9 годині, а генеральний директор, швидше за все, спізниться, а без нього, як ти розумієш, починати не можна. 12. Делла була в жаху, коли побачила, що на її стіл принесли декілька дуже дорогих страв. Вона розуміла, що в неї недостатньо грошей, щоб розплатитися за все це. Але виявилось, що за обід уже сплачено, і вона не знала, хто б це міг зробити. 13. Поки місіс Коліан була у лікарні, вона дуже турбувалася про свого старого собаку. Але виявилось, що усій цей час за собакою доглядали, і він ні в чому не відчував потреби, крім турботливого голосу своєї старої господарки. 14. Повідомили, що до кінця тижня погода зіпсується й, найбільш ймовірно, піде дощ. Очікується, що на початку наступного тижня сильно похолодає. 15. Передбачається, що ціни на багато споживчих товарів під кінець року зростуть, а ціни на продукти харчування знизяться. 16. Кажуть, професор Траут побував на Тибеті й навіть учився в буддійських ченців. Дивно, що сам він про це поки не сказав жодного слова. 17. Повідомляється, що літак був затриманий у Бангкоку, оскільки один з

пасажирів був обвинувачений у контрабанді наркотиків. 18. Заручників змусили вийти з літака і здати всі гроші й коштовності. Їм дозволили залишити тільки особисті ліки й зміну білизни, і замкнули їх у сараї на всю ніч. 19. У нас занадто багато роботи. Вона навряд чи буде закінчена до наміченого строку. 20. Напевно, хто-небудь змусить Даррелла розібрати всі ті папки, які він звалив у купу на підлозі. Не годиться ставитися так до роботи.

3.9. INFINITIVES IN THE INDIRECT SPEECH AND IN DEFINING PHRASES

After the verbs

Ask Forget

Decide Explain

Know Understand

Remember etc

we use a question word (what / where/ how/ who...) + to + Infinitive.

e.g. We asked how to get to the theatre. Have you decided where to spend your honeymoon? He explained to me how to ride a bicycle. I do not know what to do with this device. Will you please show me how to open this door? Ask him where to start.

Infinitives in Defining Phrases

We can often replace the relative clause after

♣ a superlative,

♣ an ordinal numeral,

♣ or one, next, last, only

with an Infinitive Phrase:

e.g. The youngest person that entered the programme was just fourteen → The youngest person to enter the programme was just fourteen. The window seat is usually the first one which is taken → The window seat is usually the first one to be taken. Linda was the only one who stayed for the whole performance → Linda was the only one to stay for the whole performance.

Exercise 1. Change the sentences into the indirect speech:

1. The teacher said to the pupils: "Repeat the rule." The teacher asked . 2. "Be careful, or else you will spill the milk," said my mother to me. My mother did not want . 3. "My daughter will go to a ballet school," said the woman. The woman expected_____. 4. The man said: "My son will study mathematics." The man wanted _____. 5. "Oh, father, buy me this toy, please," said the little boy. The little boy asked_____. 6. "Wait for me after school," said Ann to me. Ann asked_____. 7. "Fix the shelf in the kitchen," my father said to me. My father wanted _____. 8. "It will be very good if you study English," said my mother to me. My mother would like _____. 9. "Bring me some water from the river, children," said

our grandmother. Our grandmother asked_____. 10. "Come to my birthday party," said Kate to her classmates Kate invited_____. 11. The biology teacher said to us: "Collect some insects in summer." The biology teacher expected_____ 12. "Don't eat ice cream before dinner," said our mother to us. Our mother didn't allow_____.

Exercise 2. Translate the sentences:

1. Вони перші вгадали відгадку. 2. Ця книга найкраща для читання діткам. 3. Старосту, як правило, запитують першим. 4. Останній, хто виходить має вимкнути світло. 5. Це останнє зауваження, яке тобі було зроблене. 6. Вона єдина, хто прийшов їх підтримати. 7. Найстаршому учасникові проекту, який дійшов до третього етапу, було 2 роки. 8. Він єдиний у своїй групі, хто не здав курсову. 9. Наступний поїзд, який їде до Львова, відправиться за годину. 10. Наступний студент, який відповість правильно, отримає відмінно. 11. Єдиний, хто її знає добре – це її брат. 12. Єдиний, хто бачив нас у парку, був міліціонер. 13. Моя дочка перша виступатиме на концерті. 14. Ти вже третій, хто про це питає.

Exercise 3. Replace perfect tenses with perfect infinitives:

1. Emily has recently got married. She is the first of my sisters who has done so. Emily is the first of my sisters _____. 2. Christopher Chatterway broke the four minute mile. He was the first athlete who did._____. 3. Marie Curie won a Nobel prize in two different disciplines. She is the only person who has done so. _____. 4. Samantha arrived first and left last._____. 5. Mike Careless has signed the petition. He is the most famous actor who has signed. _____. 6. The next one of you lot who makes a sound will have to stay on after class. _____. 7. This is the best thing that has happened in a long time. _____. 8. No woman has received this honour before. _____. 9. They selected him first._____. 10. Somebody else has already asked me that question today. (person) _____

Exercise 4. Translate into English using different infinitive constructions.

1. Саймон не міг не посміхнутися, побачивши незграбне щеня на паркетній підлозі. Його лапи роз'їжджалися в різні боки, і він не міг зрозуміти, що відбувається. Щеня було занадто мале, щоб забрати його від матері, і Саймон вирішив почекати ще пару тижнів. 2. Чому б не запросити містера Стоуна на вечерю? - Звичайно, тобі вирішувати, кого запрошувати, але хіба ти не бачиш, який це самовдоволений тип. Він завжди знайде, чим похвастатися, і як виставити себе з найкращого боку. 3. Було мудро з твого боку попросити поради в старого містера Дрейка. Кажуть, він любить, коли до нього звертаються по допомогу молоді співробітники. Він переймається до них симпатією й швидко домагається їхнього підвищення по службі. 4. Перекладачеві було важко стежити за думкою оповідача, тому що той перескакував з одного предмета розмови на інший, і жодне з його речень логічно не переходило в інше. Переводити його було справжньою мукою. 5. Вікарій, ви не пом'ятеєте, хто останнім виходив із церкви в день убивства місіс Стрендж? - Я бачив, як всі парафіяни залишали церкву, але не можу

сказати, хто з них був першим, а хто останнім. Хоча, почекайте, здається, містер Трипфілд був останнім, кому я потис руку в той день. 6. Полковник Ніколсон не та людина, про яку все можна сказати з першого погляду. Він здається похмурим і мовчазним, але насправді, це людина, на яку можна покластися у важку годину. 7. Думають, що грабіжники добре знали розпорядок дня банку. Очевидно, вони вивчили його задовго до пограбування. Бачили, як той самий клієнт приходив у банк щодня й подовгу там сидів, роблячи вигляд, що заповнює якісь документи. Вважають, що це був один із членів банди грабіжників. 8. Ходять чутки, що містер Стоун розводиться зі своєю п'ятою дружиною. Знову бачили як він виходив із шикарного ресторану з юною блондинкою. Кажуть, його остання дружина збирається подавати на нього до суду. 9. Хоча я повідомив про свій приїзд заздалегідь, мене, здавалося, ніхто не чекав. Секретарка змусила мене просидіти в приймальні півгодини, поки вона пояснювала містерові Філду, хто я й навіщо я приїхав. Коли мене, нарешті, запросили в його кабінет, виявилось, що документи, за якими я приїхав, ще не розглянуті і не підписані.

Exercise 5. Use the correct form of infinitive of the verb in brackets with the appropriate modal verb.

1. I saw a ghost last night. – You _____ (not to see) a ghost; there aren't any ghosts. You _____ (to dream) it.

2. As I was standing in the hall your dog bit me. – It _____ (not to be) my dog; he was with me all day. It _____ (to be) my brother's dog.

3. I _____ (to do) it. It was my duty, but I didn't do it.

4. He _____ (not to catch) the 9.20 train because he didn't leave home till 9.25.

5. You _____ (to repeat) it. It was not necessary.

6. Who gave you my address? – I don't remember, it _____ (to be) Tom. - It _____ (not to be) Tom; he doesn't know it.

7. You _____ (to buy) flowers, we have plenty in the garden. But thank you, anyway.

8. This picture may be a fake; on the other hand, it _____ (to be) painted by one of the Dutch masters.

9. I said that I couldn't find my pen and he said perhaps somebody _____ (to borrow) it.

Exercise 6. Translate into English using different forms of infinitive and infinitive constructions.

1. Ваша версія того, що відбулося, занадто примітивна, щоб я міг вам повірити. З вашого боку наївно думати, що ми не зможемо перевірити ваше алібі. Чи не хочете ви що-небудь додати, перш ніж ми почнемо опитувати людей, з якими, по ваших словах, ви провели вчорашній вечір? 2. Ви пом'ятаєте, що ви повинні були віддати Пітеру гроші? - Ні. Вони усе ще в мене в кишені. Але я побачусь з ним сьогодні ввечері, і я обіцяю, що не забуду віддати їх йому. 3. Якщо вони будуть продовжувати так мляво грати,

вони, напевно, програють цей матч. Я думаю, їм потрібно замінити нападаючих. - Можливо, ви й праві, але це тренерові вирішувати, які заміни робити під час гри. 4. Кажуть, Тім і Джулія одружилися. - Так, бачили як вони виходили з магістрату, але це нічого не значить. Вони могли ходити туди з якого-небудь іншого приводу. 5. Перестаньте поширювати плітки про Едну й Роберта. Боб без пам'яті від своєї дружини, і малоймовірно, що він залишить її заради якої-небудь іншої жінки. Ви б краще займалися своїми власними справами. 6. Джонні, ти б краще пішов і вимив обличчя, тому що я бачу, що ти їв на сніданок. - І що ж це, сер? - Некруте яйце,. - Ви не праві, вчителю, некруті яйця я їв учора. 7. Містер Браун, я бачив, що ви поцілували мою сестру. Ви хочете, щоб я нікому про це не розповідав? - Звичайно, Джиммі. От тобі долар, щоб ти тримав язик за зубами. - За один долар я нікому про це нічого не скажу, але за два долари я дозволю вам довідатися, кого ще я бачив цілувавшим мою сестру. 8. У залі суду три свідки заприсяглися, що бачили, що обвинувачуваний украв свиню. Наступного дня в суд прийшли ще 10 чоловік і заприсягли, що вони не бачили, як обвинувачуваний крав свиню. «У цій країні завжди вирішує більшість», сказав суддя й дозволив обвинувачуваному йти додому. 9. Один парубок мирно перетинав поле, на якому паслася череда корів. Коли він підходив до паркану, до нього раптово позаду підбіг бик і перекинув його через паркан. Прийшовши в себе від падіння, парубок заліз на паркан і побачив сердиту тварину, що розриває землю задніми ногами. «Я хочу, щоб ти вибачився,» сказав парубок. «Я розумію, що ти змусив мене перестрибнути через паркан з ревнощів. Але справжні джентльмени спочатку попереджають, а потім атакують.» 10. Кажуть, ти збираєшся заміж за Теда. Звичайно, його вважають дуже талановитим і навіть геніальним. Але іноді він здається таким дивним! Життя з ним навряд чи буде легким. Чому б гарненько не зважити всі 'за' і 'проти'? - Я вже все вирішила. Моє життя з ним напевно буде нелегким, але, принаймні, воно буде не таким нудним, як з усіма іншими моїми шанувальниками. 11. Мама, змусь Фреда поводитися пристойно! Щораз, коли я випадково вдаряю його ціпком по голові, він починає голосно ревіти. Він уже розполохав всіх моїх друзів, і із-за нього ніхто не хоче зі мною дружити. 12. Ти не знаєш, що змушує нашого доктора, містера Гарднера так часто ходити на місцевий цвинтар? - У цьому немає нічого дивного. Для лікаря природно відвідувати своїх колишніх пацієнтів. 13. Батько попросив свого семирічного сина кинути в поштову скриньку лист своєму армійському другові по дорозі до школи. Повернувшись додому, син сказав, що він виконав прохання батька. «Невже ти не помітив, що на конверті не було адреси?» запитав батько, «Я забув її написати.» «Я помітив», відповів хлопчик, «але подумав, що це військова таємниця». 14. Молодий пілот бачив, що його кохана дівчина спостерігає, як він злітає. Щоб покрасуватися перед нею, він зробив надзвичайно складну петлю прямо над її головою. Після приземлення він запитав її, чи не було їй страшно. «Звичайно, було», сказала дівчина. «Але не засмучуйся. Згодом практика дозволить тобі краще літати, а звичка змусить мене перестати хвилюватися.» 15. Один парубок розповідав

своєму другові про достоїнства своєї коханої. За час усього монологу друг не проронив ні єдиного слова. Коли, нарешті, парубок запитав його думку про свою улюблену, друг сказав, «Кажуть, любов сліпа. Але у твоєму випадку це, напевно, невірно. Ти, здається, бачиш у своєї улюбленій більше чеснот, ніж всі інші, хто її знає». 16. Один молодий автор уперше читав свою нову трагедію перед публікою. Він помітив, що один із критиків, що увесь час сидів у капелюсі, майже після кожної репліки знімає його. Парубку дуже хотілося довідатися, що змушувало маститого критика знімати капелюх. Наприкінці першого акту п'єси він запитав у нього про це. «Я завжди знімаю капелюх, коли бачу або чую щось знайоме. Тому щораз, коли я чув, як ви читали яку-небудь побиту фразу, я знімав капелюх».

Exercise 7. Translate into English. Use the Infinitive in the function of:

a) a subject (a,b,c) 1. Знати мову - значить вільно говорити і писати на ній. 2. Думати так було б невірно. 3. Переконувати його було марно. 4. розсердився було б нерозумно. 5. Пояснити йому буде справою важким. 6. Допомогати їй значить просто все зробити самій. 7. Сказати "так" було неможливо, сказати "ні" було б неввічливо. 8. Провести цю статтю займе близько двох годин. 9. З моєї кімнати можна було почути те, що відбувалося на вулиці. 10. Її обов'язком було підтримувати порядок в домі. 11. Щоб дістатися до Львова на потязі, займає чимало часу. 12. Було дуже важко робити вигляд, що ти не розумієш.

b) a predicative (a, b) 1. Єдиний вихід з положення - це зараз же все розповісти. 2. Його хобі - колекціонування марок. 3. Вашою роботою буде догляд за лабораторними тваринами. 4. Єдиний шанс встигнути на потяг - це знайти таксі. 5. Його єдиним бажанням було дістатися до будинку. 6. З нею було важко мати справу. 7. На нього було не дуже приємно дивитися. 8. У цьому будинку зручно жити. 9. За цим столом зручно працювати. 10. Цей вірш легко вивчити напам'ять. 11. Результати неможливо передбачити.

c) an object (a, b, c, d) 1. Вона, ймовірно, була рада бачити нас. 2. Він боявся, що вони його побачать. 3. Їй було шкода, що вона упустила цю можливість. 4. Він запросив своїх друзів подивитися його нову квартиру. 5. Філіп обіцяв пообідати з ними в наступну неділю. 6. Його последнее слово змусило все зрозуміти. 7. Я вважаю за необхідне пояснити йому все докладно. 8. Я не знаю, що й думати про нього. 9. Вони не знали, в який бік прямувати. 10. Ми не знали, що сказати в такому випадку. 11. Майкл прикидався, що читає газету. 12. Чому ти так здивована, що він отримав двійку?

d) an attribute (a, b, c, d) 1. Він першим перетнув фінішну лінію. 2. Хто останній розмовляв з ним? 3. У вас ще є що сказати? 4. Я тобі повинен щось показати. 5. У них дуже багато справ. 6. Їй нічого було сказати, так як було соромно. 7. Хтось повинен першим почати говорити. 8. У нього були діти, про яких він повинен був піклуватися. 9. У нього було багато новин, які він повинен був негайно повідомити Ральфу. 10. У нього був невеликий багаж, який слід було упакувати. 11. Це джемпер, який можна носити з брюками або широкою спідницею. 12. Дайте мені час подумати, будь ласка.

e) adverbial modifiers 1. Вона говорить по-англійськи настільки добре, що її можна прийняти за англійку. 2. Занадто вона молода, щоб приймати її всерйоз. 3. Питання занадто складний, щоб на нього відразу відповісти. 4. Занадто він ледачий, щоб читати книги в оригіналі. 5. Я прийшла сюди не за тим, щоб зі мною поводитися як з дитиною. 6. Хлопчики стояли у дворі і не йшли, щоб їх теж взяли з собою. 7. Він ще раз прочитав статтю, щоб краще її зрозуміти. 8. Він зупинився, щоб закурити. 9. Що я могла зробити, як не покарати його за такий вчинок? 10. Він дивився на неї, немов очікуючи відповіді. 11. Він перетнув вулицю, щоб привітатися з другом.

REVISION

Exercise 1. Translate into English. Use the Infinitive in the function of parenthesis. 1. М'яко кажучи, ви мене здивували. 2. Для початку вона відкрила всі вікна. 3. По правді кажучи, я дуже втомився. 4. Щонайменше, ми були здивовані. 5. Сказати по правді, я не люблю каші. 6. Найвідоміша книга Джерома - "Троє в човні, не рахуючи собаки". 7. Почнемо з того, що приготуємо салат. 8. На довершення всього, я потрапив під сильний дощ. 9. Щоб бути більш точним, фільм залишає бажати кращого. 10. Щоб бути абсолютно відвертим, він не благородна людина. 11. Я дуже голодний, якщо говорити правду. 12. Це дуже дивно, щонайменше.

Exercise 2. Give the English equivalents for the following phrases. Make up sentences with them. По правді кажучи, щоб бути абсолютно відвертим, на довершення всього, для початку, м'яко кажучи, не кажучи більше, немає потреби говорити, щоб бути більш точним, коротше кажучи, як не дивно це звучить.

Exercise 3. Translate into English. Use the Infinitive in the function of a predicate. 1. Чому тобі витратити час на цю роботу? 2. Чому не вибачитися, якщо він знає, що він не правий? 3. Чому не подзвонити, щоб попередити його про це? 4. Чому не подзвонити їм і не привітати їх? 5. Чому допомагати йому? Він може робити це сам. 6. Чому б не купити ці джинси? Вони тобі йдуть. 7. Чому їхати туди саме зараз? 8. Чому не розповісти йому правду? Так буде краще, я думаю. 9. - Я втомилася. - Чому б не лягти спати раніше? 10. Чому приходити так рано? Не турбуйтеся, ми вже організували все заздалегідь. 11. Чому б не запропонувати їм приєднатися до нас? 12. Чому нам поспішати? У нас ще є достатньо часу.

Exercise 4. Translate into English. Comment on the form and function of the Infinitives 1. Я щаслива запросити вас на вечір. 2. Я рада, що мене часто запрошують на прем'єри. 3. Я щаслива, що мене запросили на новий спектакль в "Сатирикон". 4. Хочу розповісти вам останні новини. 5. Хочу, щоб мені розповіли цю історію. 6. Я рада, що мені розповіли про це. 7. Роберт не збирається звинувачувати вас. 8. Він не припускав, що його звинуватять. 9. Мені шкода, що я завдаю вам стільки клопоту. 10. Мені шкода, що потурбувала вас. 11. Діти люблять вигадувати різні історії. 12. Діти обожнюють, коли їм розповідають страшні історії. 13. Ось план кінотеатру, який буде побудований на цій площі. 14. Дівчинка боялася, що її

поведуть до зубного лікаря. 15. Ми були дуже раді, що поговорили з ним. 16. Я все це говорю, щоб мене правильно зрозуміли. 17. Пропозиція була настільки оригінальним, що викликало загальний інтерес. 18. З цією думкою важко було розлучитися. 19. Вони продовжували обговорювати проблему. 20. Я починаю так думати. 21. Вам не потрібно чекати. 22. У мене немає часу пояснювати це тобі зараз.

Exercise 5. Translate into English. Comment on the function of the Infinitives. 1. Цю ручку дуже зручно тримати і користуватися нею - справжнє задоволення. 2. Подати у відставку (to quit) означає програти гру. 3. Сенс в тому, щоб знати, як користуватися цим ключем. 4. Ці дані важко знайти. 5. За цим столом приємно працювати. 6. Любити значить жертвувати. 7. Мое завдання - проінструктувати вас. 8. Змушений зізнатися, що ви маєте рацію. 9. Коли ти почнеш думати про майбутнє, синку? 10. Цю програму дуже легко встановити. 11. На неї приємно дивитися, і дуже легко мати з нею справу. 12. Йому слід було поступитися. 13. Вам слід сісти на дієту. 14. Цим цифрам важко повірити. 15. Слова цієї пісні легко запам'ятати. 16. Часто Марію було важко контролювати. 17. Гарного керуючого, як ви, важко знайти. 18. Причину їх відмови легко вгадати. 18 19. Щойно розпочався дощ. 20. Вони повинні будуть обговорювати цю проблему завтра.

Exercise 6. Translate the sentences into English using Complex Objects. 1. Вона спостерігала, як він вийшов з дому. 2. Хто бачив, що вони вийшли з будинку? 3. Він спостерігав, як дружина налила йому каву і поставила чашку на стіл. 4. Я хочу, щоб ви розповіли мені що-небудь про своїх батьків. 5. Я бачила, що Дженні вже спакувала чемодан. 22 6. Ви хочете, щоб я пішла туди зараз? 7. Вона ніколи не чула, щоб вони згадували його ім'я. 8. Він змусив себе стримати своє слово. 9. Не дозволяйте їм турбувати його, він дуже зайнятий зараз. 10. Розпорядіться замовити квитки на поїзд. 11. Нехай вони напишуть контрольну роботу ще раз. 12. Звук його гучного голосу змусив її здригнутися.

Exercise 7. Translate the sentences into English. Comment on the functions and groups of verbs. 1. Вона вважає їх прекрасними студентами. 2. Я змушую себе вправлятися і робити присідання близько десяти хвилин щоранку. 3. Я не хочу, щоб це відбулося. 4. Чому ви змусили нас так довго чекати? 5. Вона передбачає, що вони будуть все робити вчасно. 6. Вона знає, як змусити людей робити саме те, що потрібно їй. 7. Ми помітили, що якісь хлопчачки забралися в сусідський сад. 8. Ми чули, що вона знайшла нову роботу. 9. Я відчув, що це правда, і відчув, як у мене закалатало серце. 10. Коли я потрапляю на Арбат, то дуже люблю спостерігати, як малюють художники. 11. Мама не дозволяє мені грати в футбол. 12. Директор розпорядився, щоб принесли пошту. 13. Вона не може змусити дитину з'їсти весь суп. 14. Не дозволяйте йому є стільки цукерок і шоколаду. 15. Коли ви очікуєте, що вони прийдуть? 16. Розпорядіться, щоб хто-небудь приніс крейда. 17. Чому змушуєш його кататися на ковзанах, якщо він не хоче?

Exercise 8. Translate into English. Comment on the functions. 1. Кажуть, що він кращий доктор в нашому місті. 2. Чи бачили, як він перегорнув

сторінку і почав читати. 3. Чи чули, що він незабаром піднявся наверх. 4. Вам дозволять йти разом зі мною? 5. Джейн, здається, раніше, ніж ви, виявила бажання допомогти їм. 6. Багато з пасажирів, мабуть, були туристами. 7. Вони сказали, що подібне навряд чи трапляється двічі. 8. Очевидно, він збирається стати лікарем. 9. Дітям не дозволялося чіпати кроликів. 10. Виявилось, що я його добре знаю. 11. З того часу ви, здається, дуже сильно змінилися. 12. Ви чули, як грюкнули входні двері. 13. Передбачалося, що ми зустрінемося о шостій годині біля школи. 14. Навряд чи вона написала записку. 15. Здавалося, що вони вже зовсім його забули. 16. Ймовірно, вона була єдиною людиною, яка залишиться тут назавжди. 17. Рочестер випадково зустрів Джейн по дорозі додому. 18. Як відомо, англійська письменниця Войнич жила протягом декількох років в Петербурзі і вивчала російську літературу. Вважають, що російська література вплинула на її творчість. 19. Я, здається, добре знаю вас. Я, мабуть, зустрічав вас у своїх батьків. 20. Дуже ймовірно, що вони будуть дякувати мене за цю допомогу. 21. Здається, ви багато знаєте про це місто. 22. Чи чули, як відчинилися двері, і хтось увійшов до кімнати. 23. Сталося так, що мене не було вдома, коли він дзвонив. 24. Коли він говорив, він, здається, більше говорив про себе. 25. Чи чули, як він грав на роялі і щось співав. 26. Сталося так, що я сказав, що ви знаєте його. 27. Повідомляють, що експедиція досягла місця призначення. 28. Мабуть, вона погодилася поїхати на екскурсію до Смоленська. 29. Олександр хотів задати ще питання, але, мабуть, змінив свій намір.

Exercise 9. Translate into English using ‘the for-to-infinitive’ construction. 1. Вам корисно бути на свіжому повітрі кожного дня. 2. Їм буде простіше поїхати туди на метро. 3. Буде дуже мило, якщо ви їй про це розповісте. 4. Не мені її критикувати. 5. Дітям там ніде грати. 6. Мені тут більше нічого робити. 7. Ти чекаєш, щоб я висловив свою думку? 8. Мама спекла пиріг, щоб ми з'їли його за вечерею. 9. Чай був такий смачний, що ми не змогли відмовитися від другої чашки. 10. Вона говорила так повільно, що ми розуміли кожне слово. 11. На мою думку, вам краще не поспішати. 12. У нас занадто мало часу. Я не можу тобі все розповісти зараз. 13. Я залишила листи на столі, щоб Містер Браун підписав їх. 14. Сподіваюся, ви розумієте, що мені дуже незручно залишатися в місті влітку. 15. Все настільки просто, що кожен може це зробити сам. 16. Студентам першого курсу поки що важко читати газети, видані в Англії

Exercise 10. Translate into English. State the function of the Infinitive Phrase. 1. Не знаю, куди б піти сьогодні ввечері. 2. Ось план, як дістатися до станції. 3. Основні труднощі в тому, як це їй пояснити. 4. Ти вирішила, куди їхати влітку? 5. Питання в тому, кого запросити. 6. Не знаю, втрутитися мені чи ні. 7. Він вагався, чи йти йому на зустріч або залишитися вдома. 8. Мені дуже сподобалося його пояснення, як вдосконалювати англійську мову. 9. Зовсім не ясно, як це робити. 10. Потім вони обговорили тему, який маршрут подорожі вибрати і що з собою взяти. 11. Він думає про можливість, як познайомитися з нею. 12. Головне - передати тему, ідею і основні події цієї

розповіді. 13. Вони не знали, що йому сказати. 14. Ми сумнівалися, не розповісти нам все мамі.

Exercise 11. Translate into English. Use the particle 'to' where necessary.

1. Мій брат може прекрасно говорити по-французьки. 2. Я хотів поговорити з Ніком по телефону, але не міг знайти його номера. 3. Дозвольте допомогти Вам. 4. Що змушує тебе думати, що ти маєш рацію? 5. Тобі давно пора лягати спати. 6. Вона відчула, що він говорить неправду. 7. Вона хотіла, щоб її син добре закінчив школу. 8. Я не хотів, щоб ви мене чекали. 9. Ви випадково не знаєте цю людину? 10. Ваш друг, здається, дуже цікавиться давньою історією. 11. Ми чули, що дівчинка сміялася від радості. 12. Чути, що він важко дихає. 13. Вони почали розуміти причину його поведінки. 14. Нам потрібно купити трохи хліба і масла? 15. Я не можу не захоплюватися її красномовством! 16. Чому б не спекти яблучний пиріг? 17. Лікар не допустить, щоб вони її турбували. 18. Я, мабуть, піду пішки. 19. Нам нічого не залишається, як чекати. 20. Він пропонує їй вибрати (щоб вона вибрала) цю картину. 21. Тітонька Поллі змусила Тома прибратися в кімнаті. 22. Тома змусили прибрати в кімнаті. 23. Що змусило її відмовитися від цього проекту?

4. THE GERUND

The Gerund is a non-finite form of the verb which has both: nominal and verbal characteristics. The Gerund developed from the verbal noun which in course of time verbalized preserving at the same time its nominal character. The Gerund is formed by adding the suffix –ing to the stem of the verb and it coincides in form with Participle I.

The Nominal Characteristics of the Gerund:

1) It can perform the functions of subject, object and predicative e.g. Smoking is harmful. (subject). I like making people happy. (object). His hobby is collecting coins. (predicative).

2) It can be preceded by a preposition e.g. I'm very tired of rowing.

3) It can be modified by a Noun in the Possessive Case or a Possessive Pronoun e.g. Is there any objections to my seeing her? I insisted on my sister's consulting the doctor.

The Verbal Characteristics of the Gerund. They are the same as those of the Participle:

1) The Gerund of transitive verbs can take a direct object. e.g. I like reading books.

2) It can be modified by an adverb e.g. She burst out crying bitterly.

3) It has tense distinctions. The Gerund of transitive verbs has also voice distinctions.

Exercise 1. Point out gerunds:

1. Talking like this foolish. 2. She loves sewing clothes for her family. 3. I like reading poetry. 4. He is afraid of meeting you. 5. Reading in poor light will affect the eyes. 6. He's worried about hurting your feelings. 7. She loves singing the songs. 8. Talking loudly is bad manners. 9. Rosy did not like staying indoors

during holidays. 34 10. I'm tired of waiting. 11. Teaching English is very interesting. 12. I'm interested in learning how to swim. 13. I like doing pottery. 14. Nobody really loves working on weekends. 15. We talked about taking French lesson this term. 16. I'm excited about knowing my quiz score. 17. Everyone enjoys acting out a traditional story. 18. Do you feel like eating hamburger?

Exercise 2. Fill in the correct gerund:

1. Dan enjoys _____ science fiction. 2. Cheryl suggested _____ a movie after work. 3. I miss _____ in the travel industry. Maybe I can get my old job back. 4. Do you mind _____ me translate this letter? 5. You've never mentioned _____ in Japan before. How long did you live there?

Exercise 3. Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1. Creat new jobs in this community has greatly helped the economy. 2. To explaining my position would take a great deal of time. 3. Eliminate toxic waste from the environment is crucial to the future health of our children. 4. To consuming electrical energy without replenishing it is dangerous. 5. Generate some new ideas will greatly enhance our marketing strategy.

Exercise 4. Underline the best option for each sentence:

1. When I retire I'm going to learn to play / playing the saxophone. 2. My crazy dentist wanted taking out / to take out all of my teeth! 3. It's difficult to find / finding a good builder in Valencia. 4. I haven't got any change. Would you mind to lend / lending me a coin for the coffee machine? 5. Finally, at the age of 49, Danny decided getting / to get married. 6. Would you like going / to go out for a drink tomorrow night? 7. Michael isn't allowed drinking / to drink Coke because it's bad for his teeth. 8. If the computer isn't working, why not try to hit / hitting it with a hammer?

Exercise 5. Revise the use of the infinitive after verbs and open the brackets putting the verb into the form of gerund or infinitive:

1. I don't mind _____ (work) in an open-space office. 2. He promised _____ (help) me with the project. 3. He is worried about _____ (lose) his job. 4. (study) _____ for exams is very tiring. 5. I'm saving money _____ (buy) a new car. 6. She managed _____ (not laugh) when he came in. 7. I enjoy _____ (not go) shopping on Saturdays. 8. I'm looking forward to _____ (see) you again soon. 9. She is afraid of _____ (fly)

Exercise 6. Use the right form of the Gerund of the verbs in brackets.

1. We insist on (do) the work right now. The customers insist on the work (do) at once. 2. I enjoy (go) to her parties. But I dislike (take) there by my boyfriend. 3. Stop (talk) about it. The incident isn't worth (mention). 4. — Have you finished (correct) the composition? — No, it still needs (brush up). 5. Sue admitted (tell) a lie. And she didn't mind (reprimand) for it. 6. I am used to (remind) by my mother that life is great and I should keep (smile). 7. Ted couldn't imagine (abuse) anyone, or (abuse) by anyone. 8. He is very secretive. He avoids (ask) any personal questions or (ask) any even by his closest friends. 9. I remember (beat) once by my elder brother for cheating. 10. They suspected the inspector of (get) some more

evidence and were afraid of (call) to the police station. 11. He wasn't used to (ignore). 12. She insisted on (treat) like a grown person. 13. She suspected me of (read) her diary. 14. Who is responsible for (keep) the place in order? 15. He couldn't get used to (call) a grandfather. 16. The car needs (repair). 17. He is ashamed of (be rude) to his best friend. 18. She spoilt everything by (tell) a lie.

Exercise 7. Complete the sentences. Add the necessary preposition. Comment on the syntactical function. 1. He's very punctual. You can count... . 2. I'm tired. I don't feel... . 3. The people criticize the government... . 4. The prisoner was accused 5. Lifeguards rescue people 6. I am out of work. I'm anxious 7. Are you interested ... ? 8. This programmer is an expert... . 9. The children are excited 10. If you run out of money, you would have difficulty 11. In a tight situation you have to find a way 12. Teenagers spend a lot of money... . 13. The police charged the motorist... . 14. We suspected her ... not telling all she knew. 15. Tactless people make a habit... . 16. If you live in a foreign country, you have the opportunity 17. You are a Jack-of-all-trades. Why not try your hand ... ? 18. How can I prevent her ... ? 19. The water in this area requires 20. My piano needs 21. She is not looking forward 22. What are the advantages ... ? 23. I'm always dream 24. What prevented him ... ? 25. He is not very good 26. I didn't feel like

Exercise 8. Translate into English using the Gerund. State the functions. 1. Мені не хочеться сперечатися. 2. Він продовжував палити, не кажучи ні слова. 3. Я не бачила сенсу в тому, щоб продовжувати цю розмову. 4. Марно обговорювати це питання. 5. Я вас ні в чому не звинувачую. 6. Встаньте, будь ласка, в сторону. 7. Я була проти поїздки туди з самого початку. 8. План потребує доопрацювання. 9. У неї не було надії коли-небудь поїхати в Самарканд. 10. Одними розмовами результатів не отримаєш. 11. Тепер назад вже не повернути. 12. Ми були вдячні йому за те, що він прийшов нас зустріти. 13. Вона не пропускає жодної можливості поговорити по-англійськи. 14. Навчитися говорити на мові можна тільки, якщо багато говорити. Тільки читати недостатньо. 15. Хто за те, щоб запросити її? 16. Ми вибачилися за запізнення. 17. Марно засмучуватися, його не переконати. 18. Він був проти обговорення даної проблеми.

4.1.TENSE AND VOICE

DISTINCTIONS OF THE GERUND

The Forms of the Gerund

	Active	Passive
Indefinite	writing	being written
Perfect	having written	having been written

The Tense Distinctions

1) The Indefinite Gerund Active and Passive denotes an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb. Depending on the tense form of the finite verb, it may refer to the present, past or future: e.g. He said without turning his head. No one will be able to pass in without being seen.

2) When we are talking about finished actions we use the Perfect Gerund, but it's not necessary to use this form. We may as well use the Indefinite Gerund to denote finished actions. e.g. She denies having spoken to him. He was ashamed of having shown even the slightest irritation. I admitted stealing (having stolen) the money. We use the Indefinite Gerund to denote the finished actions especially: after the following verbs:

to remember to excuse to forgive to thank

and after the prepositions: on upon after without

e.g. You must excuse my not answering you before. I don't remember hearing it before. Thank you for helping me. On receiving the telegram we went to the station to meet our friends. They parted without speaking to each other again.

The Voice Distinctions

The Gerund is used in the Active Voice if the Noun or Pronoun it refers to denotes the subject of the action expressed by the Gerund. e.g. Mary couldn't help laughing.

The Gerund is used in the Passive voice if the Noun or Pronoun it refers to is the object of the action. e.g. She has no right to come without being invited.

N. B! After the verbs: to want, to need, to require and the adjective worth the Gerund is used in the Active form though its meaning is Passive e.g. The child deserves praising. The walls need painting. The film is worth watching.

Exercise 1. Choose the right form of the Gerund:

1. J. Galsworthy was no longer young when he started _____. a) being written b) writing c) having written 2. I remember _____ aloud, and the laugh being carried by the wind away from me. a) laughing b) being laughed c) having been laughed 3. His mother felt better for _____ the letter from her son. a) receiving b) being received c) having received 4. His _____ to London was quite unexpected to us. a) sending b) being sent c) having sent 5. The author may tell a story in an objective way, without _____ into the minds of the characters. a) being gone b) having gone c) going 6. They were sure of the bridge _____ during the stormy night. a) destroying b) having destroyed c) having been destroyed 7. All the essays in this volume are worth _____. a) reprinting b) being reprinted c) having reprinted 10. Excuse my _____ you. a) being interrupted b) having interrupted c) interrupting 10. Language is capable of _____ practically any kind of information. a) being transmitted b) transmitting c) having transmitted

Exercise 2. Translate the sentences into English using gerund:

1. Марія любить слухати музику. 2. Я не заперечую проти миття посуду. 3. Матвій дійсно гарно готує. 4. Він зацікавлений у тому, щоб стати лікарем. 5. Коли ми зустрілися, я не міг не обняти її. 6. Моє хобі – плавання. 7. Я вже ситий по горло гамбургерами (sick of). 8. Вона порадила зустрітися з лікарем. 9. Я не маю бажання вчити сьогодні слова (feel like). 10. Заняття бігом щодня триматимуть тебе у формі. 11. Припини кричати. 12. Нема змісту плакати над розлитим молоком. 13. Ти не проти відчинити вікно? 14. Вони запропонували їхати автобусом. 15. Для нього буде важко кинути курити. 16. Ми були щасливі через святкування Нового року у Парижі. 17. Уникай орфографічних помилок. 18. Уяви, що ми поїдемо в Голівуд і побачимо все на власні очі. 19.

Ми вже звикли вставати рано вранці. 20. Їй подобається малювати портрети. 21. Вона продовжує говорити про свої проблеми. 22. У ресторані не дозволено курити. 23. Я задумався над тим, щоб навчатися за кордоном. 24. Вона думає про переїзд (consider). 25. Припиняй говорити. Пора діяти.

Exercise 3. Revise the use of the Infinitive and complete the sentences using gerund or infinitive:

1. Don't let them _____ (cross) that dangerous road on their own. 2. What about _____ (have) a last drink ? 3. They accused me of _____ (break) the window. 4. They'd rather _____ (go) to Tuscany than to Ireland. 5. There was a very good reason for _____ (not believe) in what he said. 6. I don't know what _____ (believe) anymore. 7. Remember _____ (phone) Tom tomorrow - OK I won't forget. 8. The teacher watched the pupil _____ (cheat). 9. Why not _____ (spend) our holiday in Florida this year ? 10. She is always the last _____ (arrive) 11. Most teachers insist on their pupils _____ (do) the homework. 12. She has often made me _____ (cry). 13. I expect _____ (hear) from you by Monday. 14. It's no use _____ (pretend) _____ (like) her food. 15. How old were you when you learnt _____ (drive) ? 16. I don't mind _____ (walk) home but I'd rather _____ (get) a taxi. 17. I can't make a decision. I keep _____ (change) my mind. 18. We had to keep him from _____ (fall) off the cliff. 19. He had made his decision and refused _____ (change) his mind. 20. It was a good holiday. I enjoyed _____ (be) by the sea. 21. Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember _____ (say) that. 22. The water here is not very good. I'd avoid _____ (drink) it if I were you. 23. I pretended _____ (be) interested in the conversation. 24. I got up and looked out of the window _____ (see) what the weather was like. 25. I have a friend who claims _____ (be) able to speak 5 languages. 26. I like _____ (think) carefully about things before _____ (make) a decision. 27. Steve used _____ (be) a footballer. He had to stop _____ (play) because of an injury. 28. How do you _____ (make) this machine work? - I'm not sure. Try _____ (press) the button and see what happens ! 29. What do you advise me _____ ? (do) 30. They intend _____ a new house next year. (buy) 31. They are likely _____ up at any time. (show) 32. The man denied _____ the crime. (commit) 33. Their memories of _____ in Africa will stay with them forever. (travel) 34. He has always been afraid of _____. (fly) 35. _____ is good for your health. (swim)

Exercise 4. Use either an infinitive or a gerund or both in the sentences below.

1. When did you begin _____ (to study) English?
2. We had better start _____ (to get) ready to the airport.

3. Peter continued _____ (to read) long after his friends had gone to bed.
4. Lesley went on _____ (to work) even though it was late.
5. After the presentation of the new financial document the Prime Minister went on _____ (to praise) the Chancellor.
6. The Prime Minister went on _____ (to praise) the Chancellor for more than an hour.
7. Jane stopped _____ (to check) the oil level in the engine.
8. We are so happy! The baby has stopped _____ (to wake) up during the night now.
9. Do you want to go on _____ (to learn) another language after you have passed your German final test?
10. We'll have to stop _____ (to get) petrol, the tank is practically empty.
11. My grandpa stopped _____ (to work) when he was 65.
12. Sorry, I am late. I had to stop _____ (to pick) up the children from school.
13. Margaret Thatcher was said to be slow at school but she went on _____ (to be) the Prime Minister.
14. Jane went on _____ (to sleep) for another two hours.
15. The newcomer told us his name and went on _____ (to introduce) us to his wife.
16. The meeting was so boring! The managing director went on _____ (to talk) for hours.
17. After discussing the economy, the minister went on _____ (to talk) about foreign policy.
18. As long as you see the doughnut, you are an optimist. As soon as you start _____ (to see) the hole, you cease _____ (to be) an optimist, you are a pessimist.

Exercise 5. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of verbal in the function of part of a compound verbal aspect predicate.

1. Берта зупинилася, щоб прислухатися до подиху дитини, що спала. Вона дихала спокійно й рівномірно, і жінка продовжила свій шлях.
2. Молодий автор відрекомендувався й перейшов до розповіді про свою першу книгу.
3. Особистий помічник президента продовжував відповідати на телефонні дзвінки до півночі.
4. Мама перестала пити каву, тому що в неї почалося безсоння.
5. Водій зупинився, щоб долити в радіатор води, і потім ми продовжили шлях.
6. Дівчинка перестала дивитися фільми жахів, тому що вночі їй почали снитися страхіття.
7. Ми зупинилися купити м'ясних консервів і хліба перш, ніж продовжити нашу подорож.
8. Тепер я починаю розуміти, що ви маєте на увазі, говорячи, що містер Тодд не підходить на посаду начальника відділу.
9. Коли черговий вихователь вимкнув світло й наказав усім негайно спати, дівчата продовжували пошепки розповідати одна одній свої секрети.
10. Ти побачиш Стіва ввечері? - Ні, ми перестали зустрічатися.
11. Раптово увагу Клайда привернуло щось блискуче на узбіччі

дороги. Він зупинився подивитися, що це було. 12. Рейчел чула, що хтось тихесенько увійшов до кімнати, але продовжувала робити вигляд, що не помічає нічого навкруги. 13. Якщо ти негайно не припиниш поводитися таким чином, тебе безсумнівно виключать зі школи. Час тобі вже дорослішати. 14. Тільки коли вона закінчила всю хатню роботу, Глорія почала готуватися до співбесіди у фірмі, де вона давно сподівалася отримати роботу. 15. Якби ти не припинила сидіти на дієті, ти б вже скинула кілограмів п'ять. Бажано, щоб дієта поєднувалася з фізичними вправами. – Якщо б ти їла тільки моркву, ти б теж швидко почала її ненавидіти. 16. Як завжди, вчитель перевірів присутніх і перейшов до перевірки домашнього завдання. 17. Раніше я витрачала набагато більше часу на виконання домашнього завдання з граматики. Зараз в мене в двічі більше проблем з теорією та практикою перекладу, оскільки ми тільки нещодавно почали вивчати цей предмет. 18. Що примусило тебе розпочати стежити за твоїм чоловіком? – Я помітила, що він припиняє розмовляти по телефону, як тільки я входжу в його кімнату. Невже це не підозріло? 19. Продовжуйте працювати, не звертайте на мене увагу. Повідомте мене, щойно закінчите репетирувати.

4.2. THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUND

1) As a subject. e.g. Talking mends no holes; Smoking is harmful. The Gerund used as a subject may follow the predicate. In these cases the sentence opens with the introductory it or with the construction there is e.g. It is no use talking to me like this.

2) As a predicative. e.g. His hobby is collecting coins.

3) As a part of a compound verbal predicate a) with the verbs and verbal phrases denoting modality e.g. Joseph couldn't help admiring the man. b) with the verbs denoting the beginning, the duration and the end of an action e.g. She began shouting. Tom went on whitewashing.

4) As an object e.g. I simply love riding. (direct object). She is fond of painting. (prepositional, indirect object).

5) As an attribute In this function the Gerund is always preceded by a preposition e.g. He was born with the gift of winning hearts. She had a feeling of having been robbed. There was the sound of the car being brought to the door.

6) As an adverbial modifier - of time: the Gerund is preceded by the prepositions after, before, on, upon, in, at. e.g. Upon walking I found myself much recovered. - of manner: the Gerund is used with the prepositions by, in e.g. She startled her father by bursting into tears. The day was spent in packing. - of attendant circumstances: the Gerund is preceded by the preposition without. e.g. She was not brilliant, not active but rather peaceful without knowing it. - of purpose: the Gerund is used with the preposition for e.g. One side of the gallery was used for dancing. - of cause: the Gerund is used with the prepositions for, for fear of, owing to e.g. I didn't attend the wedding party for fear of making a fool of

myself. - of concession: the Gerund is preceded by the preposition in spite of e.g. In spite of being busy he did all he could for her.

Exercise 1. Point out the gerunds and define their syntactic functions:

1. We encouraged her to succeed in becoming a top player. 2. It's no good forcing him to go with us. 3. I promised to care for the cat but I'm not much good at babysitting. 4. The people thanked me for offering to help them. 5. She accused me of ruining her hairstyle. 6. It is not worth helping him do the job. 7. I let him choose between flying and taking the train. 8. The film was really worth seeing so we made Mary go to the movies with us. 9. He forced us to accept his offer by raising it by 5 %. 10. Normally I enjoy going out but today I'd prefer staying indoors. 11. She promised not to object to his smoking. 12. They continued eating after the interruption. 13. I am not in the habit of smoking in the car. 14. Ann reminded me to finish writing the task on time. 15. He'd better get used to working harder. 16. I am 39 capable of standing on my head and playing the saxophone. 17. You'd better start digging the garden. 18. I expected someone to pick up these running shoes. 19. The Romans were quite happy about Hannibal not attacking Rome. 20. He came without being noticed. 21. We have taught our children to wash their hands before eating. 22. Writing letters is more boring than phoning. 23. Jack decided to give up drinking alcohol. 24. In spite of being angry, he still helped us. 25. We agreed to meet them at the dancing-hall. 26. There is no sense in earning more money than you can spend. 27. They made us leave the campsite after making such a mess. 28. "Do you mind working overtime?" asked the boss. 29. We achieved good results owing to much studying. 30. The doctor made him promise to reduce his smoking.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences with gerunds or infinitives:

1. Let's (meet) there at six o'clock. 2. I thought of ... (leave) before the party. 3. I'm hungry. I feel like ... (have) dinner. 4. She invited them ... (sit down) at the table. 5. I saw the lorry ... (crash) into a lamp post. 6. They are unable ... (agree). 7. She offered ... (help) him. 8. Janet never used to ... (go out) with friends. 9. Have you stopped ... (smoke)? 10. It was so funny that I couldn't help ... (laugh). 11. The driver made us ... (push) the car. 12. I'm looking forward to ... (meet) her. 13. It's hard ... (decide) which film is the best. 14. She's good at ... (make) speeches. 15. Some Portuguese rivers are said ... (be) polluted.

Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using the elements in brackets to form complexes with the Gerund.

A. Example: I'm tired of (people, to have) to be kind to me. – I'm tired of people's having to be kind to me. I insist on (you, to come). – I insist on your coming.

1. He hated to think of (she, to be) alone there. 2. I couldn't stop (she, to ask) me such disputable questions. 3. I hope you don't object to (I, to accompany) you as far as the door. 4. She knew that she had done the sensible thing, but that did not prevent (she, to feel) that. 5. —You must not mind (we, to be surprised), she said. 6. She had been looking forward so intensely to (Tim, to come). 7. They might, she always felt, disapprove of (people, to talk) loudly in public halls. 8. I did ask her

what kept (she, to think) so much as she listened to the nightingale. 9. There is still a chance of (Bart, to come) to her birthday party.

B. Complete the following sentences using complexes with the Gerund.

1. You don't seem to mind their _____. 2. What is the reason of his _____? 3. I don't understand what prevents her _____. 4. There is no sense in your _____. 5. She finished her _____. 6. He liked the idea of their _____. 7. There was no possibility of David's _____. 8. I sat there listening to Arthur _____. 9. He was right in his _____. 10. There is no point in my _____. 11. There was an absolute proof of his _____. 12. Forgive my _____. 13. It was the only excuse for her _____. 14. There was no excuse of Isabel's _____.

Exercise 4. Replace the gerund by a gerundial complex by adding a subject to it. The subject of the gerundial complex must be different from the subject of the sentence. Comment on the functions. Model: 1) Everything depends on getting there in time. — Everything depends on your getting there in time. 2) I'm against writing this review. — I'm against Jack's writing this review. 1. I fail to see the point of raising the question now. 2. She simply can't help laughing at you. 3. We did not mind waiting a little. 4. I'll take the opportunity of being here to ask you some questions. 5. He succeeded only through making the right contacts from the very beginning. 6. He began to grow fast only after coming to live with us. 7. You can't go through college without planning and saving. 8. It's no good trying to make her change her mind. 9. I'm used to coming home very late. 10. She likes being praised and made much of. 11. I'm against going there alone. 12. It is useless doing it now. 13. I have an idea of going to the South. 14. There is little sense in 49 staying here now. 15. They apologized for having made the noise. 16. Who is for telling him the truth? 17. I object to interfering in my personal life. They are just neighbours.

Exercise 5. Translate into English. Use the complex only if the gerund has a subject different from that of the sentence. Model: Він вимагав, щоб вони йому негайно заплатили. — He insisted on their paying him at once. But: Вона вимагала, щоб їй негайно заплатили. — She insisted on being paid at once 1. Я зроблю все до того, як він повернеться. 2. Ти не боїшся, що тебе побачать? 3. Я не бачу великої біди, якщо він пропустить одну лекцію. 4. Вона вибачилася за те, що діти так шуміли. 5. Я відповідаю за те, щоб все було в порядку. 6. Хто за те, щоб зробити все в неділю? 7. Хто за те, щоб я зробив все в неділю? 8. Терпіти не можу заперечувати і сперечатися. 9. Терпіти не можу, коли ти заперечуєш і сперечаєшся. 10. Закрийте, будь ласка, двері. 11. Нічого, якщо я закрию двері? 12. Він звик залишатися з бабусею. 13. Він звик, що Джек залишається з ним. 14. Вона була так вдячна за те, що її взяли теж. 15. Вона була так вдячна за те, що ми взяли її з собою. 16. Він пішов, не попрощавшись. 17. Він пішов так, що ми цього не помітили. 18. Я не могла не бачити його. 19. Я не могла перешкодити йому бачити вас. 20. Мені подобається, коли ти так говориш. 21. Я не могла не погодитися. 22. Будьте ласкаві, говорите повільніше. 23. Нічого, якщо я буду говорити неголосно?

4.3. VERBS + GERUND

These verbs are followed by the gerund

admit	He admitted cheating on the test
anticipate	I anticipated arriving late
appreciate	I appreciated her helping me
avoid	He avoided talking to her
can't help	He can't help talking so loudly
can't see	I can't see paying so much money for a car
complete	He completed renovating the house
consider	She considered moving to New York
defend	The lawyer defended her making such statements
delay	He delayed doing his taxes
deny	He denied committing the crime
despise	She despises waking up early
discuss	We discussed working at the company
don't mind	I don't mind helping you
enjoy	We enjoy hiking
excuse	Excuse my being rude
finish	Has he finished reading?
fancy	Fancy meeting all the stars!
forgive	Forgive my being intolerant
imagine	He imagines working there one day
involve	The job involves traveling to Japan once a month
keep	She kept interrupting me
mention	He mentioned going to that college
mind	Do you mind waiting here for a few minutes
miss	She misses living near the beach
postpone	He postponed returning to Paris
practise	She practised singing the song
recall	Tom recalled using his credit card at the store
recollect	She recollected living in Kenya
report	He reported her stealing the money
resent	Nick resented Debbie's being there
resist	He resisted asking for help
risk	He risked being caught
suggest	They suggested staying at the hotel
tolerate	I tolerated her talking
understand	I understand his quitting

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences using infinitive or gerund:

1. I can't imagine _____ at home. (work)
2. We have decided against _____ a new car. (buy)
3. She seems _____ her new job. (like)
4. The students hope _____

_____ the exam. (pass) 5. He won't go by plane. He is afraid of _____ . (fly) 6. I am lazy. I don't feel like _____ any work. (do) 7. Remember _____ the letter. Otherwise they won't get it by Saturday. (post) 8. Have you ever learned how _____ such a plane? (fly) 9. They were too lazy _____ out with us. (go) 10. I always enjoy _____ to my grandfather. He always tells me great stories. (talk) 11. I'm very interested in _____ French. (learn) 12. My pen friend is coming next Friday. I'm really looking forward _____ her. (meet) 13. Don't you mind _____ away from your family for such a long time? (be) 14. The children promised _____ back by nine. (be) 15. I wanted to go alone but Joe insisted on _____ with me. (come) 16. Tom offered _____ me home. (bring) 17. Why not _____ a weekend in Scotland? (spend) 18. I'm sorry I can't come to your party but thank you for _____ me. (invite) 19. Our neighbors apologized for _____ such noise. (make) 20. Paris is always worth _____ to. (travel) 21. I'm sure I gave him back the money. I remember _____ it back to him. (give) 22. She eventually managed _____ her bike. (repair) 23. Would you like _____ a cup of coffee? (drink) 24. There's no point in _____ the matter. He has already made his decision. (discuss) 25. I prefer _____ to skiing. (snowboard) 26. Do you mind _____ Anita to the doctor? (bring) 27. It is difficult _____ him. (understand) 28. We had difficulty _____ your house. (find) 29. They decided _____ Tennis in the afternoon. (play) 30. We expect him _____ us on Sunday. (join)

Exercise 2. Open the brackets to complete the sentences:

1. _____ is not allowed here. (fish) 2. I heard the TV set _____ . (explode) 3. She appeared _____ very nervous. (be) 4. I keep _____ you - it was an accident. (tell) 5. Jack is good at _____ ceilings. (paint) 6. She wondered who _____ . (ask) 7. It is difficult _____ him. (understand) 8. She did not know what _____ from them. (expect) 9. My wife warned us _____ the table. (not touch) 10. He refused _____ me what all the fuss was about. (tell) 11. There's no sense in _____ him. He's not at home. (visit) 12. Elephants are known _____ a fantastic memory. (have) 13. I let her _____ on with her work. (get) 14. Colin had no idea of how _____ into the house. (get) 15. I'd rather _____ in bed than go to work. (be) 16. I crossed the road without _____ . (look) 17. We advised her _____ a year abroad. (not spend) 18. I always dreamed of _____ in a small house by the seaside. (live) 19. She made us _____ for hours. (wait) 20. She learned _____ pupils with respect. (treat) 21. I couldn't help _____ when I saw the bride in the beautiful white dress. (cry) 22. My uncle has given up _____ and now he prefers _____ (smoke, eat) 23. He wasn't used _____ on the right side of the road. (drive) 24. Would

you rather _____ to a restaurant or eat at home. (go) 25. There was a fence to prevent people from _____ on the grass. (walk) 26. I agreed _____ him if he is in trouble. (help) 27. I'm too old _____ my habits now. (change) 28. Please stop _____. You're making me nervous. (whisper) 29. He was silly enough _____ into the pond without _____ first. (dive, look) 30. I enjoy _____ alone. I never feel lonely. (be)

Exercise 3. Translate into English using Gerund:

1. Вони визнали, що збрехали. 2. Я не люблю сваритися у магазині. 3. Ми цінуємо, що ви їх підтримали. 4. Уникай спілкуватися з незнайомцями на вулиці. 5. Не можу не сміятися, коли бачу тебе в цій спідниці. 6. Ми тільки завершили вишивати сорочку. 7. Я вже обдумую, щоб змінити прізвище. 8. Ми відклали поїздки. 9. Вона заперечує, що брала участь у крадіжці. 10. Ненавиджу коли мені кажуть, що робити. 11. На зустрічі вони обговорювали проведення змагання з тенісу. 12. Я не проти, щоб розбудити тебе. 13. Вона любить готувати для своєї сім'ї. 14. Пробач, що запізнився. 15. Ти вже закінчив сперечатися? 16. Уяви, що здаси всі екзамени на відмінно. 17. Вона не пробачила, що я забула про її день народження. 18. Вона уявляє, як бере інтерв'ю в Б. Пітта. 19. Це завдання включає використання інтернет-ресурсів для пошуку додаткової інформації. 20. Вони згадали (mention), що заходили до того кафе минулого тижня. 21. Продовжуй стрибати, поки не втомишся. 22. Ти не проти прогулятися зі мною? 23. Він сумує за уроками музики в тієї вчительки. 24. Дитина практикувалася ходити навшпиньки. 25. Хлопчик опирався, щоб іти в садочок. 26. Ти ризикуєш бути оштрафована. 27. Вони запропонували піти на морозиво після уроків.

Exercise 4. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of infinitives and gerunds in the function of objects.

1. Хлопчик прикинувся, що не чув старого, хоча той говорив досить голосно. 2. Ми не боялися потрапити під дощ, тому що прогноз погоди був дуже сприятливим. 3. Я спробую запам'ятати, як дістатися до старого млина більш короткою дорогою, але якщо я не прийду до того, як стемніє, вважайте, що я заблукав, і починайте мене шукати. 4. Ми з жалем повідомляємо вам, що ваша заява про прийом на роботу не прийнята до розгляду. 5. Тодд запропонував розмістити всіх дітей у спальні нагорі, а дорослих у їдальні й вітальні. 6. Пет пам'ятала, що поклала ключі в кишеню пальто вранці, коли йшла з дому, але ніяк не могла пригадати, чи виймала вона їх звідти, коли була на роботі. 7. Після того як вона провалила іспит, Сьюзан пошкодувала, що так мало займалася своїми основними предметами в семестрі. 8. Торік я надав перевагу взяти відпустку взимку й провести її на лижній базі в Карпатах. 9. Марії було прикро, що вона забула подякувати турботливій медсестрі за все, що вона для неї зробила. 10. Бути вчителем - значить добре знати не тільки свій предмет, але й психологію та педагогіку. 11. Поліна була так зайнята вранці, що забула виключити праску перед виходом з дому. 12. Мати сподівалась знайти дочку в саду на її улюбленому місці, але її там не було. 13. Не забудь закрити вхідні двері, коли будеш іти

на заняття. 14. Мені треба не забути сказати всім іншим, що лекція по Історії України переноситься на наступну середу. 15. Стівен не міг не обернутися, почувши якийсь дивний шум за спиною. Виявилось, що за ним йшла старенька бабуся в дерев'яних черевиках. Стів не пам'ятав, щоб він коли-небудь бачив її у своєму районі. 16. Одна молода і дуже балакуча людина попросила Сократа навчити його ораторському мистецтву. Насамперед, він попросив знаменитого філософа послухати його міркування на тему добра й зла. Сократ слухав юнака, не перебиваючи, поки той не закінчив говорити через три години. Потім він сказав, «Вам доведеться платити мені у два рази більше, ніж моїм звичайним учням, тому що мені доведеться вчити вас двом мистецтвам: як говорити і як мовчати. 17. Невже ти забув, як ми разом купували цю чудову вазу? Ми ще потім шкодували, що не купили таку ж саму в подарунок на весілля Ненсі та Теда. 18. Вибачте, що втручаюся у вашу розмову, але я терпіти не можу, коли ображають людей, які не беруть участь в розмові і не можуть вам протистояти. 19. Ти не забула зареєструватися для проходження співбесіди? Багато людей прагнуть отримати цей грант. Ти просто не можеш дозволити собі втратити таку нагоду. – А я і не збираюся її втрачати. Я просто визнаю за краще тримати свої плани при собі. 20. Їй так поталанило, що її оглянув досвідчений лікар. Якби її негайно не прооперували, вона могла б вмерти. 21. Вона стверджує, що попередила усіх про зміни в розкладі. Я знаю напевно, що вона бреше, але не знаю, як це довести. – Чому б не спробувати ще раз поговорити з нею? 22. Я у захваті, що мене прийняли до аспірантури. Я планую завершити роботу над дисертацією до 2012 року. Мій науковий керівник рекомендує мені проводити більше часу в бібліотеці. 23. Зараз я шкодую, що в школі приділяв так мало уваги біології та математиці. Зараз мені нічого не залишається, як брати додаткові уроки, якщо я налаштований поступати на факультет психології. 24. Мати знову благала сина не прогулювати заняття і поводитися пристойно. Він знову присягався, що нічого не накоїв і не отримав жодної незадовільної оцінки. 25. Батько сумно дивився на них і сподівався, що вони припинять сперечатися до того, як розпочнеться футбольний матч, на який він чекав цілий тиждень. 26. Вона розлючена, що згаяла стільки часу у крамниці. Не треба було їй намагатися довести продавчині, що сосиски були не свіжі, а пиріжки зачерствілі. Ніхто не звертав на неї уваги. З таким же успіхом вона могла б розмовляти зі стінкою.

4.4. VERBAL PHRASES + PREPOSITIONS + GERUND

Gerund is used with the following verbs and verbal phrases followed by prepositions:

to accuse of	We were accused of stealing the money
to agree to	Abraham never agreed to their being married
to approve of	Mother approved of my entering university
to burst out	The child burst out crying bitterly

to carry on	After dinner we carried on playing chess
to complain of	Never complain of being unhappy
to depend on	All my happiness depends on your loving me
to feel like	We didn't feel like going there by ourselves
to give up	Try to give up smoking to insist on Mother insisted on my putting on the coat
to keep on	Keep on working!
to leave off	Leave off shouting and listen to me!
to look like	It looks like raining
to object to	Mother objects to his going abroad
to persist in	You should persist in studying
to prevent from	Prevent the child from crossing the street alone
to rely on	You can rely on my setting matters right
to speak of	Never speak of his being ruined
to succeed in	We succeeded in solving the tests
to suspect of	They were suspected of killing the man
to thank for	Thank you for helping
to think of	She thought of moving to another flat

Gerund is used after go in the following phrases:

go boating	go horseback riding	go sailing	go sledging
go bowling	go hunting	go scuba diving	go snorkeling
go bungee jumping	go jogging	go shopping	go snowboarding
go camping	go kayaking	go sightseeing	go spearfishing
go canoeing	go mountain climbing	go skateboarding	go surfing
go climbing	go paragliding	go skating	go trekking
go dancing	go parasailing	go skiing	go water skiing
go fishing	go rollerblading	go skinny-dipping	go window shopping
go hiking	go running	go skydiving	go windsurfing

Exercise 1. Fill in the gerund with the correct preposition:

1. She is looking forward _____ his aunt in Chicago. (visit)
2. My wife is keen _____ pop songs. (sing)
3. His mother was excited _____ to Africa. (go)
4. The secretary carried _____ the letter. (type)
5. The construction workers worried _____ their jobs. (lose)
6. They tried to cope _____ in bad weather. (work)
7. The pupil is known _____ problems. (cause)
8. My wife apologized _____ late. (be)
9. The teacher always keeps _____ his timetable. (complain)
10. I insisted _____ the dog for a walk myself. (take)
11. The actor is famous _____ crazy once in a while. (be)
12. The money will be devoted _____ the environment. (protect)
13. The au-pair succeeds _____ the children busy for some time. (keep)
14. He blamed me _____ the CD player. (damage)
- 15.

I'm tired _____ the same things over and over again. (repeat) 16. She is scared _____ alone at night. (be) 17. Jamie is sick _____ hamburgers all the time. (eat) 18. She ran away _____ behind her. (look)

Exercise 2. Put in the correct preposition (if necessary):

1. She complains _____ bullying. 2. She doesn't feel _____ working on the computer. 3. We are looking forward _____ going out at the weekend. 4. Laura dreams _____ living on a small island. 5. Andrew apologized _____ being late. 6. Do you agree _____ staying in a foreign country? 7. The girls insisted _____ going out with Kerry. 8. Edward thinks _____ climbing trees this afternoon. 9. I'm thinking _____ learning either Italian or Spanish. 10. The noise prevented us _____ sleeping. 11. Do you really mind _____ leaving me? 12. I don't succeed _____ memorizing so many words! 13. Let me begin _____ thanking you for the warm hospitality I received! 14. I can't help _____ smiling whenever I think of it. 15. He spent hours _____ trying to find the solution. 16. He insisted _____ being paid immediately. 17. This novel is worth _____ reading. 18. They told me they suspected him _____ plotting against me. 19. He didn't enjoy _____ writing his books. 20. The boy was busy _____ tidying his toys.

Exercise 3. Translate into English:

1. Мене ще ніхто не звинувачував у брехні. 2. Батьки погодилися, щоб я одружився з Ніною. 3. Тато ніколи не схвалював те, що я беру уроки танців. 4. Дитина вибухнула плачем, бо в коробці була не лялька. 5. Професор продовжував читати лекцію, хоча почалася вже перерва. 6. Вони постійно скаржаться, що їх ніхто не слухає. 7. Твоя орфографія залежить від того, чи ти читаєш багато книг. 8. Я щось не дуже хочу брати зараз участь у перегонах. 9. Якби вона не здалася і робила наступні спроби, вона б пройшла цей лабіринт. 10. Я наполягаю, щоб ти прийшов і розповів, як усе було насправді. 11. Він продовжував свистіти, не зважаючи на зауваження, які йому зробили. 12. Виглядає, що дощить. 13. Він проти, щоб я вступав у цей вуз. 14. Якщо б ти наполегливіше вчився, ти б не провалив ЗНО з української мови. 15. Ніщо не може завадити мені піти на цей концерт. 16. Сподіваюся, я можу покластися, що ти забереш дитину вчасно. 17. Вони ніколи не говорять про те, як їздили на море. 18. Я почав підозрювати, що вони розповсюджують неправдиву інформацію в соцмережах. 19. Навіть не думай про те, щоб їхати без батьків!

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the following sentences using gerund:

1. Tom was afraid that he might be late. _____ 2. Bill remembered that he had walked about the factory gate for months. _____ 3. When the young man graduated from Harvard, he returned to Ukraine. _____ 4. Mary asked John to forgive her that she had not answered his letter sooner. _____ 5. Michael remembered that he had enjoyed the trip to the Bahamas _____ 6. They gave up the idea that they would find work. _____ 7. The girls were afraid that they might miss the train. _____ 8. If you work hard you will gain success in speaking foreign languages _____ 9 She often predicts future. She is famous for this _____

Exercise 5. Translate the contents of the brackets into English using the Gerund or the gerundial complex where possible. State the functions. 1. I insist (щоб ви мені це розповіли). 2. Do you object (щоб я запросив його на вечір)? 3. I hope you don't object (щоб я сказав цю промову)? 4. By that time they were used (що він приходить та йде в самі несподівані моменти). 5. She gave me the letter (коли я прийшов додому ввечері). 6. The fire started (тому що хтось кинув цигарку в кошик для паперу). 7. I am so grateful to you (за те, що ви мені це пояснили). 8. Do you want (щоб він це зробив сьогодні)? 9. Do you suspect (що я брешу)? 10. I don't like (коли ти так говориш). 11. I am too tired (щоб розмовляти). 12. I am too tired (щоб ви розмовляли). 13. I don't mind (щоб ти зробив все завтра) if you don't feel like (працювати сьогодні). 14. So much depends (що він є необхідною людиною для роботи). 15. Why do you avoid (вживати не особові форми дієслова в мовленні)?

Exercise 6. Answer the questions using the Gerund. 1. What do you like doing in your spare time? 2. What can you remember doing when you were a child? 3. What do you regret doing in the past? 4. When you left school, what did you go on doing? 5. What can you try doing if you want to improve your English? 6. What do you practise doing in conversation lessons? 7. What are students busy doing before exams? 8. Where do you feel like going for your holiday after passing your exams?

WORD GROUPS + GERUND

After the following phrases and word groups with prepositions we use gerund:

to like the idea of	We disliked the idea of walking in the woods alone
to look forward to	The boy looked forward to celebrating his birthday
to give up the idea of	He gave up the idea of moving abroad
to have difficulty (in)	They had difficulty in studying Maths
to have a difficult time	She had a difficult time hiking up the mountain
to have a good time	They had a good time snorkeling
to have fun	They had fun skiing
to have problems	He had some problems reading without his glasses
to spend one's time	He always spends his time working out at the gym
to waste one's time	She always wastes her time playing video games
instead of	Instead of going on holiday I bought a new bike
in spite of	He went to work in spite of feeling ill
to miss the opportunity of	Don't miss the opportunity of hearing this pianist
to be no use (in)	It's no use arguing now

EXERCISES:

1. Complete the following sentences:

1. All the girls are looking forward to_____ 2. After he came back from London he gave up the idea of_____ 3. The students have great difficulty in_____ 4. I hope you will have a good time_____ 5. You'd better _____ instead of_____ 6. The kids had fun_____ 7. Father disliked the idea of_____ 8. We

had difficult time_____ 9. Never miss the opportunity of_____ 10. Will you have problems_____ 11. In spite of_____ 12. Why have you wasted so much time on_____?

2. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Як тобі подобається ідея стрибнути з парашутом? 2. Ми вже з нетерпінням чекаємо канікул, щоб відпочити. 3. Якби він не відмовився від думки про створення нового парку розваг для дітей, наш район не був би таким нудним. 4. Чому у тебе постійно виникають труднощі з переживанням? 5. Діти веселилися, розпаковуючи різдвяні подарунки. 6. В неї завжди виникають 47 проблеми зі збереженням правильних пропорцій інгредієнтів до страв. 7. Не марнуй свій час на сидіння перед комп'ютером. Замість того, щоб псувати очі, піди краще погуляй на свіжому повітрі. 8. Вони часто проводять час за грою в шахи. 9. Незважаючи на те, що всі умови сприяли, вона все ж втратила нагоду впровадити нові правила поведінки у групі.

Self-study tasks:

1. Revise the material about the use of gerund and the infinitive and choose the correct variant:

1. My parents will object_____ abroad.
a) to me to go b) of my going c) to my going d) to me going
2. He is looking forward_____ his birthday.
a) to celebrate b) to celebrated c) to celebrating d) to have celebrated
3. I cannot afford _____ this expensive dress.
a) to buy b) to buying c) buying d) to have bought
4. We couldn't help _____ when she came.
a) to laugh b) to laughing c) to have laughed d) laughing
5. He couldn't but _____ the rule.
a) to accept b) accepted c) accept d) accepting
6. I will never agree _____ with them.
a) to your going out b) to you going out c) you to go out d) to you go out
7. Would you mind _____ the window?
a) me to open b) me open c) my opening d) me opening
8. I saw _____ bitterly.
a) her to cry b) her cry c) her to have cried d) she cry
9. Mother hesitated _____ who it was.
a) telling b) to telling c) to tell d) to have told
10. Never make _____ it again.
a) me do b) me to do c) me doing d) me to doing

2. Translate the following sentences:

1. У мене не було мети дозволити їй робити цю справу. 2. Терпіти не можу чекати. 3. Я не можу дозволити собі купити цю дорогу річ. 4. Вона нічого не мала проти того, щоб зайти ще раз. 5. Я не маю наміру обговорювати це питання. 6. Нічого немає поганого в тому, щоб запитати її ще раз. 7. Вчений приїхав сюди з однією метою — знайти докази своєї теорії. 8. Мало сенсу в тому, щоб відмовитися від їхньої допомоги. 9. Коли ви

почнете обговорювати статтю? 10. Я наполягаю на тому, щоб ти виконав це завдання. 11. Пам'ятаю, що його брат брав участь у змаганні. 12. Я наполягаю на тому, щоб ви залишилися. 13. Я ввійшов у кімнату так, що він і не помітив цього. 14. Ти не боїшся, що тебе побачать? 15. Вона попросила вибачення за те, що діти так шуміли. 16. Він пішов не попрощавшись. 17. Я не могла не бачити його. 18. Не можу терпіти, коли ти заперечуєш і сперечаєшся.

4.5. ADJECTIVES + GERUND. NOUNS + GERUND

We often use Gerund after adjectives + prepositions:

to be accustomed to	He is accustomed to having his own office
to be addicted to	She is addicted to watching TV
to be afraid of	She is afraid of speaking in public
to be anxious about	Norma is anxious about making the presentation
to be aware of	He wasn't aware of her watching
to be bored of	I am bored of doing the same old job
to be busy in	We were busy in packing things
to be capable of	She isn't capable of lying
to be content with	Tim is content with winning second place
to be disappointed with	Fiona was disappointed with coming in third place
to be excited about	The researcher was excited about going to Africa
to be famous for	That actor is famous for being extremely weird
to be fed up with	I'm fed up with studying
to be fond of	The children were fond of playing darts
to be good at	She is good at solving the riddles
to be guilty of	I'm not guilty of stealing the jewelry
to be happy about	He was happy about winning the lottery
to be interested in	Are you interested in working with us?
to be involved in	He was involved in making the movie
to be known for	She was known for causing problems
to be pleased at	We were pleased at winning the prize
to be proud of	Parents were proud of their son's becoming a doctor
to be responsible for	He is responsible for causing the damage
to be scared of	Tina is scared of being alone at night
to be sure of	I'm not sure of his coming
to be surprised at	We were surprised at seeing you there
to be worried about	He was worried about her not coming in time

.Some nouns + prepositions can be followed by gerund:

addiction to	His addiction to surfing the Internet is a problem
advantage of	He has the advantage of speaking English fluently
anxiety about	Her anxiety about speaking in public caused her to lose the job

belief in	His belief in not harming animals was something he learned from his mother
credit for	She took credit for improving the filing system
delay in	The delay in processing the visa caused problems
experience in	She has a great deal of experience in introducing new products to international markets
fear of	His fear of flying made travel difficult
habit of	His habit of smoking in restaurants caused many problems in California
knowledge of	Her knowledge of climbing helped her during the competition
love of	His love of singing developed when he was a child
reaction to	His reaction to winning the prize was quite funny
reason for	The main reason for taking the course is to improve your language skills
reputation for	Her reputation for lying is well known story about I don't know if I believe his story about seeing a UFO
talent for	His talent for learning languages was impressive

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences:

1. John has become addicted to_____
2. Never be afraid of_____
3. We got accustomed_____
4. They were anxious_____
5. Were you not aware_____?
6. They are bored to death_____
7. The kids were disappointed_____
8. Will you be busy_____
9. He will never be capable _____
10. Were they content_____
11. I hope, they'll be excited _____
12. I've never been fond_____
13. He is famous _____
14. I'm fed up _____
15. Is he guilty_____?
16. I've been interested_____
17. Never become involved_____
18. They were happy_____
19. Is she known_____
20. They will be proud_____
21. Who is going to be responsible_____
22. I was sure _____
23. They will be surprised_____
24. Was she scared_____?

Exercise 2. Translate the sentences:

1. В чому перевага ходити пішки?
2. Здається, в нього залежність від спілкування в соцмережах.
3. Чому таке велике їхнє хвилювання щодо твоєї 50 поїздки?
4. Він має слабку віру у свої сили.
5. Чому виникла затримка у відкритті візи?
6. Твій страх постаріти мені незрозумілий.
7. Мене нервує твоя звичка брехати.
8. Любов до швидкої їзди привела його в наш клуб.
9. Яка причина, що ви так засмутилися?
10. Ваша історія про полювання на ведмедя вже трохи набридла.
11. В нього талант потрапляти в неприємності.
12. Чому їхня реакція на зміну погоди вас здивувала?

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences:

1. Ти ще хіба не звикла до постійних змін настрою шефа?
2. В неї точно є залежність від щоденних покупок.
3. Боюся, що мене не послухають.
4. Вони схвилювані, що їх вибрали делегувати.
5. Хіба ти не знала, що він не

розповів нічого про нічну пригоду? 6. Дитина не здатна виконати таке важке завдання. 7. Дівчина стала відомою своїм виконанням сонати Бетховена. 8. Батьки дуже розчаровані, що я збрехала про успішне складення іспиту. 9. Ми не задоволені тим, що нам показали так мало робіт. 10. Він уже ситий по горло, що його постійно змушують замість неї прибирати. 11. Не може бути, що вона винна у крадіжці. 12. Я не дуже захоплююсь тим, щоб мене повчали. 13. Діти були дуже щасливі, що зустрілися з Святим Миколаєм. 14. Цей клас цікавиться створенням екопроектів. 15. Ти постійно втягнутий у вирішення чужих проблем. 16. Його знають за те, що він перший з групи виграв тенісний турнір. 17. Я пишаюся, що мене відзначили на зборах. 18. Ти будеш відповідальний за збір коштів на поїздку. 19. Не бійся сказати, що думаєш. 20. Я не впевнений, чи вона виконає обіцянку запросити журналістів. 21. Ми були дуже здивовані дізнатися, що ця тиха і скромна дівчина так гарно співає.

Exercise 4. Translate the sentences:

1. Вона зацікавилася подорожуванням до екзотичних країн. 2. Він здивований тим, що вони їй заважають. 3. Їй не подобається, коли її не зустрічають. 4. Не змарнуй нагоди сходити на показ мод. 5. Вона припинила нервуватися і сконцентрувалася. 6. Побачивши її, він припинив базікати і побіг назустріч. 7. Він стояв мовчки, не знаючи, що робити. 8. Взявши гітару, вона почала неголосно співати. 9. Він тренується грати в теніс кожного дня. 10. Вона надто лінива, аби тренуватися кожного дня. 11. Вона шкодувала, що не вміє плести. 12. Вона не могла зрозуміти його від'їзду. 13. Краще б книжку почитав замість того, щоб дивитися телевізор з ранку до ночі. 14. Їй подобається читати сучасну літературу. 15. Навіть не думай, аби піти додому, перш ніж закінчиш роботу. 16. Вони мають певні труднощі у знаходженні джерел фінансування. 17. Перш ніж одержати підвищення, він працював по п'ятдесят годин на тиждень. 18. Терпіти не можу, коли треба чекати.

GERUND VS. INFINITIVE

1. With the number of verbs and verb groups both the Gerund and the Infinitive may be used. These verbs can be followed by a to + Infinitive or by the Gerund without any change in meaning:

to attempt
to bother
can't bear
to continue
to omit
to begin
to cease
to commence
to intend
to start

e.g. I can't bear to see/seeing people suffering. He didn't bother to answer the question. – Many young people didn't bother voting.

After can't bear the accusative (me, John, you) can be used before the Infinitive and the accusative or possessive (my, John's, your) can be used before the Gerund: e.g. I can't bear you to shout in that way. I can't bear you/your shouting in that way.

2. These verbs can be followed by the Gerund or to- Infinitive:

to dread

to like (dislike)

to prefer

to love

to hate

We often use a to-Infinitive to refer to a specified future event and the Gerund to refer to an activity currently in progress or existing in general. e.g. I hate to disturb you (but I'm just about to do so). I hate disturbing people (in general). I hate disturbing you (I'm disturbing you and I'm sorry). I prefer doing exercises in the morning (in general). I prefer to wait outside (so I'll wait there if you don't mind). I prefer waiting here (I'm waiting here and I like it). I love (like) to watch (watching) TV. I like him / his playing the guitar (I like him to play the guitar).

N.B. would like /love / hate / prefer is followed by to-infinitive: e.g. Would you like to eat out? (future specified event). You would hate to live on a desert island. Would you prefer to have dinner now or later? We would like to visit Lviv. Would you like to go shopping?

3. The Gerund and to-Infinitive never mean the same when used after these verbs:

REMEMBER + TO-INFINITIVE refers to an action in the future (or to a future action as seen from the past): e.g. Remember to post the letters. (don't forget to) I remembered to post the letters. (I didn't forget to). R

REMEMBER + THE GERUND refers to the past: e.g. I remember posting the letters (I posted them and I remember the action).

FORGET + TO-INFINITIVE refers to future actions (or to a future action as seen from the past): e.g. Don't forget to ask Tom. I forgot to ask Tom.

FORGET + THE GERUND refers to the past: e.g. Have you forgotten meeting her? (i.e. you met her some time ago).

REGRET + TO-INFINITIVE refers to present or future: e.g. We regret to inform you that your account is overdrawn. (usually: regret to say / inform / tell – announcing bad news)

REGRET + THE GERUND refers to past: e.g. I have always regretted giving up my piano lessons.

TRY + TO-INFINITIVE means to make an effort: e.g. You really must try to overcome your shyness.

TRY + THE GERUND means to experiment: e.g. Try holding your breath to stop sneezing.

STOP + TO-INFINITIVE refers to purpose (denotes the adverbial modifier of purpose): e.g. On the way to the station I stopped to buy a paper. STOP + the Gerund: the Gerund forms part of a compound verbal aspect predicate: e.g. When he told us the story we couldn't stop laughing.

GO ON + TO-INFINITIVE refers to doing something different: e.g. After approving the agenda, we went on to discuss finance.

GO ON + THE GERUND means ‘continue without interruption’: e.g. We went on talking till after midnight MEAN + TO-INFINITIVE means ‘intend to do sth’: e.g. The Builders mean to finish by Friday. MEAN + THE GERUND means ‘involving or resulting in’: e.g. This new job means living abroad

4. The verbs advise, allow, encourage, forbid, recommend, permit and urge are followed by the Gerund when they have no object (but when they have an object, they are followed by the Infinitive):

advise	I advised seeing a doctor. I advised them to see a doctor
allow	Ireland doesn't allow smoking in bars. Ireland doesn't allow people to smoke in bars
encourage	He encourages eating healthy foods. He encourages his patients to eat healthy foods
forbid	Law forbids smoking at school Mother forbade me to smoke
recommend	The doctor recommends taking a course of vitamins The doctor recommends us to take a course of vitamins
permit	California doesn't permit fishing without a fishing license. California doesn't permit people to fish without a fishing license
urge	They urge recycling bottles and paper. They urge citizens to recycle bottles and paper

N.B. forbid somebody to do something e.g. He was forbidden to leave the house, as a punishment. forbid somebody from doing something e.g. Women are forbidden from going out without a veil

Exercise 5. Decide whether the verb should be followed by gerund or by infinitive:

- I couldn't sleep so I tried _____ (drink) some hot milk.
- She tried _____ (reach) the book on the high shelf, but she was too small.
- They tried _____ (get) to the party on time but the bus was delayed.
- We tried _____ (open) the window, but it was so hot outside it didn't help.
- He tried _____ (get) a job in a newspaper firm but they wouldn't hire him.
- He tried _____ (get) a job in a newspaper firm but he still wasn't satisfied.
- You should stop _____ (smoke), it's not good for your health.
- We stopped _____ (study) because we were tired.
- They will stop _____ (have) lunch at twelve.
- We stopped _____ (have) a rest, because we were really sleepy.
- Oh no! I forgot _____ (buy) milk.
- Please don't forget _____ (pick) up some juice on your way home.
- I don't remember _____ (lock) the door, but I'm sure I must have locked it.
- Have we studied this before? I've forgotten _____ (learn) it.
- Please remember _____ (bring) your homework.
- I remember _____ (go) to the beach as a child.
- Finally I remembered _____ (bring) your book! Here it is.
- Do you remember _____ (eat) steak in that little restaurant in Rome?
- I regret _____ (tell) you that the train has been delayed.
- I regret _____ (tell) Julie my secret; now she has told everyone.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences:

1. As for me, being a good student means _____ 2. I never mean _____ good people because ____ 3. I will never forget _____ as it was an awesome experience. 4. People usually regret _____ and it annoys me! 5. I have a strong feeling that my English needs _____ because _____ 6. I will never stop _____ and it makes me so happy! 7. Please remember _____ 8. I was very tired so I stopped _____ 9. That's a pretty bad habit, but I go on _____ when _____ 10. When there is no way out I try _____ 11. I consider English _____ 12. Living in Ukraine means _____

Exercise 7. Translate the sentences:

1. Порадь йому менше їсти і більше рухатися. 2. Лікарі радять лягати спати не пізніше одинадцятої вечора. 3. Навіщо ти дозволила дітям дивитися цей фільм? 4. Заохочуй студентів до волонтерської роботи. 5. Нам не дозволено заходити до неї в кабінет. 6. Курити в приміщенні заборонено. 7. Стипендія заохочує вчитися краще. 8. У рецепті рекомендовано взяти три ложки цукру. 9. На ставку не дозволено рибалити. 10. Не наполягай, щоб він вчився лише на відмінно. 11. Бібліотекар порекомендувала йому почитати фентезі. 12. Батьки не забороняли мені гуляти в лісі. 13. Тренер наполягає на щоденних тренуваннях. 14. Закон дозволяє голосувати з 18 років.

REVISION

Exercise 1 Insert gerund or infinitive:

1. Benjamin enjoys _____ to his iPod. (listen) 2. I don't mind _____ the washing up. (do) 3. Birthdays are not easy _____. (remember) 4. Adam is really good at _____. (swim) 5. She waited _____ a candy bar. (buy) 6. The doctor told his patients _____ healthy food. (eat) 7. My house is easy _____. (find) 8. She is interested in _____ a dentist. (become) 9. He is saving money _____ a new phone. (buy) 10. When I saw my grandma I couldn't help _____ her. (hug) 11. My favorite hobby is _____. (walk) 12. My father helped me _____ my homework. (do) 13. I'm sick of _____ hotdogs every day. (eat) 14. It is important _____ the internet for more information. (surf) 15. She advised me _____ a doctor as soon as possible. (see) 16. I don't feel like _____ French today. (study) 17. Paul got Daragh _____ his car (wash) 18. _____ sport every day is good for your health. (do) 19. At last they decided _____ the house. (rent) 20. She pretended _____ asleep. (be) 21. Rene stopped _____ hello to his friends. (say) 22. It's no use _____ over spilt milk. (cry) 23. The following questions are easy _____. (answer) 24. She told us where _____ the books. (find) 25. Would you mind _____ this card for me? (post) 26. They suggested _____ by plane. (travel) 27. We plan _____ to England this Christmas. (go) 28. It was hard for her _____ smoking. (quit) 29. We were all happy about

_____ the New Year in Paris. (celebrate) 30. It seems difficult
_____ everything about the topic. (know).

Exercise 2 Translate into English using the Gerund. State the functions. 1. Вивчення іноземної мови - важка, але цікава робота. 2. Відсутність прогресу - це регрес. 3. Вибір професії - найважливіший крок в житті кожної людини. 4. Звернутись до ними невідкладно - питання життя і смерті. 5. Займатися пересудами - улюблене заняття не тільки жінок, а й чоловіків. 6. Мене не проведеш. Навіть не намагайся зробити це. 7. Вирощування полуниці стало її пристрасною. 8. Він був так упертий. І переконати його було неможливо. 9. Купання у крижаній воді мало не вбило мене. 10. Сваритися і миритися - улюблене заняття моїх сусідеймолодоженов. 11. Дістатися до суті справи - це було все, чого він хотів. І зупинити його вже було неможливо. 12. Заводити романи - це не по моїй частині. 13. Викладання - не дуже вдячна робота. І заперечувати цього не можна. 14. Вдаватися до спогадів про минуле - марна трата часу. Адже назад дороги немає.

Exercise 3. Translate into English using the Gerund. State the functions. 1. Захоплення - це читання, відгадування кросвордів, танці та в'язання. 2. Він не міг втриматися, щоб не сказати їй яка вона хороша. 3. Коли ж ви закінчите сперечатися! Адже сперечатися - це даремно витрачати час. 4. Я не можу дозволити цим людям змушувати мого сина робити все, що вони хочуть. 5. Ви повинні добре подумати, перш ніж почнете працювати над цією проблемою. 6. Його звичайні заняття - це написання листів, гуляння з собакою, гра в шашки з друзями. 7. Він продовжував вести себе так, ніби нічого не сталося. 8. Перестаньте звертатися зі мною так, немов я дитина! 9. Потім вони стали розповідати про останні події в їхньому містечку. 10. Вам не потрібно нічого пояснювати мені. Я бачу, в чому суть. 11. Їм довелося вжити екстрених заходів, щоб уникнути конфлікту. 12. Її найбільше задоволення - танцювати і співати. 13. Мені не хочеться виходити сьогодні ввечері. 14. Він вибачився за те, що змусив мене чекати. 15. Він з передчуттям чекає зустрічі з нею. 16. Я привітала Аню зі здачею іспиту.

5. THE PARTICIPLES

The Participle is a non-finite form of the verb which has a verbal and an adjectival or an adverbial character. There are two Participles in English: Participle I and Participle II, traditionally called The Present Participle and The Past Participle.

PARTICIPLE I

Adjectival and adverbial characteristics of Participle I:

1) It can perform the function of an attribute: e.g. The boy playing center forward is the first-year student of our department.

2) It can perform the function of an adverbial modifier: e.g. Having cured his first patient of a serious disease the young doctor was very happy.

Verbal characteristics of Participle I:

1) Participle I can take a direct object: e.g. Having left his umbrella at home he soaked to the skin.

2) Participle I can be modified by an adverb: e.g. He walked up and down looking straight before him.

3) Participle I has tense and voice distinctions

Exercise 1. Pay attention to participles used as attributes:

1. Who's that girl, sitting on the fence? 2. The barking dogs kept me awake all night. 3. The falling leaves covered the path and made it quite slippery. 4. Developing countries need as much help as they can get. 5. The tempting cookie platter made my mouth salivate. 6. The fascinating book was a thrilling read. 7. The interesting story made a compelling point. 8. My work is really tiring. 9. My frustrating experience at the restaurant made me angry. 10. It was more annoying to me that he did not show up for the party. 11. The most annoying thing was that she did not speak up. 12. Bib didn't enjoy the movie because it was boring. 13. The confusing problem frightens the students. 14. It was an amusing story. 15. School can be tiring for young children.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the following sentences using participles as attributes:

1. The book which I read interests me_____. 2. The text confuses us_____. 3. The man who lives downstairs likes to sing loudly_____. 4. The children who are playing in the yard make too much noise_____. 5. The question which is being discussed at the meeting now, is rather important_____. 6. The factory which is being built in the suburb will produce toys_____. 7. The girl who is reciting the poem in front of the class is my best friend_____. 8. People who play loud music late at night can be really annoying_____. 9. We don't know the people who live in that house_____. 10. The picture which is being restored in our office was painted 200 years ago_____.

Exercise 3. Change the underlined parts into participles:

1. She has a parrot who can talk _____. 2. When we were meeting our parents at the station, we saw our old friend there.____ 3. Anyone who wants more potatoes just shout_____. 4. When I was walking home I stopped to buy a paper._____. 5. He came into the classroom and was carrying a huge bag._____. 6. When I was putting flowers into the vase I broke it._____. 7. I felt that something was crawling up my leg_____. 8. She entered the room and was smiling_____. 9. She likes to watch the stars which are twinkling in the sky_____. 10. Can you see a red fence which surrounds that yard?_____. 11. After we were told what to do, we shared the duties_____. 12. When I graduated from college I decided to take a course of computing_____. 13. The film is sure to interest you_____. 14. The sound of water which is running calms me down_____.

5.1. TENSE AND VOICE DISTINCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE I

Active Passive Indefinite asking being asked Perfect having asked having been asked To denote simultaneous actions P I Indefinite Active and P I Indefinite Passive are used: e.g. Making a tour of England we were struck by its parklike appearance. The monument being erected now on the square will be soon unveiled. To denote prior actions P I Perfect Active and P I Perfect Passive are used: e.g.

Having decided to get the general idea of the country we began to study the map
Having been presented with five gold coins Judy went shopping.

N. B! P I Indefinite Active is used to express a prior action with some verbs of sense perception and motion (to see, to hear, to look, to come, to arrive, to turn, to cross, to enter, to pass): e.g. Looking out of the window she saw a man working in the garden.

Exercise 1. Translate the sentences:

1. Повернувши за ріг, вони ледве не наїхали на гусей, котрі переходили дорогу. 2. Їхня вчителька дуже вимоглива. 3. Він бачив, як вона виходила. 4. Вона сиділа вдома, малюючи картини. 5. Обганяючи інше авто, він потрапив у аварію. 6. Шукаючи наш дім, вони заблукали. 7. Мені подобається дівчина, яка танцює. 8. Продивляючись журнал, він знайшов цікаве оголошення. 9. Дивлячись на дітей, що гралися, він заспокоївся. 10. Коли садитимеш квіти, не забудь полити. 11. Ця робота дуже виснажлива. 12. Відчинивши двері, він зупинився на порозі. 13. Закінчивши працювати, він вирішив прогулятися додому. 14. Не знаючи, що робити, вона вирішила зачекати. 15. Владнавши всі проблеми, вони поїхали у відпустку. 16. Фільм швидше розважальний, ніж драматичний. 17. Відчуваючи, що не мала рації, вона вирішила припинити суперечку. 18. Він просидів усю ніч, думаючи про майбутнє. 19. Промені сонця, що сходило, падали на дзеркало озера. 20. Він сидів, розглядаючи свої руки. 21. Зайшовши до приймальні, вона звернулася до секретаря. 22. Будучи запрошеною на вечірку, вона не знала, що надягти.

Exercise 2. Rewrite the sentences replacing the italic part with a present participle:

1. She was talking to her friend and forgot everything around her. _____ 2. Since we watch the news every day we know what's going on in the world. ____ 3. They are vegetarians and don't eat meat. _____ 4. The dog wagged its tail and bit the postman. _____ 5. While she was tidying up her room she found some old photos. _____ 6. He was a good boy and helped his mother in the kitchen. _____ 7. As they didn't have enough money they spent their holidays at home last year. _____ 8. The man was sitting in the cafe. He was reading a paper _____ 9. Since I didn't feel well I didn't go to the cinema. _____ 10. She walked home and met an old friend. _____

Exercise 3. Insert the appropriate form of the verb given in brackets. State whether the action rendered by the participle I is simultaneous or prior to the action expressed by the finite verb:

1. _____ control of his car on an icy road, the driver hit a tree.
a) Losing b) Having lost c) Being lost
2. She bent down and looked at the tiny kitten _____ under the table.
a) Sitting b) Being sat c) Having sat
3. _____ that it was useless to argue with him, I dropped the subject.
a) Having seen b) Having been seen c) Seeing

4. _____ to see as much as possible of the town, we hired a car.
 a) Having wished b) Wishing c) Being wished
5. I wonder what Doctor Brown thinks of the medical problem
 _____ now.
 a) being discussed b) discussing c) having been discussed
6. _____ what to say, she was confused.
 a) Knowing not b) Not knowing c) Not having known
7. _____ us she smiled.
 a) Having noticed b) Noticing c) Having been noticed
8. Have a look at the parrot _____ on the table!
 a) sitting b) being sat c) having been sitting
9. _____ home early, she had time to have a rest.
 a) Having come b) Coming c) Having been come
10. _____ the girl was silent.
 a) Having been surprised b) Surprising c) Being surprised

5.2. THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE I

1) P I as an attribute: The most widely used forms of P I in the function of an attribute are P I Indefinite Active and P I Indefinite Passive e.g. On the Western Coast Great Britain is washed by the Atlantic Ocean and by the Irish Sea separating England from Ireland Peculiarities

- If you have P I used as an attribute to a noun in pre-position the noun performs the action expressed by the ing-form. E.g. a touching story.

- P I Perfect can be used only as an adverbial modifier and never as an attribute. To express priority an attributive clause is used. e.g The student who has shown the countries of America on the map is going to his seat.

- Sometimes P I Indefinite denotes an action referring to no particular time. e.g Taiga is a thick forest stretching to the South of the Tundra.

2) P I as a predicative (P I Indefinite Active is used only). e.g The answer of the student is disappointing. The mostly used phrases are as follows: to be astonishing to be disappointing to be exciting to be humiliating to be inviting to be tempting to be terrifying to be touching etc.

3) P I as a parenthesis. Here P I Indefinite Active is used mostly with the following phrases: generally speaking judging by frankly speaking roughly speaking saying nothing of etc. e.g. Judging by his words he has visited Great Britain.

4) P I as an adverbial modifier of time. In this function P I Indefinite Active, P I Indefinite Passive, P I Perfect Active, P I Perfect Passive are used. e.g. Studying the map of Great Britain he found all the mountains on it. Having reached the top of the mountain we fell down too tired to do anything. Having been asked to show the countries of Europe on the map he refused to do it. Peculiarities

- The action expressed by a Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier always refers to the subject of the whole sentence

- With the verbs: to see, to hear, to notice, to come, to arrive, to seize, to look, to enter, to turn, to close, to open, to cross P I Indefinite is used to express a prior

action when the action expressed by the finite verb closely follows the action expressed by P I. e.g. Seeing that it was useless to argue with him I dropped the subject.

- The conjunction when, while are often used with P I Indefinite Active to express an action in progress simultaneous with that of the finite verb. e.g. While making a tour of England we were impressed by its beauty.

- P I Indefinite of the verb to be is not used as an adverbial modifier of time. Here the clause is used. e.g. When in Lviv he visited all his friends./ When he was in Lviv

5) P I as an adverbial modifier of cause. Here P I Indefinite Active / Passive, P I Perfect Active / Passive are used. e.g. Not knowing the topic well he got confused Being impressed by the duel scene in Hamlet they were silent on the way home. Having lost the book the students couldn't prepare the topic. Having been left alone the child felt miserable and lonely.

6) P I as an adverbial modifier of manner and attendant circumstances. Here P I Indefinite Active is used. e.g. I spent the morning at the cliff reading

7) P I as an adverbial modifier of comparison. Here P I Indefinite Active is used. e.g. She shivered with fright as if realizing the danger.

Exercise 1. Point out the participles and define their syntactic functions:

1. And she looked tearful, quite possibly having drunk a little too much. 2. She could have lost it in the taxi. Or on the pavement while getting into the taxi. 3. Anna gave a tinkling laugh. 4. Her father sat at the kitchen table moving papers around him. 5. Having opened the lid of the laptop, she could no longer tell herself this. 6. She opened her file with shaking hands. 7. Kimberly looked as if struggling to find something to say. 8. Brenda Brennan was at their table supervising the serving of a second starter. 9. He cupped her hands as if trying to propose to her. 10. He sat for a while thinking about their conversation. 11. Leave it alone, Brenda, Patrick said, shaking a spoon at her. 12. They sat in the kitchen, rubbing their ankles and drinking great mugs of tea. 13. He's found her, wining and dining in Stephens Green with an American. 14. He spoke simply as if stating a fact.

Exercise 2. Use the appropriate form of Participle I of the verbs brackets.

1. _____ (to look) out of the window, she saw there was a man working in the garden. 2. That night, _____ (to go) up to his room Shelton thought of his unpleasant duty. 3. _____ (to descend) to the hall, he came on Mr. Dennant _____ (to cross) to his study, with a handful of official-looking papers. 4. The carriage was almost full, and _____ (to put) his bag up in the rack, he took his seat. 5. _____ (to know) that she couldn't trust Jim, she sent Peter instead. 6. _____ (to do) all that was required, he was the last to leave the office. 7. _____ (to return) home in the afternoon, she became conscious of her mistake. 8. He couldn't join his friends _____ (to be) still busy in the laboratory. 9. _____ (to finish) his work, he seemed more pleased than usual. 10. _____ (to step) inside, he found himself in what had once been a sort of office. 11. He left the room again, _____ (to close) the door behind him with a bang. 12. I spent about ten minutes _____ (to turn) over the sixteen pages of "The Times" before I found the chief news and articles. 13. _____ (to turn) to the main street, he ran into Donald and Mary (to return) from school.

14. _____ (to return) from the expedition he wrote a book about Central Africa. 15. _____ (to get) out of bed she ran to the window and drew the curtain aside. 16. _____ (to confuse) by his joke, she blushed. 17. _____ (to inform) of their arrival the day before, he was better prepared to meet them than anyone of us. 18. Sir Henry paused and then said, _____ (to glance) down at his watch, "Edward's arriving by the 12.

Exercise 3. Combine the following pairs of sentences by using participles:

1. We met a boy. He was carrying a heavy bag. 2. The robbers saw the policeman. They ran away. 3. I found the door open. I went inside. 4. The police saw the body. It was floating down the river. 5. He cried at the top of his voice. He rushed at the thief. 6. We had worked for several hours. We came out of the office. 7. The troops gave a blow to the enemy. It was stunning. 8. We make some friendships in childhood. They last forever. 9. The sun had risen. We set out on our journey. 10. I walked along the road. I saw a snake. 11. He lost all his money in gambling. He became a pauper. 12. I took a cue from his words. I solved the riddle. 13. The burglars broke the door open. They entered the house. 14. He didn't realize the implication of his words. He went on speaking.

Exercise 4. Translate into English. Comment on the syntactical function of Participle I. 1. Ніколи не підписуйте папери, попередньо не прочитавши їх. 2. Не знаючи ні імені, ні адреси дівчата, він боявся, що ніколи її не знайде. 3. Дитина розбирав нову іграшку, не приховуючи своєї цікавості. 4. Вона іноді не може вимити посуд, щоб чого-небудь не розбився. 5. Вони і п'яти хвилин не можуть провести разом, щоб не посваритися. 6. Альпіністи рухалися до вершини, не звертаючи уваги на палюче сонце. 7. Не дізнавшись мене, вона пройшла повз. 8. Вони увійшли, чи не постукавши. 9. Раптом я почув звук ключа, що повертається в замковій щілині. 10. Написавши останнє слово, вона запитально подивилася на мене. 11. Штовхнувши двері, він відчув, що вона не була замкнена, і, відкривши її, він заглянув усередину. 12. Розповідаючи про цей випадок, вона не могла не сміятися. 13. Його увагу привернула дівчина, що сиділа навпроти нього в метро. 14. Дівчина, що сиділа навпроти нього в вагоні, раптом встала і вийшла. 15. Ми спостерігали за віддаляється від нас літаком. 16. Від'їхавши від станції, поїзд почав набирати швидкість. 17. Читаючи книгу, він завжди міг передбачити подальші події. 18. Прочитавши книгу до кінця, він поклав її на стіл. 19. Поклавши книгу на стіл, він встав і подивився в вікна.

5.3. VERBAL NOUN vs. GERUND vs. PARTICIPLE I

Verbal noun Gerund Participle

1 Verb + ing e.g. speak-ing Verb + ing e.g. dream-ing Verb + ing e.g. read-ing

2 The -ing form functions as a countable noun which can be replaced by it (singular) or they (plural): e.g. Dickens often gave readings of his work. They were very popular.

The -ing form often functions in general statements as an uncountable noun with no article. It can also be replaced by it: e.g. Dancing is fun. I love it.

Participles are associated with verbs when they refer to actions in progress, e.g. in progressive tenses. Participle phrases also commonly stand for clauses: e.g. Walking in the park the other day, I saw a bird building a nest. (= I was walking, the bird was building)

3 Verbal noun is used with articles, determiners and after numerals: e.g. Brendel has made a new recording. The recording was made live. The sinking of the Titanic has never been forgotten. These two paintings are mine. We can use the gerund after possessives e.g. I appreciate your helping me. Gerund can be modified by an adverb of manner e.g. She burst out crying bitterly. Participle can be modified by an adverb of degree e.g. The play was very entertaining

4 Verbal Noun can be used in plural: e.g. Are there your drawings on the wall? - -

5 Gerund can be used in the function of a subject, object and predicative e.g. Singing is my hobby I like jogging My hobby is singing Gerund in the function of an attribute and an adverbial modifier is - The Participle in the function of an attribute and an adverbial modifier⁶³ always preceded by a preposition e.g. She had a feeling of having been robbed He asked my name without looking at me He was surprised at having been invited to the wedding reception. is used without any preposition e.g. The girl singing a song is from my class He asked my name not looking at me

6 Gerund + Noun: the Gerund is used as a noun (i.e., as the first part of a compound noun) and shows for what something is used (a swimming pool = a pool for swimming) e.g. walking stick Participle + Noun: the Participle is used as an attribute and usually expresses continuous nature of the action (the swimming boy = the boy who is swimming) e.g. walking man

Exercise 1. State whether the -ing forms given in the following sentences are participles or gerunds:

1. Hearing a loud noise, we ran to the window. 2. The motorcyclist was fatally injured in the accident and is now fighting for his life. 3. He ruined his sight by watching TV all day. 4. We saw a clown standing on his head. 5. Asking questions is a whole lot easier than answering them. 6. Waving their hands, the audience cheered the winner. 7. Plucking flowers is forbidden. 8. Jumping over the fence, the thief escaped. 9. I was surprised at John's being absent. 10. We spent the whole day playing cards. 11. Praising all alike is praising none. 12. Are you afraid of speaking the truth? 13. Singing to herself is her chief delight. 14. John's favorite outdoor activity is skiing. 15. Dancing with the famous instructor, Dillon felt like a star. 16. Watching the birds is one of Mr. Martin's hobbies. 17. Janice, baking 10 cakes for the festival, accidentally burned one of them. 18. Working out daily should be an essential part of American life. 19. Seeing is believing. 20. We listened to the mother singing her child a lullaby. 21. Cooking may be fun.

Exercise 2. Decide whether the ing-form is a participle, gerund or verbal noun.

1. Doing morning exercises is very useful for everybody's health. 2. When mother came into Kate's room, she saw her daughter doing the homework. 3. He didn't miss the opportunity of doing his boss a favour whenever he could. 4.

Walking on the seashore we admired the beauty of the sea and the sight of seagulls hovering in the sky. 5. I am afraid of walking in the street at night. You know, anything can happen. 6. The cleaning in the house has been done by our father today. 7. While washing the skirt, she found a one pound note in its pocket. 8. I will spend a lot of time on washing the children's clothes. 9. Grace was looking at the man trying to remember where she had seen him. 10. I got used to trying various methods in the project to achieve a better result.

Exercise 3. State whether the -ing forms given in the following sentences are participles or gerunds:

1. Feeling sick, Michael excused himself from class.
a) Gerund b) Participle
2. Everyone hates having the flu.
a) Gerund b) Participle
3. Swimming regularly is great cardiovascular exercise.
a) Gerund b) Participle
4. Having completed all of his homework, Kolby watched the San Jose Sharks beat the Los Angeles Kings.
a) Gerund b) Participle
5. Rushing (1) to work can result in careless driving (2). (1)
a) Gerund b) Participle (2) a) Gerund b) Participle
6. Rushing (1) to meet her deadline, Marcia made a lot of typing (2) mistakes in the report. (1)
a) Gerund b) Participle (2) a) Gerund b) Participle
7. Using the jaws of life to cut away the cabin of the truck, the paramedics finally managed to get the driver out.
a) Gerund b) Participle
8. Pedro and his friends canceled their plans to go hiking (1) in the mountains when the clouds became very threatening (2).
(1) a) Gerund b) Participle (2) a) Gerund b) Participle
9. Reading (1) the newspaper is important for staying (2) on top of current events. (1)
a) Gerund b) Participle (2) a) Gerund b) Participle

Exercise 4. Translate into English. Use Complex Object with the Participle I or the Infinitive depending on the predicate verb and on the meaning of the sentence. Give two variants where possible.

Model 1) Ти за півгодини довів її до сліз. - You had her crying in half an hour. You made her cry in half an hour. 2) Я бачив її, коли вона виходила з дому. - I saw her leaving the house. I saw her leave the house. 3) Я застав її в сльозах. - I found her crying. 4) Я ніколи не бачив, щоб вона брала ці книги. - I have never seen her take the books. 5) Ми не чекали, що вона прийде сьогодні. - We did not expect her to come today.

1. Вона спала, коли я йшов. 2. Не можу собі уявити, щоб вона так довго чекала. 3. Не турбуйтеся, я доб'юся, щоб вона все б1 робила, як треба. 4. Я ніколи їх не бачила під час сварки. 5. Я ніколи не бачила, щоб вони сварилися. 6 Я застала їх перед телевізором. Вони дивилися передачу. 7. Я

легко можу собі уявити, що вона відмовиться від цієї роботи. 8. Хто-небудь бачив його, коли він брав книги? 9. Ми не бачили, щоб він брав книги. 10. Хтось чув, що він це говорив. 11. Хтось чув його, коли він це говорив. 12. Я терпіти не можу, коли ти розмовляєш так! 13. Не змушуйте їх так довго чекати. 14. Вона зауважила, що діти грали на проїжджій частині вулиці. 15. Він знайшов її на платформі в очікуванні поїзда. 16. Він відчував, що у нього тремтіли руки. 17. Коли Джек побачив, що Том перетинав вулицю, він помахав йому рукою. 18. Ми чули, як гід розповідала туристам про історію Москви.

5.4. PARTICIPLE II. ADJECTIVES –ING/-ED

Past participles are used for all perfect tense forms of a verb and in the passive voice in English. The highlighted words below are examples of past participles:

1. Present perfect e.g. She hasn't finished her assignment yet. I still haven't found my keys.

2. Past perfect e.g. Chris was ill because he had eaten too much chocolate. She missed the bus because she hadn't set her alarm.

3. Future perfect e.g. Jamie will have been in Australia for one year in April. He will have gone by the time you arrive.

4. Conditional perfect e.g. If his passport had not been stolen, Adam would have gone to Brazil. I wouldn't have known if you hadn't told me.

5. Passive Voice e.g. The west coast of The USA was struck by torrential rain last night. The painting was stolen in the middle of the night. Characteristics:

1) PII has no tense distinctions e.g. As a rule, the goods produced at this factory are of the highest quality. Burton's brother ruined by card playing had to ask for a job.

2) PII of transitive verbs has a passive meaning: opened, closed, built, broken, made, etc. PII of intransitive verbs denotes passing into a new state. e.g. Faded leaves, withered flower Participles as Adjectives Past Participles used as an adjective in front of a noun. They have passive meaning: e.g. The stolen baby was found by the police unharmed. Dean's broken arm was set in plaster by the doctor at the hospital. Please bring all of the required documents for your interview tomorrow. Present participles used as adjectives are active: e.g. a touching story, a singing boy The story excites me – I am excited by the story – The story is exciting

Exercise 1. Underline the past participles used as adjectives. Translate the sentences:

1. Here is a laminated copy to replace your torn one. 2. Stuffed deer heads on walls are bad enough, but it's worse when they have streamers in their antlers because then you know they were enjoying themselves when they were shot. 3. A torn jacket is soon mended, but hard words bruise the heart of a child. 4. Scandal is gossip made tedious by morality. 5. The enemy is anybody who's going to get you killed, no matter which side he's on.

Exercise 2. Insert the appropriate form of the verb. Translate the sentences:

1. I am _____. Let's do something. How about going to a movie?

- a) bored b) boring c) being bored
2. After her younger sister was born, Margaret felt _____ and betrayed.
- a) forgotten b) being forgotten c) forgetting
3. Once _____, twice shy.
- a) bitten b) biting c) having bitten
4. A _____ pot never boils.
- a) watched b) watching c) having been watched
5. A white shawl _____ around the girl's shoulders made her look like a Greek goddess.
- a) wrapped b) being wrapped c) having been wrapped
6. I don't really see what can be done about the _____ picture.
- a) being ruined b) ruined c) having been ruined

Exercise 3. Present participle or past participle? Choose the correct answer:

1. I like to go for a walk when I'm _____.
- a) boring b) bored
2. That was the most _____ project I have ever worked on.
- a) boring b) bored
3. I don't like to watch the evening news; it's too _____.
- a) depressing b) depressed
4. I like John, but he can be very _____ at times.
- a) annoying b) annoyed
5. This work is very _____.
- a) tiring b) tired.

Exercise 4 Complete the sentences with one of the following words. Not all of them are used. Surprised interesting interested surprising annoyed bored boring frightened annoying exciting frightening excited tiring worried tired worrying

1. The TV program was _____ so I turned it off. Children can't get to sleep on Christmas Eve. They're too _____.
2. —Hi, Mum! —Carol! Thank goodness you rang! Where have you been? We've been so _____ about you!
3. —Hello, darling. I've got a present for you. —For me? —Don't look so _____. I often buy you presents. —But it isn't my birthday!
4. The art exhibition was very _____. I loved it, but I had to leave after three hours. My feet were killing me! I find going around art galleries and museums very _____.
5. Some people don't go out at night because they're _____ that someone will rob them.
6. Our financial situation is very _____. We spend more and more, but we're earning less and less.
7. —You're yawning. Are you listening to what I'm saying? —I am! I'm really _____. I want to know what happened. It's just that I feel very _____.
- I went to bed very late last night.
8. —I'm going to a three-month holiday to the Far East. —How _____. Lucky you!
9. —Was your father _____ when you told him your exam results? —He was furious.

Exercise 5. Open the brackets:

1. He and I were _____. (bored / boring). 2. My aunt is a very _____ person. (amused / amusing). 3. I heard the joke before and I was not _____. (amused / amusing). 4. That is an _____ book. (interested / interesting). 5. His grandfather is an _____ person. (interested / interesting). 6. The film was _____ in the extreme. (disgusted / disgusting). 7. She was _____ by the film last night . (disgusted / disgusting). 8. The traffic jam was very _____ indeed. (irritated / irritating). 9. He was very _____ by the traffic jam. (irritated / irritating). 10. The situation was very _____. (frightened/ frightening). 11. I was very _____ by the strange knock on the door. (frightened / frightening). 12. She was very _____ because of the delay. (annoyed / annoying). 13. It is very _____ when you have to wait so long. (annoyed/annoying).

Exercise 6. Use the appropriate form of Participle I of the verbs in brackets. 1. (to put) the books on the shelf, he sat at the desk. 2. (to greet) her, he turned the key in the door with a certain skill. 3. I felt a bitter envy towards the two small boys (to walk) along the path. 4. She had a pale face and dark hair (to turn) grey. 5. He and Soames stood in the drawing-room (to wait). 6. Not for a moment did he show surprise at the wedding gift (to present) to him personally. 7. (to dry) his hands, Tom came across from the washstand. 8. Miss Lindey, (to see) Rose, smiled. 9. (to come) home he found a letter awaiting him. 10. We felt very tired (to work) the whole day in the sun. 11. (to turn down) an obscure street, he went up to a smith's shop. 12. (to hear) a footstep below he rose and went to the stairs. 13. (to read) this book I can tell you my opinion of it. 14. As (to spend) most of her housekeeping money, she reluctantly decided to go home. 15. (to see) that it was beginning to get cold we went home. 16. (to butter) the last slice of bread she started pouring out the coffee. 17. (to pick up) his suitcase, Maxim took a deep breath and went out. 18. (not to know) his telephone number I could not get in touch with him. 19. (to make up) my mind I told her about my plan.

Exercise 7. Translate what is given in brackets using Participle I. State the functions. 1. (Зробивши уроки), he switched on the TV set. 2. She was looking at the son, (який робив уроки). 3. (коли він перечитував лист), he found it rather clever and convincing. 4. (перечитавши твір), he found the only mistake in it. 5. We came up to the man (який стояв у кутку), and asked him the way. 6. (розповівши все, що він знав), the witness left the box. 7. Each time (розповідаючи про цей випадок), he could not help smiling. 8. (приїхавши у готель), she found a telegram awaiting her. 9. (коли їх поставили у воду), the flowers opened their petals. 10. (штовхнувши двері) he felt that it was not locked, and (відкривши її) he looked inside. 11. (написавши лист), George folded and put it into an envelope. 12. The leaves (які падали), covered the earth which was waiting for the winter to come. 13. They watched the sun (яке сідало), and admired the sight. 14. I walked happily through the streets (спостерігаючи, як місто) come to life. 15. (м'яко кажучи), she was rather rude and impolite. 16. (виражаючи свою власну думку), he did not want to offend them.

5.5. THE SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE II

1. An attribute. e.g. People, treated in polyclinics are called out-patients. (post-position) Having given the boy the prescribed medicine, I went out for a while. (preposition) Frozen with horror he understood everything. (detached position)

2. A predicative e.g. He seemed delighted to see me again. She looked worried. I confessed I was bewildered.

3. An adverbial modifier of time e.g. When told the truth he realized everything.

4. An adverbial modifier of condition e.g. If sent immediately the telegram will be delivered in time.

5. An adverbial modifier of comparison e.g. He looked bewildered as if told something unbelievable.

6. An adverbial modifier of concession e.g. Though frightened he did not show it.

N.B! In the adverbial function the Participle II should have logically the same subject as the predicate of the whole sentence.

Exercise 1. Point out participles II, define their functions:

1. The moth-eaten velvet curtains Harry had passed earlier had flown apart. 2. Right, they said, pleased that there was no row. 3. —Bob O'Neil's not coming to the dinner? Cath said, surprised that the table was set only for three. 4. —But surely you don't need to work that hard... he said, appalled. 5. She got her hair done and went to the charity shop. 6. You are not telling me you are going to go back on the agreed menu. 7. Brenda made sure that Quentins [restaurant] had two kinds of bottled water. 8. The sofa had a folded blanket and beside it there was a computer. 9. Cassie looked uncomfortably at the floor, tracing the patterns in the faded rug with the toe of her shoe. 10. Bewildered, wondering what on earth he was supposed to have done this time, Harry got up and followed Uncle Vernon. 11. The young waiters and waitresses were Europeans from different lands, all smartly dressed in their dark trousers and white jackets

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences: amusing/amused boring/bored
depressing/depressed interesting/interested surprising/surprised
disgusting/disgusted annoying/annoyed confusing/confused

1. I do the same thing every day. My job is very _____ .
2. I have nothing to do. I'm _____. 3. My job is very varied. I find it _____. 4. I heard some very _____ news. I'm going to lose my job. I feel terrible. 5. Cheer up. Don't feel so _____. There are plenty of other jobs. 6. I heard a very _____ story. It will make you laugh. 7. It's not _____ that you failed the exam. You never did any work. 8. I don't understand this exercise. I'm very _____. 9. I thought your behaviour at the party was _____. You were sick in the middle of the room. 10. My trip to Paris has been cancelled. I'm really _____. I really wanted to go. 11. There are a lot of road signs. It's all very _____. 12. I am very _____ in this subject. I find it fascinating. 13. The lesson was really _____. I almost fell asleep. 14. I was _____ by her behaviour. It was

very funny. 15. I was _____ by the news. I didn't expect it. 16. I was _____ by his behaviour. It was outrageous. 17. I'm _____ in finding out more about this. Where can I look? 18. When the students did badly, the teacher became really _____ and didn't smile for weeks.

Exercise 3. There is one mistake in each sentence. Underline the mistakes and correct them:

1. I dislike to argue. 2. You ought finish the project now. 3. I suggested to take a walk in the garden. 4. The teacher made Rose to do homework again. 5. Paul did not object to join the party. 6. The broken chair needs be repaired. 7. It is no use to asking Mike for help. He is selfish. 8. You are not old enough join the club. 9. They didn't see her to come in. 10. Depressing after losing all his money in gambling, George decided to start a new life.

Exercise 4. Translate into English. Use Complex Subject with the Participle I and the Infinitive where necessary.

Model: 1) Її попросили почекати. — She was asked to wait. 2) Її застали очікуючою своєї черги. She was found waiting for her turn. 1. Виявилось, що вона все знає. 2. Її вважали розумною. 3. Навряд рюкзак знайдуть. 4. Речі вважали викраденими. 5. Роботу можна вважати виконаною. 6. Здається, ніхто не знає його адреси. 7. Листи були знайдені у кошику для паперів, підписані та запаковані. 8. В останній раз бачили, як він читає у читальному залі. 9. Виявилося, що він нічого не знає. 10. Чули, як він говорив, що дуже шкодує. 11. Його призначили секретарем. 12. Вночі чули, як собака скавчала в саду. 13. Собаку знайшли прив'язаною до дерева. 14. Вважали, що книга розкуплена. 15. Мене не змусили чекати. 16. Бачили, як Джейн відкривала двері. 17. Бачили, як хлопці з нашої школи грали у футбол. 18. Чи навряд вона змінить своє відношення до нього після цього випадка.

5.6. TYPES OF PARTICIPLE PHRASE

1. Participle phrases are an efficient way of giving more information about a noun and can often replace a defining relative clause:

e.g. The man is very noisy. The man lives upstairs: → The man who lives upstairs is very noisy. (defining relative clause); → The man living upstairs is very noisy. (active participle phrase). e.g. The portrait is lovely. The portrait was painted by my brother: → The portrait which was painted by my brother is lovely. (defining relative clause); → The portrait painted by my brother is lovely. (passive participle phrase – Participle II). We can only use a participle phrase to replace a defining relative clause if the subject of the main clause and the relative clause is the same. We cannot use a participle phrase if there is another subject between the relative pronoun and the verb: e.g. The house living in is over a century old. – wrong. The house which we live in is over a century old. – correct. The man engaged to has disappeared. – wrong. The man who Trudy was engaged to has disappeared. – correct.

2. Participle phrases can often operate like clauses of reason, condition, result and time:

REASON: She will be unable to answer your queries because she is not qualified. (full clause) → Not being qualified she will be unable to answer your queries. (participle phrase). As I hadn't been asked I didn't really want to interfere. (full clause) → Not having been asked I didn't really want to interfere. (participle phrase).

CONDITION: If you treat it gently the fabric should last for years. (full clause) → Treated gently, the fabric should last for years. (participle clause).

RESULT: The corporation shut down the plant, with the result that many workers were left unemployed. (full clause) → The corporation shut down, leaving many workers unemployed. (participle clause). N.B! Note that the result is often not intended: e.g. I stayed at work rather late, missing my last train home. A new dam was built across the river, flooding thousands of hectares of farmland.

TIME: As we turned across the corner we saw the hospital in front of us. (full clause) → Turning the corner, we saw the hospital. (participle phrase).

We usually use -ing participle phrase when two actions happen at the same time or one happens immediately after the other: e.g. Leaving the motorway, we noticed an overturned truck on the verge. (→ when we were leaving the motorway, we noticed...). Switching off the lights, I turned over and buried my head in the pillow. (→ After I switched off the lights, I turned over...). The -ing participle usually describes the background (the setting) or earlier action. e.g. Living in Los Angeles, Brad was one of those ever-optimistic movie wannabes. When we want to emphasize that one thing happened before another, we use a perfect participle for the earlier action. The participle phrase can come before or after the main clause: e.g. Having passed my driving test, I was able to buy my first car. (→ After I had passed my driving test...). → I was able to buy my first car, having passed my driving test. The perfect participle can also describe reasons or causes as they usually come before a result: e.g. Having forgotten to take my keys, I had to borrow a set from my landlord. (→ because I had forgotten my keys...).

In written English it is usual to move from the familiar (the current topic) to the new information, and to be economical with words to avoid repetition we use participle and infinitive phrases: c.f. Steve went home. He noticed a piece of paper which had been left on the doorstep as he walked towards the door. → Steve went home. Walking towards the door, he noticed a piece of paper left on the doorstep. c.f. Because Marion didn't have a degree she was the only one who wasn't offered a permanent contract. → Not having a degree, Marion was the only one not to be offered a permanent contract.

Exercise 1. Replace these clauses suggesting a condition with adverbial participle clauses:

1. When it is stored in a cool place the jam will keep for several months. 2. When you do it every day this exercise will help strengthen your leg muscles. 3. If you apply it to the face and arms the cream will protect them from insect bites. 4. If they are planted in early spring these vegetables can be harvested in the summer. 5. When you mix it with butter and water the flour forms dough. 6. If you recharge them every day, the batteries should last a few years.

Exercise 2. Shorten the sentences using participles: 1. After they were on the road for four days, the Todds were exhausted. 2. That hymn, which was sung by many generations of churchgoers, is my favorite. 3. We were climbing slowly, we approached the top of the hill. 4. As he was surprised by my question, Mrs. Osmond blushed. 5. Phil, who was worn out by his long trip, slept for twelve hours. 6. The dog was watching me closely, he came toward me. 7. Bob was staring out of the window at the rain, he became more and more impatient. 8. He was hurt in the first game, Al sat on the bench for the rest of the season. 9. The plates, which were brought from Denmark by my grandmother, are on display in the dining room. 10. The cookies, which were baked this morning, were all gone by five o'clock. 11. After he came out in the cool night air, Mr. Troy looked up at the sky. 12. The children, who were waiting for the play to begin, grew bored. 13. The boys were working hard all day; the boys finished the job by dinner time. 14. Many people were driven from their homelands, they each year seek refuge in the United States. 15. The cheerleaders were jumping up and down, they urged the team on. 16. The basketball team, who were encouraged by its performance in the semifinals, went on to the finals. 17. After she had recorded the results of the experiment, Kate closed her notebook. 18. We saw an old woman who was walking up the path. 19. After she was told of her job offer, Kathy smiled happily. 20. Since she spent each afternoon at the beach, Alice soon had a nice tan.

Exercise 3. Combine the following sentences using participles where possible:

1. The dishwasher was invented in 1889. The dishwasher was invented by an Indiana housewife. The first dishwasher was driven by a steam engine. 2. I took small sips from a can of Coke. I was sitting on the ground in a shady corner. I was sitting with my back against the wall. 3. I was sitting on the window ledge. The ledge overlooked the narrow street. I watched the children. The children were frolicking in the first snow of the season. 4. The first edition of Infant Care was published by the U.S. Government. The first edition of Infant Care was published in 1914. The first edition of Infant Care recommended the use of peat moss for disposable diapers. 5. The house sat stately upon a hill. The house was gray. The house was weather-worn. The house was surrounded by barren tobacco fields. 6. I washed the windows in a fever of fear. I whipped the squeegee swiftly up and down the glass. I feared that some member of the gang might see me. 7. Goldsmith smiled. He bunched his cheeks like twin rolls of toilet paper. His cheeks were fat. The toilet paper was smooth. The toilet paper was pink. 8. The roaches scurried in and out of the breadbox. The roaches sang chanteys. The roaches sang as they worked. The roaches paused only to thumb their noses. They thumbed their noses jeeringly. They thumbed their noses in my direction. 9. The medieval peasant was distracted by war. The medieval peasant was weakened by malnutrition. The medieval peasant was exhausted by his struggle to earn a living. The medieval peasant was an easy prey for the dreadful Black Death. 10. He eats slowly. He eats steadily. He sucks the sardine oil from his fingers. The sardine oil is rich. He sucks the oil with slow and complete relish.

5.7. COMPLEX OBJECT WITH THE PARTICIPLE

It is the construction in which the Participle is in predicate relation to a noun in the Common Case or a pronoun in the Objective case. Participle I Indefinite Active or Participle II are used. In a sentence the construction has the function of a Complex object. It may be found:

1) after verbs denoting sense perception (to see, to feel, to watch...): e.g. He heard his wife coming. She felt her hands trembling.

2) after verbs denoting wish (to want, to wish, to desire...) – only Participle II is used: e.g. The teacher wants the exercise done quickly.

3) after some verbs of mental ability (to understand, to consider...). – Participle II is used: e.g. She considers herself engaged to Mr. Smith.

4) after the verbs to have, to get with Participle II: e.g. I had my piano tuned. In interrogative and negative sentences the auxiliary verb is used: e.g. Why don't you have your hair waved?

Exercise 1. Paraphrase the sentences:

1. I've heard how he was arguing with his father. 2. He heard her. She was playing the piano. 3. I felt her hand. It was shaking. 4. She felt something. It was crawling around her neck. 5. We saw an old woman. She was crossing the street. 6. I heard them. They were arguing. 7. I've heard how she was crying. 8. They noticed the boy. He was taking sweets one by one. 9. We heard someone. Someone was crying. 10. I don't want to hear how you lie again.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of have and make clear that the people don't / didn't do it themselves.

1. Freddy _____ the bathroom tiles replaced last week. (past simple)
2. We _____ the dog examined by a vet before we left for France. (past perfect)
3. Mum _____ her new washing machine put in when the electricity was cut off. (past continuous)
4. The millionaire _____ his suitcase packed by a servant yesterday evening. (past simple)
5. Maggie _____ all her meals prepared by her personal chef. (will)
6. Bernard _____ two of his books published so far. (present perfect)
7. We _____ our new furniture delivered tomorrow. (present continuous)

Exercise 3. Rewrite the following sentences using have or get with a past participle.

1. Someone washed my car for me yesterday. I had _____
2. Your hair wants cutting. You must have _____
3. I'll ask someone to make a new one. I'll have _____
4. I'm asking somebody to redecorate my room. I'm having _____
5. Did you ask anybody to clean your suit? Did you get _____
6. She asked somebody to buy some old gramophone records for her. She had _____
7. We asked them to give us a clear justification. We had _____
8. They're asking someone to put things in order for them. They're having _____
9. Brian ordered someone to repair the roof yesterday. Brian had _____
10. Tom will ask someone to install a telephone in his flat. Tom will have _____
11. He's going to tell someone to remove the rubbish. He's going to have _____
12. He must ask the architect to modify the design. He must have _____
13. The customer had ordered the waiter to serve the soup in a hot dish. The customer had _____

had _____ 14. They told her to open her suit case for inspection. They had _____ 15. He ordered someone to make early reservation for him. He had _____

Exercise 4. Choose the correct participle:

1. Caught / catching in the traffic, Sarah knew she was going to be late for work. 2. Caught / catching the ball, the dog ran off to chew it quietly under a tree. 3. Made / making soup, Robert accidentally burnt his hand. 4. Made / making in Japan, the car was on sale at a very competitive price. 5. Explaining / explained in detail, the instructions seemed very complicated. 6. Explaining / explained the working of the new machinery, David kept consulting his notes. 7. Writing / written the letter, she couldn't help crying a little. 8. Drinking / drunk in moderation, this whisky will not do you any harm. 9. Finishing / finished in metallic gold, the car certainly looked as if it was worth a lot of money. 10. Looked / looking for his number in the phone book, Susie was getting more and more nervous. 11. Looked at / looking at by millions every year, the Mona Lisa is the most famous painting in the world

Exercise 5. Translate into English. Use the Participle I or the Participle II in the syntactical function of an attribute. Make up your own sentences with them 1. розбита чашка 2. ламається голос 3. програна гра 4. програла команда 5. програє команда 6. кип'ячена вода 7. кипляча вода 8. забутий метод 9. людина, що забула ... 10. смажена риба 11. смажачі риба 12. впригнувший на стіл кіт 13. стрибає собака 14. сміється голосно 15. дівчина, яка сміється 16. обрана тема 17. втрачений шанс 18. постійно втрачається зошит 19. рветься нитка 20. розірваний конверт.

Exercise 6. Translate into English. Comment on the syntactical function of the Participle I or the Participle II. 1. Вона щось говорила дитині, яка плакала. 2. Студент, що втратив ручку, може отримати її назад в деканаті. 3. Команда, яка програла, мовчки покидала поле. 4. Він вболівав за команду, яка програє. 5. Людина, яка це написала, помиляється. 6. Дівчині, яка співала, було близько шістнадцяти років. 7. Ось дівчина, яка розповіла мені цю історію. 8. Вона поклала яйця в киплячу воду. 9. Подивися на дівчину, яка стоїть біля вікна. 10. Я підійшла до дівчини, що стояла біля вікна (яка стояла біля вікна). 11. Дівчина, яка стояла біля вікна, вже пішла. 12. Діти, які грали у дворі, голосно сміялися. 13. Діти, які грали у дворі, вже пішли додому. 14. Розірваний на шматочки папір лежав на його письмовому столі. 15. Нитка, яка постійна рвалася, створювала проблеми. 16. На ньому був поношений піджак. 17. Занурена в думки, вона не відразу почула телефонний дзвінок. 18. Дайте їм мій телефон, якщо у вас його попросять. 19. Він зауважив, що вона почервоніла і виглядала збентеженою.

5.8. COMPLEX SUBJECT WITH THE PARTICIPLE

It is the construction in which a participle (mostly Participle I) is in predicate relation to a noun in the Common Case or a pronoun in Nominative Case which is the subject of the sentence. The construction doesn't serve as one part of the sentence. One of its compound parts has a function of a subject, the other forms

part of a compound predicate. e.g. A plane was heard flying high in the sky. The construction is chiefly used after verbs of sense perception.

Exercise 1. Translate the sentences:

1. Бачили, як вона до нього усміхалася. 2. Чули, як машина завелася. 3. Чути було, що дзвінок натиснули двічі. 4. Я помітила, що тема розмови змінилася. 5. Чули, як вони сварилися. 6. Твоє ім'я бачили написаним на дошці пошани. 7. Я хочу, щоб книгу повернули мені до вечора. 8. Чули, як двері захлопнули. 9. Помітили, що браслет вкрадений. 10. Бачили, як вона танцює в коридорі. 11. Помітили, як він пхав руку в чужу кишеню.

Exercise 2. Find and correct the mistakes:

1. Felt tired and having nothing more to do till he came, she sat into the armchair at the window having looked at the mountains lighting by the sun. 2. On the walls there were some common coloured pictures, framing and glazed. 3. His house was close at hand, a very pleasant little cottage, painted white, with green blinds. 4. It was the hour of sunset, having unnoticed in the cities, so beautiful in the country. 5. Finished breakfast, he stayed for some minutes in the dining room. 6. Mother smiled looking at the children played in the garden. 7. While read a book, I came across several interesting expressions. 8. Some questions having touched upon in the report are worth considering. 9. Leaving our suitcases we went sightseeing. 10. Hear her come into the house he went downstairs.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using the correct tense:

a) He paints his shoes. He _____ his shoes _____. b) She was perming her hair. She _____ he hair _____. c) I will repair the roof. I _____ my roof _____. d) The manager has cleaned the window. The manager _____ the window _____. e) She has been taking photos. She _____ photos _____. f) You had ironed your t-shirt. You _____ your t-shirt _____. g) He had been decorating the house. He _____ his house _____. h) He may send the parcel. You _____ the parcel _____. i) I will be cutting my hair. I _____ my hair _____.

Exercise 4. Use have + past participle for the following sentences:

a) No one can renew her season tickets _____. b) She didn't write the book. Someone did it for her. _____. c) Someone redecorated Susan's house _____. d) The painter is painting Karen's house _____. e) Someone is cooking the meal for him _____. f) His hair must be cut _____. g) Our TV needs to be repaired _____. h) Someone stole my car last night _____. i) Her sofa is broken. It must be mended _____.

Exercise 5. Choose the correct answer.

- 1) The government _____ the whole town evacuated yesterday.
a) has b) have c) had d) having
- 2) I _____ the brakes checked three times a year.
a) having b) has c) had d) have
- 3) I _____ my hard drive changed for a bigger one last week.
a) had b) having c) has d) have
- 4) Have you _____ your house double-glazed?
a) having b) have c) had d) has

5) The house is in chaos. We're _____ a new kitchen put in at the moment.

a) have b) had c) having d) has

6) Your cat's coughing. You need to _____ him treated for parasites.

a) having b) has c) had d) have

7) Anne _____ her hair done every Friday afternoon.

a) had b) having c) has d) have

8) Have you _____ that poster I bought you framed yet?

a) having b) has c) had d) have

5.9. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction It is the construction in which a participle stands in predicate relation to a noun in the Common Case or a pronoun in the Nominative Casa.

The noun (pronoun) is not the subject of a sentence. All forms of participles are used.

The construction can be an adverbial modifier:

- of time: e.g. This duty completed, he had three months' leave;

- of cause: e.g. It being now pretty late, we took our candles and went upstairs;

- of attendant circumstances: e.g. He turned and went, we, as before, following him;

- of condition in the meaning of permitting and failing: e.g. Weather permitting, we'll start tomorrow. The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction It may be introduced by the preposition with. In most cases it is used in the function of an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances: e.g. The girl sat quite silent, with her eyes fixed on the ground.

Exercise 1. Point out Participial Constructions. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I took a step, my eyes widening. 2. When the meal was ready the girls came in, Maertge joining Tanneke in the cooking kitchen while the others sat down in the great hall. 3. Tanneke grinned, her pocked face growing even wider. 4. She was tying a string of pearls around her neck, holding the ribbons up, her hands suspended in the air. 5. The kite above our heads was shaped like a fish with a long tail, the wind making it look as if it were swimming through the air, with seagulls wheeling around it. 6. As I smiled I saw Agnes hovering near us, her eyes fixed on Maertge. 7. When I was done I stood in front of the box, arms crossed, moving around to study it. 8. He stood up at last and pulled the robe from his head, his hair ruffled. 9. —Thank you, sir. I quickly gathered my cleaning things and left, the door clicking shut behind me. 10. It was busy with housewives and maids choosing, bartering and buying for their families, and men carrying carcasses back and forth. 11. It was cool and dim inside, the smooth round pillars reaching up, the ceiling so high above me it could almost be the sky. 12. I picked the quill up, my hand trembling and making the feather shake, and placed my hands as I had remembered hers. 13. —No, sir. I swallowed and gazed at the tiled floor. Stupid girl, I thought, my jaw tightening. 14. Pieter did not follow, but continued to stand

with his arms crossed. 15. It was a breezy day, with clouds disappearing behind the New Church tower. 16. It was peaceful then, with the light coming in through the window. 17. A lot of these Mother's Days and other things are just purely commercial, Kate said with her brow darkening. 18. The cat confronted the burglar, with its back arched and teeth bared. 19. I thought you were dead, Don. I wept over you everywhere that you would never see this lovely autumn with the leaves changing, with the sun coming through the trees.

Exercise 2. Revise –ing/-ed adjectives and complete the sentences:

1. The exam instructions were very complicating and the students felt totally _____ (confused; confusing) 2. I don't like horror films at all - in fact, I find them really _____ (frightened; frightening) 3. Would you be _____ in coming to the theatre this evening? I have a spare ticket. (interested; interesting) 4. I wish you would fix that dripping tap? It's getting on my nerves - it's really _____ (irritated; irritating) 5. I didn't expect to see David at the party. I was really _____ to see him there. (surprised; surprising) 6. He's just lost his job and is feeling a bit _____. Let's go and cheer him up. (depressed; depressing) 7. I find it very _____ listening to music after a hard day's work. (relaxing; relaxed) 8. Sally said the book was really good but I was completely _____ with it. (boring; bored) 9. I get really _____ when people throw rubbish in the streets. It makes me furious. (annoyed; annoying) 10. If I had done what he did, I'd feel really _____ (embarrassed; embarrassing) 11. The house hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really _____ (disgusting; disgusted)

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Музика голосно звучала, а дівчинка тихо спала на своєму ліжку. 2. Батько був дуже заклопотаний, тому діти робили, що хотіли. 3. Усі сувеніри на згадку у крамниці були дорогі, і нам не вистачило грошей. 4. Картини висіли всюди, і будинок був схожий на музей. 5. Якщо дозволить час, ми завітаємо до тебе завтра. 6. Тисячі людей прагнули відвідати концерт Мадонни, і вона була змушена організувати ще один концерт. 7. Оскільки надворі йшов сильний дощ, ми вирішили переглянути старі альбоми. 8. Вона мовчки йшла вулицею, а по обличчі текли сльози. 9. Оскільки було дуже пізно, ми змушені були поспішати. 10. Вдома не було хліба, і мені довелося піти у хлібний магазин. 11. Оскільки запитання було складне, я змушений був подумати деякий час.

Exercise 4. Translate what is given in brackets using the Participle II.

State the functions. 1. (загублений) in the world of imagination, I forgot my sad, lonely existence for a while. 2. The shoes (загублені) on the beach were her favourites. 3 He looked (дуже здивованим) by her (несподіваним візитом). 4. "Gone with the wind" is a fascinating and (незабутня) book. 5. They were (розчаровані) with the meal and complained to the manager. 6. The girl went to the party (яку супроводжував) by her boyfriend. 7. (занурений у свої думки) he didn't notice my coming. 8. She stared at the countryside (неначе зачарована) by this picturesque view. 9. The dress was still beautiful though (дуже зношене). 10.

These are the themes (які зазвичай обговорюються) in this programme. 11. The film (вперше показаний) on TV produced a deep impression. 12. She grew (усе більше схвилюваною) listening to that story. 13. He lay there with his eyes (закриті). 14. Meditatively he took from his pocket a neatly (складене) letter which he opened and reread. 15. Ferry found the (скомкану) note with the phone number on it, which Grace had left.

REVISION

Exercise 1. Choose the correct variant:

1. He seemed _____ all about influenza and said _____ was nothing _____ about.
 - a) to know, it, to worry b) to be knowing, there, worrying c) to know, there, to worry d) to have known, it, to have been worried
2. She put down her book _____ me _____ and _____ me _____ took her workbasket and sat into one of the old-fashioned armchair.
 - a) to see, coming in, have welcomed, as usually b) having seen, to come in, welcoming, usually c) on seeing, come in, having welcomed, as usual d) after seeing, having come in, to welcome, in a usual way
3. I don't object _____ there, but I don't want _____ alone.
 - a) to your living, you living b) you to live, your living c) your living, you to live d) to your living, you to live
4. I remember _____ that hill in twilight. An age seemed _____ since the day that brought me first to London.
 - a) descending, to have elapsed b) to have descended, to have elapsed c) to descend, to elapse d) being descended, to be elapsed
5. He stood invisible at the top of the stairs _____ Irene _____ the letters _____ by the _____ post.
 - a) to watch, to sort, bringing, latest b) watching, sorting, brought, last c) having watched, sorting, having brought, latest d) being watched, having sorted, to have been brought, last
6. On his way home Andrew could not help _____ what _____ charming fellow Ivory had turned out _____.
 - a) to reflect, a, to be b) being reflected, the, have been c) reflecting, the, be d) reflecting, a, to be
7. I wouldn't like _____ because I'm afraid _____.
 - a) drive fast, crashing b) to drive fast, of crashing c) driving fastly, to crash d) to be driven faster, to be crashed
8. _____ paper is said _____ by _____ Chinese.
 - a) ____, to have been invented, the b) the, to have been invented, __ c) ____, to have invented, __ d) the, to be invented, the
9. There is no point _____ to him. He is _____ last man in the world _____ by any such circumstances.
 - a) to speak, the, to trouble b) to speak, ____, being troubled c) speaking, a, be troubled d) in speaking, the, to be troubled
10. It's high time you _____ like that. He is fond _____ fun of everybody.
 - a) get used to him to behave, to make b) used to his behaving, about making c) got used to his behaving, of making d) used to behave, to make

11. He felt _____ something from him and demanded _____ truth. He wasn't worth _____ lie.

a) them to hide, to tell, the, telling, the b) them hiding, they will tell, a, to tell, a c) they were hiding, being told, the, telling, a d) they hide, telling, a, telling, the

12. _____ words about the author himself, the lecturer went on _____ of his works.

a) after saying, a few, to speak b) saying, few, to speak c) having said, few, speaking d) to have said, a few, speaking

13. She was looking forward to _____ the leading part _____ that she was greatly _____ at not even _____ it.

a) giving, playing, disappointing, being offered b) to be given, to play, disappointed, to be offered c) being given, to play, disappointed, being offered d) give, playing, disappointed, offering

14. Did you remember _____ the parcel I gave you? —Yes, I remember _____ it a week ago.

a) to post, posting b) to post, to post c) posting, to post d) posting, posting

15. You _____ go and check everything by yourself unless you _____ it.

a) would better, want him to do it b) had rather, don't want his doing c) had better, want him to do it d) would rather, don't want him to do

16. The accused men _____ near the bank during the robbery. It's no use _____ the case without direct _____.

a) deny being somewhere, investigating, evidence b) denies to be anywhere, to investigate, evidences c) deny being anywhere, investigating, evidence d) denies to be somewhere to investigate, evidences

17. You _____ your children _____ their own way in the end.

a) are to let, to go b) have letting, going c) have to let, go d) are to let, gone

18. I suggest _____ as soon as possible. I _____ before sunset.

a) us to start, would rather to come b) our starting, had rather come c) us starting, would prefer to come d) our starting, would rather come

19. I am afraid _____ to him. What if he really has the power to stop _____ there, and means _____ them against me?

a) to speak, me go, to turn b) of speaking, my going, turning c) to speak, my going, to turn d) speaking, me going, to turn

20. He's always regretted _____ school so young. He has not got enough qualifications and education. Unfortunately, he often receives letters _____ with "Dear sir, we regret _____ you that your application was turned down."

a) leaving, beginning, to inform b) to leave, to begin, to inform c) leaving, beginning, informing d) to leave, to begin, informing

Exercise 2. Translate into English. Comment on the syntactical function of the Participle I or the Participle II. 1. Ось теми, які зазвичай обговорюються на семінарах з мовознавства. 2. Це тема доповіді, що обговорювався на минулому семінарі. 3. Ось мої записи лекцій, прочитаних в минулому році. 4. Як вам подобається книга, яку зараз обговорюють? 5. Гра, яку виграла ця команда, була ключовою грою чемпіонату. 6. Я добре пам'ятаю його слова, сказані на відкритті конференції. 7. Це був вірш,

написаний за рік до смерті поета. 8. Ці вірші були схожі на все вірші, які пишуть підлітки. 9. Якщо ми порівняємо будинки, які будували п'ять років тому, і дома, які будують тепер, ми побачимо значні зміни. 10. У будинку, який будується навпроти нас, буде великий магазин. 11. Вона показала мені його лист, написаний в 1941 році. 12. Дуже цікаво читати деякі твори, написані дітьми. 13. Твори, які пишуть сучасні діти, відрізняються від тих, які писали діти 50-х років. 14. Як тобі подобаються фасони, які тепер носять? 15. Фільм, показаний в перший день фестивалю, справив гарне враження. 16. Фільм, який буде показаний тут завтра, одна з перших картин цього режисера.

Exercise 3. Translate into English using the pattern to do oneself done. 1. Вона домоглася загальної поваги. 2. З деяким подивом вона почула, що про неї говорять. 3. Ви побачите, що вас забули. 4. Я зроблю так, що мене будуть пам'ятати. 5. Він хотів, щоб його забули. 6. Він почув, як про нього згадали. 7. Вона хотіла, щоб про неї пам'ятали. 8. Ви тільки досягнете того, що вас будуть боятися. 9. Якщо ви хочете, щоб вас поважали, не виходьте з себе через дрібниці. 10. Їй не хотілося, щоб її повели до зубного лікаря. 11. Їм дуже хотілося, щоб вона заспокоїлася.

Exercise 4. Open the brackets. Use the infinitives or the gerunds in the appropriate forms. Add prepositions where necessary. 1. We felt the ground (to rock and tremble) under our feet. 2. There is no (to reason) with her now. 3. The poems are believed (to write) by a young woman. 4. How can I do it without somebody (to notice) me and (to begin) to ask questions? 5. She is not likely (to forget) her promise. 6. The poet is known (to live) in Odessa at the time. 7. Don't make the mistake (to underestimate) the opponent. 8. Can I learn to speak better (to listen) to records? 9. He is far too lazy (to do) it himself. 10. Are you really thinking (to give up) this job? 11. So much depends (he to be) the right man for the job. 12. I see no harm (he to play football). 13. I must apologize (to be) so late. 14. Have you ever heard (he to say) anything of the kind? 15. They don't seem (to understand) the explanation, they are still making the same mistake. 16. It has just started (to rain) heavily. 17. They couldn't but (to agree). 18. I don't mind (to invite) him too. 19. She insisted (to tell) the truth. 20. We are sorry (to hear) the bad news. 21. The children are anxious (to go) to the circus. 22. He denied (to steal) the money. 23. Please stop (to ask) me questions! 24. He is fond (to ski) and (to skate) in winter.

Exercise 5. Translate into English using the infinitives or the gerunds. 1. Навряд чи вона повернеться. 2. Мені не хочеться про це говорити. 3. Словам вашим важко повірити. 4. Він не дав мені слова сказати. 5. Марно пояснювати їй це. 6. Ніхто не наполягав, щоб вона залишилася. 7. Ви довели її до сліз. 8. Виявилось, що він поїхав. 9. Хто бачив його останнім? 10. Мені не подобається думка, що вона залишиться одна в таборі. 11. Факти не сховаєш. 12. Чи варто про це говорити? 13. Вона не могла не домогтися успіху. 14. Ні до чого писати їй про це. 15. Вимий руки, перш ніж їсти. 16. Спасибі, що допомогли мені. 17. У тебе є що-небудь почитати? 18. Мені не хочеться втручатися. 19. Не такий він чоловік, щоб дозволити кому-небудь

ображати себе. 20. Все виявилось набагато простіше, ніж ми думали. 21. Він перший вийшов з себе. 22. У тебе дивний спосіб допомагати людям. 23. Я можу встигнути на поїзд, якщо буду бігти всю дорогу. 24. Я не могла не погодитися. 25. Будьте ласкаві, говоріть повільніше.

Exercise 6. Translate into English using the participles. Comment on the functions 1. Ми весь день бродили по місту і поїхали пізно ввечері. 2. Зробивши уроки, він включив телевізор. 3. Читаючи книги англійською, виписуйте нові слова. 4. Він показав мені ручку, куплену в Лондоні. 5. Спортсмени, які зайняли перші десять місць, будуть виступати в другій половині змагання. 6. Гавкаючи собаки не кусаються. 7. Він боявся собаки, яка гавкала. 8. Коли він розповів все, йому стало легше. 9. Методи, що застосовувалися в цій операції, були спочатку випробувані на тваринах. 10. Він говорив про методи, що застосовуються в хірургії. 11. Лікарі, які користуються цим методом, досягають гарних результатів. 12. Лікар, який користувався цим методом, зробив цікаву доповідь. 13. Це був будинок, побудований в минулому столітті. 14. Намагаючись привернути мою увагу, він постукав по столу. 15. Коли ми звернули увагу на це питання, ми зрозуміли, як це важливо. 16. Він підписав лист і віддав його секретареві. 17. Вона не знала, що сказати, і не говорила нічого. 18. Говорячи на цю тему, він завжди хвилюється. 19. Коли він перечитував лист, він знайшов його досить переконливим. 20. Перечитуючи лист, він знайшов в ньому помилку.

Exercise 7. Translate into English using the participles. Comment on the functions 1. Він говорив голосно, щоб його було чути. 2. Він почув, як назвали його ім'я. 3. Мені це зробили за три дні. 4. Я доб'юся, що все буде залагоджено. 5. Я б хотіла, щоб цю пісню записали на плівку. 6. Я ніколи не бачила, як це роблять. 7. Вона знайшла їх, граючих у саду. 8. Мамі не подобалося, що вона палить. 9. Вона не очікувала, що що-небудь буде зроблено. 10. Я не хочу, щоб мої справи обговорювали. 11. Ви хочете, щоб лист був написаний сьогодні ж? 12. Чи можеш ти її собі уявити в брюках і гумових чоботях? 13. Пошиють мені тут костюм за тиждень? 14. Ми знайшли його сильно засмученим. 15. Ми чули, як сигнал повторився. 16. Я відчув, що мене штовхають до краю платформи. 17. Лікар не дозволив його допитувати. 18. Я знаю, що він має рацію. 19. Хто бачив, як це сталося? 20. За кілька днів вона домоглася того, що він став вести себе цілком добре.

Exercise 8. Open the brackets. Use the necessary forms of the participle or the infinitive 1. He did not wish himself (to criticize). 2. How he got himself (to elect) is a mystery. 3. He ordered the garage door (to lock and to seal). 4. Nobody expected any measures (to take). 5. How can I make myself (to hear) in this uproar? 6. And I want everything (to deliver) at my hotel. 7. Nobody heard the door (to open). 8. When do you want the letters (to type)? 9. I had the dress (to copy) and sent the original back. 10. How could you leave that child (to cry) in the darkness? 11. There were so many people there and nobody saw it (to do). 12. They found him (to wander) in the park. 13. They found the lock (to break) and the man (to go). 14. I could see her (to stand) in the doorway (to say) good-bye. 15. I am so happy (to listen) to the concert of my favourite singer now. 16. The

manuscript appears (to write) in Latin. 17. She seems (to read) my mind. 18. This material could (to explain) very easily. 19. The rain seems (to stop). 20. Ann is proud (to be) the top student in her group. 21. (to live) in that country all his life, he knew it very well. 22. (to check) with great care, the composition didn't contain any errors. 23. (to tell) of his arrival, I went to see him. 24. The noise in the entrance hall continued, and more vehicles could be heard (to arrive) at the door.

Exercise 9. Translate into English using infinitives, gerunds, participles or complexes with them. State the functions. 1. Відійти (to quit) означає програти. 2. Кращий спосіб втратити вагу - змінити звички в їжі (eating habits). 3. Є три способи зробити це. 4. Якщо я передумаю, то ти перший дізнаєшся про це. 5. Вона ніколи не може прийти до фінішу першою. 6. Я в цей час випадково опинився в госпіталі. 7. Він вирушив на кухню, щоб приготувати бутерброди. 8. У мене є визнання, яке я повинен зробити. 9. Іноді він нестерпний. Він хоче все робити по-своєму. 10. А ще що-небудь потрібно зробити? 11. Бессі увірвалася в кімнату, щоб повідомити, що мене чекає відвідувач. 12. Йому довелося підвищити голос, щоб бути почутим. 13. Коли я йшов додому, я зупинився, щоб купити газету. 14. Щоб виграти змагання, Полу потрібна удача. 15. Для неї палити - це піднімати самоповагу. 16. Вона любить, коли нею захоплюються, фотографують, пишуть про неї в газетах. 17. Припускають, що він зробив це з ревнощів. 18. Відомо, що він глава фірми протягом останніх десяти років. 19. Їх проінформують, в який час їхати. 20. Вони не знали, як її заспокоїти. 21. Нам краще поквапитися, щоб не пропустити потяг. 22. Гучний стукіт дверей змусив його здригнутися. 23. Це було єдине, що він міг зробити. 24. Чи бачили, як таксі чекало когось біля під'їзду. 25. Вони були дуже добре знайомі. 26. Коли до неї звернулися, вона показала нам найкоротший шлях до вокзалу.

INDIVIDUAL WORK

Exercise 1. Translate into English.

1. Коли я прийду о 3 годині, ти вже довго будеш готуватися до виступу на занятті? 2. Карина тільки глянула на свою подругу і зрозуміла, що вона не плакала, а сміялася над жартом. 3. Хіба секретарі не обдзвонити всіх клієнтів фірми до понеділка? 4. Дівчина співала в церковному хорі під час служби, але коли вона побачила юнака, вона замовкла. 5. Він вважає, що дана проблема не має значного впливу на поведінку людини. 6. Папа повернувся ввечері додому втомлений і ліг на диван дивитися телевізор. 7. Літак вже здійснив посадку на той час, як група волонтерів прибула у пункт зустрічі? 8. Що ти прийняв за записку? Той клаптик паперу на підлозі? 9. Майк буде в плаванні в морі довше, ніж де-небудь ще до 2017 року? 10. Чи писали студенти контрольну роботу, коли викладач вийшов з кабінету, щоб поговорити по телефону? 11. Добиратися до моєї роботи дуже далеко. Мій друг підвезе тебе. 12. Маша і Даша сиділи біля кабінету директора з самого ранку і до тих пір, поки директор не викликав їх на допит? 13. На кафедрі обговорять останні новини, а потім розкажуть студентам. 14. Літак був на злітній смузі, значить, саме зараз він злітає. 15. Костя встає о 6 годині ранку і снідає, збирає речі і їде в інститут. 16. Маша вчора купила нову сукню,

оскільки порвала свою стару під час катання на велосипеді. 17. Ліза насолоджується затишною атмосферою цього ресторану. 18. Вона говорить російською та українською. 19. Діти в дитячому саду грали в пісочниці дві години. 20. Хлопчаки нічим не займалися, а лише грали в футбол і базикали про дрібниці. 21. Легені Джона були темні і запалені, хоча він не палив і не сидів на протязі. 22. На лекції викладач оголосив, що інтерес студентів до семінарських занять зростає. 23. Саманта писала вірші ввечерами два рази на тиждень, підписуючи їх своїми ініціалами. 24. В той самий момент, мій кузен Джим, який до цього сидів у кутку і не розмовляв ні з ким, голосно закричав. 25. Вони плавали в морі? - Ні, вони весь день засмагали. 26. Твої друзі вже бачили фотографії, які ти зробив для презентації своєї нової книги? 27. Я піду в магазин за морозивом пізніше. Тобі потрібно що-небудь купити? 28. Хто говорив по телефону? 29. Хоча його відсутність на парі і була підозріло довгою, викладач не питав, чим він займався в коридорі. 30. На що ти дивишся? 31. Як довго ти шукаєш цю книгу? 32. Мій начальник вийде на роботу через кілька робочих днів. 33. Я напишу есе до другої години. 34. Моя група не танцювала, коли я прийшов на репетицію. 35. Який капелюшок ти купила перед тим, як дізналася, що почався розпродаж всіх колекцій в цьому відділі магазину? 36. Що Костя набрав вчора на комп'ютері о 2 годині ночі? Він друкував відгук про нову спортивну машину. 37. О п'ятій годині Джим буде вести машину протягом трьох часів. 38. Перш ніж кинутися до сцени, фанати юрмилися біля входу в концертний зал. 39. Твій начальник спробував тебе на міцність або просто хотів знайти привід для звільнення? 40. Минулого місяця моя мама кожен день працювала в саду. 41. Маші не подобається спілкування в цій компанії, вона хоче піти додому. 42. Вона вчора ввечері ходила гуляти в парк зі своєю собакою. 43. Моя стара господиня квартири завжди була доброю і чуйною по відношенню до мене. 44. Я думаю, що більшість питань на цій конференції залишаться без відповідей. 45. Того літа я працювала вихователем в дитячому літньому таборі на морі. 46. Коли мій друг заглянув в мою кімнату, я пекла пиріг цілих дві години. 47. Моя сестра не грає з подругою в теніс на кожному тренуванні. 48. Хлопчики грали в футбол пізно ввечері. 49. Скоро дні стануть більш сонячними, а ночі похолодішими. 50. Тренер вважає, що його команда легко виграє це змагання. 51. Останнім часом вона читала багато книг і дивилася фільми, зняті за ним. 52. Моя мама не спить. Ти можеш зайти до мене в гості. 53. Сара не ходила по селу, вона вважала за краще сидіти вдома. 54. Маша знає свого кузена всього кілька місяців. 55. Я випадково визирнув на вулицю. Сяло сонце і дзюрчали струмочки. 56. Карина вже дуже довго перебуває в тому продуктовому магазині. 57. Всі студенти сподівалися, що викладач незабаром вийде з лікарняного. 58. Останнім часом вона читала багато книг і дивилася фільми, зняті за ним. 59. Діма завжди встає так рано вранці? У скільки він лягає спати? 60. Крістіна, напевно, думає, що Анна помиляється. 61. Безіл не пише портрет Доріана в даний момент, він п'є чай з лордом Генрі. 62. Костя не їздив в тур по Європі разом зі своєю групою в минулому році. 63. О котрій приходиться твоя електричка по п'ятницях? 64. Його друг був

головним редактором популярного журналу в цьому місті. 65. Глава району сподівається, що в наступних виборах візьмуть участь всі молоді люди. 66. Це послання не буде доставлено адресату. 67. Нарада директорату не буде тривати дуже довго. 68. Моя нова куртка зараз не в хімчистці, вона знаходиться в ательє. 69. Вони обидва хотіли прожити все життя пліч-о-пліч. 70. Він п'є протягом всього свого життя. 71. До встановленого терміну завод випустив потрібну кількість коробок цукерок відповідно до тижневого плану. 72. На тому тижні твій тато звільнився, він працював на старому заводі. 73. Вибачте, я запізнився. Я готувався відповідати на семінарі. Ви не проти? 74. Ельза ходить до своєї бабусі кожен день. Бабуся завжди дає їй гостинця з собою. 75. Хіба твій тато зараз не працює? 76. Коли бабуся була молодшою, вона ходила в магазин самостійно. 77. Ця будівля великого театру не була побудована до початку святкування ювілею міста. 78. Мама була виснажена ввечері. Вона цілий день працювала в саду, садила квіти і інші рослини. 79. Так як лорд Генрі не дочекався Доріана в вітальні, він залишив йому записку на столі в бібліотеці. 80. Твоя сестра вже пришила гудзик до того сукні, тобі залишилося тільки надіти його. 81. Якщо твій тато працює на новому заводі, йому потрібно використовувати свої сили по максимуму. 82. Хіба вона не збиралася купити цей прекрасний капелюшок останні півгодини? 83. З ким розмовляв викладач, коли студенти виконували семінарські питання для підготовки до заліку на лекції? 84. Мама вже приготувала смачну вечерю, діти сіли за стіл і чекали приходу тата. 85. Клара не консультувалася, з фахівцями з приводу своєї хвороби. 86. Не встигла Карина взяти собі питання на семінар, як Маша роздала інші десять питань. 87. Марина нікому більше не розповідала про те, що з нею трапилося в парку того вечора. 88. На щастя, вона не буде розмовляти з ним, поки він не вибачиться. 89. Іноземці приїхали на навчання кілька років тому. У наступні вихідні буде два роки, як вони в Україні. 90. Намагайся зрозуміти загальний зміст того, що бачите на екрані проектора. 91. В наступному році їй виповниться двадцять років. 92. Марк такий брудний. Він грав в футбол на вулиці? 93. Чи довелося Кості зіткнутися з перешкодами на шляху до досягнення поставленої мети? 94. Зак не скаржиться з приводу своєї оцінки, чи не так? 95. Якщо вона написала одне есе, їй буде не складно написати ще парочку. 96. Діти грали в саду, поки мама готувала вечерю і мила посуд. 97. Кіт не кличе на допомогу, хоча на його шляху стоїть величезний злий собака. 98. Новий фільм цього знаменитого режисера вийде в прокат на той час. 99. Маша ніколи не пробачить Анну за те, що вона стала зустрічатися з її колишнім хлопцем. 100. Моя кузина Ганна ніколи раніше не була за кордоном, вона навіть не була в іншому місті. 101. Клара не консультувалася, з фахівцями з приводу своєї хвороби. 102. Кондуктор не помітила мене в автобусі, і мені не довелося платити за проїзд. 103. Коли Христина була підлітком, вона відвідувала багато гуртків: і малювання, і танці, і хор. 104. Вибачте, я запізнився. Я готувався відповідати на семінарі. Ви не проти? 105. На щастя, вона не буде розмовляти з ним, поки він не вибачиться. 106. Вчителька дасть учням знати про майбутні контрольні та перевірочні роботи. 107. Матч з баскетболу

закінчиться о п'ятій годині завтра. 108. Що твоя мама приготує на вечерю на п'яту годину завтра? 109. Студенти здадуть свої іспити. 110. Коли Маша закінчить цей курс, вона буде вчити французьку мову вже протягом чотирьох років. 111. Мама вважає, що наша сім'я, можливо, проведе кілька місяців за кордоном. 112. У моїх батьків ювілей. Завтра вони будуть одружені вже 30 років. 113. Крістіна вечеряла зі своїм другом по інституту або з колегою по новій роботі? 114. Садівник не буде садити рослини в саду (з якихось міркувань). 115. Міша не повертався додому з 7 до 8, оскільки його затримали на роботі. 116. Мама не купить дитині цей планшет, він занадто складний для малюка. 117. Маша прийшла за Анною, але, на жаль, її не було вдома. 118. Молодша сестра ще не приготувала вечерю, не накрила на стіл і не прибрала в своїй кімнаті. 119. Вона дивиться телевізор вечорами, тому що їй лінь готуватися до семінарів або практичних занять в інституті. 120. До того часу як він з'явиться на робочому місці, його секретар буде працювати багато годин. 121. Твоя тітка не переїхала в нову квартиру 10 років тому. 122. Ймовірно, Маша не знає, що її подруга зустрічається з її колишнім хлопцем. 123. Будівельники не зробили нічого, щоб будівля не руйнувалася. 124. З яких пір твої батьки живуть окремо в іншому місті? 125. Барбара вже написала відгук з приводу цієї статті. 126. Твій брат не сказав, що хоче дізнатися від мене. 127. Якщо ви уважно подивилися першу половину фільму, ви зможете зрозуміти, про що викладач вас питає. 128. Костя вже чекатиме свою дівчину в фойє театру протягом 1.15 години, коли вона з'явиться. 129. Ти це обдумав? 130. Вашим викладачам подобається ця лекція з першокурсниками? 131. Хіба ти не збираєшся вчити англійську мову після всупу в наступному році? 132. Якби він і далі просувався по обраному шляху, він би давно прийшов до своєї мети. 133. Минулого місяця моя мама кожен день працювала в саду. 134. Боб мив свою нову червону машину, коли його друг прибіг з сумними новинами. 135. Майк запросив багато людей або тільки обраних друзів на свою вечірку по закінченню навчального року? 136. Я не почну писати курсову роботу, поки науковий керівник не складе список літератури. 137. Чому він ходить до церкви щонеділі? 138. Ти тільки що читав його нову книгу? 139. Крістіна ніколи раніше не бачила такого красивого парубка. 140. Мама не буде займатися цим. 141. Хто змусив Анну написати цю жахливу розповідь, яку довелося спалити потім? 142. Бабуся все їздить на дачу і милується своєю розсадою в цьому році. 143. Наступного літа буде десять років, як Анна живе в Америці. 144. Кіра не знає мого друга Майка в обличчя. 145. До того часу, як Кіра нафарбується, її подружки вже підуть з клубу. 146. Ми не чули про приїзд іноземного лектора в наш інститут. 147. Що робить Сара? - Вона готує смачну вечерю: легкий салат, м'ясну страву і тірамісу на десерт. 148. Текст наукової статті буде переведений до наступного заняття з англійської мови. 149. Він буде їсти замовлені суши вже 20 хвилин до того часу, як ти приготуєш нормальний обід. 150. Іноземці приїхали на навчання кілька років тому. У наступні вихідні буде два роки, як вони в Лондоні. 151. Мене переслідував маніяк під час вчорашньої прогулянки в парку. 152. Кіт кричить вже більше години, він

хоче їсти. 153. Маша не прийшла вчора на заняття з причини поганого самопочуття.

Exercises 2. Make up statements that are not certain: 1. She is at home now_____ 2. He will be at home at 6_____ 3. She leaves at midnight_____ 4. She left yesterday_____ 5. He is working today_____ 6. He has been working all day_____ 7. They will have finished the project by then_____

Exercise 3. Express deduction based on evidence. Use can't / must / should
1. I think it has been raining_____ 2. It looks like she has missed the train_____ 3. I don't think she is the child's mother_____ 4. Evidently, he is not on the train_____ 5. I don't think she has phoned her parents_____ 6. The exam is easy, I'm sure you will pass it_____ 7. Obviously, she is not his wife_____ 8. I think he got lost and now is looking for us_____ 9. I think she has forgotten about our meeting, it's too late_____ 10. Call me tonight, I think I will be at home_____

Exercise 3 Translate the sentences: 1. Не може бути, щоб вона була німкеня. Вона не розмовляє німецькою. 2. Напевно, вони загубили щось по дорозі. 3. Людина не може так довго не спати. Це неправда! 4. Очевидно, вона впала і тепер не може йти. 5. Я точно прийду на виставу. 6. Напевно, вони поїдуть завтра ввечері. 7. Хіба можливо, щоб ви не зустрічалися раніше? 8. Не може бути, щоб ти не бачила цей фільм. Його уже всі бачили. 9. Швидше за все, вікно розбили злодії. 10. Можливо, він уже надіслав роботу, я не впевнена. 11. Вони могли вже це перевірити, я думаю. 12. Не вмикай радіо. Може, вона спить.

Exercise 4. Insert should / ought to / had better / need to / have to / must to express advisability – necessity: 1. It's advisable that you wear a hat outside_____ 2. It is absolutely important that you attend this course_____ 3. It will be necessary to follow the instructions_____ 4. It's your duty to help your relatives_____ 5. I warn you not to ignore the symptoms_____ 6. It is necessary that you make enquiries_____ 7. I strongly advise you to tell everything to your parents_____

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences to express necessity or deduction: 1. He knows a lot about our history. He_____ history in the past. 2. You hadn't eaten for hours. You _____ hungry. 3. She _____ at work till 5, so she _____ at home now, it's only 4 p.m. 4. He felt bad and _____ the doctor. 5. She is very qualified. You _____ worry. 6. The road is closed off. Something _____. 7. The alarm went off and we _____ out of the building. 8. It was a day off, so I _____ to work. 9. I _____ to work today, but nobody warned me, so I came. 10. You _____ waiting long, I'm only 5 minutes late.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences to express past advisability or necessity: 1. You _____ (warn) him that you were not coming. 2. We

_____ (print out) the text, everyone had it already. 3. You _____ (print out) the text. No one had it. 4. I _____ (come) so early. The train left only at 5 p.m., so I _____ (wait). Next time I won't. 5. You _____ (say) hello, when you saw him. Why didn't you?

Exercise 7. Translate the sentences: 1. Не потрібно було так голосно кричати, я все добре почула. 2. Тобі обов'язково слід прочитати книги цього автора. 3. Навряд чи мені треба тобі це пояснювати. 4. Тобі обов'язково треба було це їй казати? 5. Йому довелося нести речі самому. 6. Вона мусила зробити вибір сама. Тобі не слід було втручатися. 7. Нам довелося прийти раніше, щоб допомогти їй з коробками. 8. Тобі слід бути уважнішим, коли переходиш дорогу. 9. Ніколи не треба нав'язувати свою думку комусь. 10. Ми мали прийти раніше, вибач. 11. Напевно вони вже чули цю загадку, тому знали відповідь. 12. Не раджу тобі приймати рішення, не подумавши двічі. 13. Їй варто частіше зустрічатися з друзями. 14. Не може бути, щоб він їй про це не сказав! 15. Ти не мусиш так часто приходити. 16. Вона змушена була пояснити правила ще раз. 17. Не було потреби пересилати ті фото, він уже їх має. 18. Краще б він не питав про це. Вона може засмутитися. 19. Вона може бути доволі різкою часом. Краще не говори зайвого. 20. Не було потреби йти туди так рано, тому він поспав довше.

Exercise 8. Make requests for permission and supply the answers: 1. You are visiting a close friend and you want to borrow his car _____. 2. You are at a party given by people you hardly know. You want to see their garden _____. 3. You are visiting your distant relatives and want to use their library _____. 4. You are in an office and need to make a phone call _____. 5. You are in a hotel and need to talk to the administrator _____.

Exercise 9. Write sentences to express prohibition: 1. It is not advisable that you stay up so late _____. 2. It is not allowed to smoke inside _____. 3. I do not allow the strangers to use my phone _____. 4. According to the instructions he is not allowed to move these things _____. 5. I forbid you to speak to your parents like that! _____.

Exercise 10. Translate the sentences: 1. Хай робить, як знає. 2. Вибачте, скажіть, будь ласка, котра година? 3. Чи міг би я скористатися Вашим телефоном? 4. Ти не отримаєш морозиво, доки не вивчиш вірш. 5. Не можна залишати дім незамкненим. 6. Нам не дозволяли повертатися додому пізно, коли були малими. 7. Можна, я візьму твій записник? 8. Не слід пропускати заняття. 9. Вам не можна туди заходити, поки триває екзамен. 10. Не можна нікому брати мої речі! 11. Туди не можна їхати – там закрита дорога. 12. Не слід запізнюватися. 13. Чи міг би я попросити Вас про послугу? 14. Чи можна скористатися Вашою ручкою?

Exercise 11. Rewrite the sentences to express criticism / reproach / disapproval: 1. Don't be so rude _____. 2. I think you are too absent-minded _____. 3. I don't think you are right when you forget _____.

about the details _____ 4. It was your duty to answer the calls. Why didn't you? _____ 5. Is it possible that you be more attentive? _____ 6. It would be better if you closed the door every time you leave _____ 7. Why didn't you warn everyone about her arrival? _____ 8. It was wrong of you to speak like that with the boss _____ 9. I think you were able to change the situation, but you didn't _____ 10. You ate too much, that's why you are sick _____ 11. It would have been much better if you hadn't quit _____ 12. He is boastful sometimes. It's annoying _____

Exercise 12. Translate the sentences: 1. Тобі слід було уважніше переходити дорогу. 2. Як він посмів так на неї кричати? 3. Не смій забувати добро, зроблене тобі! 4. Я міг би і здогадатися, що ти забудеш про обіцянку. 5. Якщо не допомагаєш, то могла б принаймні не критикувати. 6. Ти міг би час від часу прибирати свою кімнату. 7. Не слід було так хвилюватися через дрібниці. 8. Вона часом дуже набридлива, коли надто багато запитує. 9. Він мав можливість все виправити! 10. Ти могла запобігти цьому!

Exercise 13. Rewrite the sentences with will / won't / would / wouldn't to express willingness / refusal: 1. My son refused to do the shopping _____ 2. Don't you mind waiting for a few minutes, please? _____ 3. My mom always insisted on telling the truth _____ 4. She is always unwilling to speak about herself _____ 5. Every time I was in a hurry my car refused to start _____ 6. He disagreed to carry those heavy boxes _____ 7. She never asks for help when she is in trouble _____ 8. I hope you don't mind being asked a few questions _____ 9. I offered her some coffee, but she refused to drink it _____ 10. I will be happy to book the tickets for you _____

Exercise 14. Translate the sentences: 1. Коли ти переїжджатимеш, я допоможу тобі з речами. 2. Він завжди відмовляється їсти, коли я готую. 3. Я б не продавала цей дім, він затишний. 4. Мій брат завжди був не проти подивитися зі мною мультфільми. 5. Якби ти захотів почекати хвилю, я б знайшов це місце на карті. 6. Якщо захочеш спробувати ще раз, я тебе підтримаю. 7. Вона ніяк не хоче збирати з нами ягоди. 8. Він завжди відмовлявся, коли я пропонував свою допомогу. 9. Я б по-іншому умеблювала цю кімнату. 10. Завтра я кину палити.

Exercise 15. Complete the sentences to express offer / suggestion / request and give possible answers: 1. _____ you like some coffee? _____ 2. _____ you shut the window for me? I'm cold _____ 3. _____ get some tea for you? _____ 4. _____ borrow your pen? _____ 5. _____ bring a newspaper for you, dad? _____ 6. _____ order some pizza for us? _____ 7. _____ we go for a walk together? _____ 8. _____ like to watch this film with me? _____ 9. _____ you turn the radio off? _____ 10. _____ ask you for a favour? _____

Exercise 16. Make up offers / suggestions / requests to match the situations 1. You want your friends to join you for a meal_____ 2. You want to spend your holidays with your parents_____ 3. You want your friend to translate the sign for you_____ 4. You want the stranger in the shop to hold the door open for you_____ 5. You offer your help to a lady with a heavy suitcase_____

Exercise 17. Translate the sentences: 1. Заповніть цю анкету, будь ласка. 2. Можна я закрию двері? 3. Мені зробити нам дві кави? 4. Ти не проти почитати мені трохи? 5. Ти міг би принести мені яблуко з кухні? 6. Будь добра, вимкни телевізор. 7. Давай підемо поплавемо 8. Всім залишатися на своїх місцях! 9. Кожен має пройти медогляд перед забігом. 10. Ти точно мусиш з нами повечеряти сьогодні!

Exercise 18. Complete the sentences with the suitable form of use to / do: 1. She _____ to have grey hair, did she? 2. _____ to smoke? – Yes, I _____ 3. We never used to enjoy parties, _____ we? 4. He _____ to work here and so _____ I. 5. We often _____ to have long walks with my dad. 6. Where _____ to live?

Exercise 19. Describe people's behavior: 1. He usually lies when I ask about his family_____ 2. She always told us stories before we went to bed_____ 3. When he needed money he worked overtime_____ 4. She always leaves the door open_____ 5. He never cleans after himself_____

Exercise 20. Supply the suitable form of dare: 1. I _____ (tell) her I've just broken her favourite mug. 2. I hardly _____ (mention) this, but you still haven't paid the rent. 3. I will tell this to your mom! – Just you _____. 4. I never eat meat but I _____ (refuse). 5. I _____ (ask) her for money since I was 15.

Exercise 21. Translate the sentences: 1. Вона розповідає смішні історії щоразу, коли ми зустрічаємося. 2. Ми не наважилися перебивати директора. 3. Я усе про тебе розповім! – Тільки посміяй! 4. Раніше мені не подобалися вихідні за містом, але тепер подобаються. 5. Ану візьми того павука в руки! 6. Він ніколи не наважується говорити про свої потреби. 7. Як ти смієш просити про це знову! 8. Він ніколи не передає повідомлень. 9. Мені ніколи не подобалося вставати рано, і зараз теж не подобається. 10. Ти не любив овочі в дитинстві? 11. Колись я часто підвозив їх додому. 12. Вона постійно запізнюється, сідає спереду і починає коментувати. 13. Ми, бувало, гралися допізна, коли жили в селі. 14. Не смій мене перебивати!

Exercise 22. Translate the sentences: 1. Я вмiла плавати у віці восьми років. 2. Він зміг вибратися з кімнати через вікно, коли зламався дверний замок. 3. Вона могла заплатити кредиткою, але не захотiла. 4. Щоб організувати весiлля вони старалися якнайкраще (не могли старатися краще)! 5. Напої в великих ресторанах можуть бути доволі дорогими. 6. Хто б це міг стукати в двері о третій ночі? 7. Ти зможеш взяти цю книгу, коли я закінчу читати. 8. Тут не можна палити. 9. Неможливо вийти сухим із води. 10. Він

точно не відремонтував комп'ютер. Він не працює. 11. Краще візьми парасолю. Може падати дощ. 12. Можливо, вони знайомі, я не знаю. 13. Мабуть, вона вже купила квитки. Треба запитати в неї. 14. Не дзвони так пізно. Я, можливо, спатиму. 15. Не може бути, щоб вона була англійкою. Вона не розмовляє англійською. 16. Хіба можливо, щоб він так швидко прочитав це? 17. Не може бути, щоб вони так повелися. Я не вірю. 18. Не може бути, щоб вона ще не приїхала. Автобус давно поїхав. 19. Вибачте, чи могла б я тут залишити свої речі? 20. Не можна приносити телефони на екзамен. 21. Оскільки нам ще не було 16-ти, нам не дозволили піти на той фільм. 22. Оскільки нам не було 16-ти, ми не могли відвідувати дискотеки. 23. Не можна торкатися розетки, вона зламана! 24. Не варто питати в неї зараз, вона зайнята. 25. Не можна виходити за межі приміщення. 26. Ти мусиш приїхати вчасно. 27. Йому довелося відмовитися від ідеї їхати за кордон. 28. Я мушу скинути вагу. 29. Я думаю, всі повинні голосувати. 30. Вона не повинна працювати в суботу. 31. – Не було потреби це все приносити! – Мене не попередили. 32. Я не мусила брати парасолю. Погода була сонячна. 33. Не було потреби так кричати. Там усе одно ніхто б не почув. 34. Не варто було розповідати їй усе. 35. Тобі слід було краще підготуватися. 36. Вона могла б і не поводитися так грубо. 37. Краще б він поїв суп замість цукерок. 38. Напевно, вона спить, інакше була б онлайн. 39. То, напевно, був великий скандал! 40. Передзвони мені увечері, я, напевно, буду вдома. 41. Завтра буде тепло. 42. Я тобі допоможу! 43. Не може бути, щоб це була правда (це не може бути правдою). 44. Ти точно мусиш спробувати це морозиво! 45. Напевно, заняття відмінили, бо нікого нема. 46. Пожежники змогли вчасно приїхати. 47. Мама постійно вчила мене, як жити. 48. Машина не заводиться. 49. Ніхто щоб не озивався! 50. Давай припинимо сваритися, добре? 51. Він ніяк не хотів їсти рибу. 52. Ви маєте бути тут о сьомій. 53. Можливо, він заплатив рахунок, але я точно не знаю. 54. Ви не можете зустрітися з лікарем зараз, бо він ще зайнятий. 55. Ти мав попередити мене про те, що сталося. 56. Краще б ти не рилася в моїх речах! 57. Не смій зі мною так розмовляти! 58. Він міг відремонтувати будь-яку річ! 59. Ти змогла знайти потрібний готель? 60. – Я, мабуть, почекаю в коридорі. – Ти не можеш там чекати, там малюють підлогу. 61. Навряд чи треба щоразу йти туди пішки. 62. Мені не вдалося знайти потрібний файл. 63. Ти обов'язково мусиш до нас приїхати. 64. Ми могли б завтра прогулятися. 65. Не можна писати на партах. 66. Я зможу відповісти, коли знайду інформацію. 67. Не було потреби приносити ту книгу, у мене вона є. 68. Можливо, хтось уже про це писав, але я не можу знайти. 69. Ти б міг зробити нам усім кави, будь ласка? 70. У горах часто бувало дуже холодно ночами.

REFERENCES

1. Адамовська Л. М., Зайковські С. А. Сторінками англійської граматики. Збірник граматичних вправ. Синтаксис. Тернопіль : Навчальна книга – Богдан, 2010. 72 с.
2. Барабаш Т. А. Пособие по грамматике современного английского языка. Глазо, 1996.
1. Блох М.Я. Практикум по английскому языку: Грамматика. Сборник упражнений: Учеб. пособие для вузов / М.Я. Блох, А.Я. Лебедева, В.С. Денисова. М.: АСТ Астрель, 2000. 240 с.
2. Голицынский Ю.Б. Грамматика: Сборник упражнений. СПб.: КАРО, 2005. 544 с.
3. Гордон Е. М., Крылова И. П. Грамматика современного английского языка. Учебник для ин-тов и факультетов иностранных языков. М. : Высшая школа, 1974.
4. Грамматика английского языка. Морфология. Синтаксис : учебное пособие для студентов педагогических институтов и университетов / [Н.А. Кобрина, Е.А. Корнеева, М.И. Оссовская, К.А. Гузеева]. Санкт-Петербург : Союз, 2006. 496 с.
5. Грамматика английского языка : пособие для студентов педагогических институтов / [В.Л. Каушанская, Р.Л. Ковнер, О.Н. Кожевникова и др.]. М. : Айрис Пресс, 2008. 384 с.
6. Иванова И. П., Бурлакова В. В., Почепцов Г. Г. Теоретическая грамматика современного английского языка. Учебник для студентов инст. и фак-тов иностр. языков. М.: Высш. шк., 1981.
7. Каушанская В. Л. , Ковнер Р. Л. и др. Грамматика англ. языка. Л., 1999.
8. Крылова И.П. Грамматика современного английского языка : учебник для студентов институтов и факультетов иностранных языков / И.П. Крылова, Е.М. Гордон. М. : Книжный дом «Университет», 2003. 448 с.
9. Кобрина И. А. Грамматика английского языка. Синтаксис: Учеб. пособие для пед. ин-тов по спец. «Иностранные языки». М. : Просвещение, 1986.
10. Кобрина И. А. Грамматика современного английского языка. Морфология. Синтаксис. СПб : Союз, Лениздат, 2000.
11. Крылова И.П. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка : учебное пособие для студентов институтов и факультетов иностранных языков / И.П. Крылова. М. : Книжный дом «Университет», 2007. 424 с.
6. Кунин А.В. Англо-русский фразеологический словарь. М., Рус.яз., 1984. 994 с.
7. Натанзон Е.А. Практическая грамматика английского языка для заочников. М., Высшая школа, 1973. 304 с.
12. Практикум по английскому языку: грамматика. Сборник упражнений : учебное пособие для вузов / [М.Я. Блох, А.Я. Лебедева, В.С. Денисова]. М. : Астрель: АСТ, 2005. 238 с.

13. Практична грамати́ка англійської мови з вправами. Том 2 : посібник для студентів ВНЗ / [Л.М. Черноватий, В.І. Карабан, І.Ю. Набокова І.Ю. та ін.]. Вінниця : Нова книга, 2005. 288 с.
14. Раевская Н. М. Теоретическая грамматика современного английского языка. Учебник по курсу теоретич. грамматики для студентов фак-тов романо-герм. филол. ун-тов и пед. ин-тов ин. языков (на англ. яз.). К. : Вища шк., 1976.
8. Рушинская И.С. The English Verbals and Modals: Практикум. М.: Флинта: Наука, 2003. 48 с.
15. Саакян А.С. Упражнения по грамматике современного английского языка. / А.С. Саакян. М. : Рольф, 2001. 448 с.
16. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка : пособие для студентов педагогических институтов и университетов / [В.Л. Каушанская, Р.Л. Ковнер, О.Н. Кожевникова и др.] М. : 2000. 214 с.
17. Черноватий Л. М., Калабан В. І. Практична грамати́ка англійської мови з вправами : Посібник для студентів вищих закладів освіти. Вінниця: Нова книга, 2006.
18. Alexander L.G. Longman English Grammar Practice for Intermediate Students : Self-study edition with key / L.G. Alexander. – Longman, 1990. 296 p.
19. A way to success: English Grammar for University students. Year I (Teacher's Book) / [Н.В. Тучина, Ю.В. Невська, Я.Ю.Сазонова; худож.-оформлювач О.М. Артеменко]. Харків: Фоліо, 2010. 232 с.
20. Azar B.S. Fundamentals of English Grammar with Answer Key / Betty Schramper Azar. Longman, 2003 503 p.
21. Azar B.S. Understanding and Using English Grammar with Answer Key / Betty S. Azar, Stacy A. Hagen. Longman, 2009 530 p.
22. Copage, J. First Certificate Use of English. – Longman Ltd, 2000.
23. Dooley J. Grammarway 4 with answers / Jenny Dooley, Virginia Evans. – Express Publishing, 2013. – 278 p.
24. Eastwood J. Oxford Practice Grammar with Answers / John Eastwood. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2002. 430 p.
18. Evans V. Round Up (5) English Grammar Practice. Pearson Education Limited. Longman, 2006.
25. Foley M. Longman Advanced Learners' Grammar : A Self-Study Reference and Practice Book with Answers / Mark Foley, Diane Hall. Longman, 2008. 384 p.
26. Foley M. MyGrammarLab Advanced C1/C2. With key / Mark Foley, Diane Hall. Pearson Education Limited, 2012. 411 p.
- 10.Foley, M., Hall, D. Advanced Learners' Grammar. A self-study reference and practice book with answers. Longman, 2003. 384 p.
- 11.Fried-Booth, Diana L. Pet. Preliminary English Test. Longman, 2004. 136 p.
27. Fuchs M. Focus on Grammar 4 : An Integrated Skills Approach / Marjorie Fuchs, Margaret Bonner. – Pearson. Longman, 2006. 435 p.

28. Fuchs M. Focus on Grammar 4 . Workbook. / Marjorie Fuchs, Margaret Bonnet with Jane Curtis. Pearson. 2002. p. 51
12. Hancock, M. Singing Grammar. Cambridge University Press, 1998.
29. Hewings M. Advanced Grammar in Use with Answers : A Self-Study Reference and Practice Book for Advanced Students of English. With Answers / Martin Hewings. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2005. 294 p.
30. Hewings M. Advanced Grammar in Use with Answers : A Self-Study Reference and Practice Book for Advanced Learners of English. With Answers / Martin Hewings. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1999. 340 p.
5. Kobrina N.A. An English Grammar. Morphology. M., 1985.
31. Koch R.S. Focus on Grammar. : An Advanced Course for Reference and Practice. Workbook / Rachel Spack Koch with Keith S. Folse. Longman, 2000. 218 p.
32. Lanzano S. Focus on Grammar 5. : An Integrated Skills Approach. Teacher's manual / Susan Lanzano. Pearson. Longman, 2006 p. 163 p.
33. Maurer J. Focus on Grammar 5 : An Integrated Skills Approach / Jay Maurer. – Pearson. Longman, 2006. – 444 p.
34. Murphy R. English Grammar in Use with Answers : A Self-Study Reference and Practice Book for Intermediate Learners of English. With answers and CD-ROM / Raymond Murphy. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2012. 380 p.
35. Prodromou L. Grammar and Vocabulary for First Certificate / Luke Prodromou. Longman, 2006. 319 p.
36. Side R. Grammar and Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency / Richard Side, Guy Wellman. Longman, 2002. 288 p.
37. Swan M. Oxford English Grammar Course. Advanced : A Grammar Practice Book for Advanced Students of English. With Answers / Michael Swan, Catherine Walter. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2011. – 348 p.
38. Parrott M. Grammar for English Language Teachers / Martin Parrott. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2000. 470 p.
39. Penston T. A Concise Grammar for English Language Teachers / Tony Penston. – TP Publications, 2005. – 124 p.
40. Ur P. Grammar Practice Activities : A Practical Guide for Teachers / Penny Ur. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 2006. 288 p.
41. Ur P. Five-Minute Activities : A Resource Book of Short Activities / Penny Ur and Andrew Wright. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press, 1996 101 p.
42. Vince M. Advanced Language Practice with Key. Grammar and Vocabulary / Michael Vince with Peter Sunderland. Oxford : Macmillan, 2003. 326 p.
43. Walker, E. Grammar practice for Upper Intermediate Students / E. Walker, S. Elsworth. – Longman Ltd, 2000.
44. Watcyn-Jones, P., Allsop J. Grammar and Usage for FCE. – Penguin English Guides, 2002.

45. Zukowski J. Focus on Grammar 4 : An Intregrated Skills Approach.
Teacher's Manual / Jean Zukowski/Faust. Pearson. Longman, 2006. 158 p